

GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES
UPON THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE
COMPARED WITH THE ENGLISH.

CONTAINING

- | | |
|---|--|
| I. A Vocabulary of the French Words most frequently used. | III. All the Rules of the Syntax placed in numerical Order, with instructive and moral Exercises appended to each; together with a recapitulatory Exercise, at the end of every Chapter, upon all the Rules contained in it. |
| II. An Explanation of the different Parts of Speech, followed by the Declension of Nouns and the Conjugation of all Verbs, regular and irregular; with Exercises upon them. | |
- IV. Free Exercises upon the nine Parts of Speech.

BY
NICOLAS HAMEL

AUTHOR OF A FRENCH GRAMMAR

And several other School-Books.

NEW EDITION
CAREFULLY REVISED AND GREATLY IMPROVED.

LONDON
LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, LONGMANS, & ROBERTS
AND
WHITTAKER & CO.

EDITOR'S PREFACE.

As one of the two most troublesome tasks connected with the writing of French Exercises is that of ascertaining the Gender of the Nouns, I have deemed it expedient, in order to save the pupil the inconvenience of having constantly to refer on that point to his Dictionary or Grammar, to insert in this work as well as in the Grammar my New Tables of the Rules on Genders (page 12. and following).

Several treatises on the subject have from time to time made their appearance before the public, and I have made it my duty to become acquainted with most of them; but, I am sorry to say, the result of my investigation has only served to show me that for want of simplicity of method, and proper arrangement of matter, much labour is often expended in vain.

I have therefore taken great care that my rules should not be found wanting in these respects.

Their comparative simplicity, the regular order and symmetrical arrangement under which they are exhibited to the eye, cannot fail to assist the Student's memory in retaining them, whilst each example being preceded by *le* or *la* (none being allowed to begin with a vowel or *h* mute), stands as a rule of itself *Pécho*, as an example, has nothing to remind the learner that those nouns ending in *o* are masculine, but *le numéro* will have this effect. Again, the facility of

referring from the rules to the exceptions, by means of the numbers affixed to each, or of referring from the exceptions to the rules, will no doubt save much time.

With regard to their accuracy and completeness, not only do these rules extend to all sorts of French nouns, but the lists of exceptions are all complete, and have been put to the test of almost daily examination for many years; so that I can assert from my own experience that the Student may place an implicit dependence upon them.

I trust therefore that this additional help to the Student, together with the various other improvements and corrections which I have effected in the present edition, will be duly appreciated, and somewhat contribute to render this work still more useful to the public.

A. THIBAUDIN.

Queen Elizabeth's School,
Ipswich, 22nd Nov. 1852.

AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

SOME apology is deemed necessary by writers of every description on introducing their labours to the public, more especially when they have been preceded by others in the same line. If the following sheets exhibit but little that is useful, or nothing that is new, the author is convinced that apology would be improper, and that he has laboured in vain; but should they be found to smooth the path of instruction, he trusts that the same criticism, which awarded the meed of praise to his Grammar, will discriminate the improvements he has made in the means of acquiring the French language.

It is not necessary for him to point out the utility of a Book of Exercises; the value of this mode of teaching is already appreciated: he is less inclined to decry his predecessors, for defect is natural to man; yet, if the arrangement be obvious; the style concise and clear; the examples apt; the exercises moral, and appropriate; and the manner of working them easily comprehended; he may presume upon the merit of a few improvements, while he has availed himself of all that was useful in others.

The different Parts of Speech are explained with order and precision; Syntax is fully treated of in a series of short and accurate Rules, with examples, and each is succeeded by a select Exercise, entertaining and instructive. No rule is anticipated; the principles depend successively on each other; and a knowledge of the preceding usually leads to the understanding of those which follow. Care has been taken to render the Exercises *progressively* difficult. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, &c. interspersed through the Syntax underneath many English words, indicate the rule in which they are explained; this kind of reference, which becomes more frequent as we proceed, will in a short time make

the student perfect, master of his principles, and enable a man of understanding to learn French with very little assistance from his master.

To complete his task, and to render these Exercises worthy of the public approbation, the author has spared no trouble. He has found them essentially useful in the course of his own practice; and he trusts, from the solitude with which he has constantly amended whatever appeared to require it, that they will greatly facilitate the progress of the pupil, and diminish the trouble of the master.

EXPLANATION

OF THE

MARKS AND ABBREVIATIONS

USED IN THIS WORK.

(m. f. s. pl.)..... Denote that the substantive is masculine, feminine, singular, or plural.

(ir.)..... Marks a verb irregular, of which every tense and person will be found in the pages following 29.

(A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H,) indicate what tenses of the verbs are to be used, whenever it becomes difficult to know them, for which see the note, page 23.

(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, &c.)..... These figures placed in the French line in the third part have reference to the rules, which show how to express in French the English words under which they are placed.

The same figures placed at the top of some English words indicate the order of the French words.

..... This star has two significations : when it is placed after an English word, it has reference to some observations made at the bottom of the page ; but when it is put under an English word, it denotes that it is not to be expressed in French.

..... This hand marks the rules which are the most essential, and which are to be learnt by heart.

..... Denotes that the English word is spelt alike in French, or at least the first or the last syllables.

..... When several words are included between two parentheses, they must be translated by the words only which are placed under them.

N. B. In the following exercises the substantives are put in the singular, the adjectives in the masculine singular, and the verbs in the present of the infinitive mood, to exercise the learner in putting them in their proper gender, number tenses, and persons, according as the case may require.

• The English words in Italics, in the exercises of the Syntax are those to which the rule prefixed to each of them must be applied.

TABLE

THE CONTENTS.

PART I.

	Page
Alphabet - - - - -	1
Vocabulary - - - - -	1
Sounds of Animals - - - - -	8

PART II. — PARTS OF SPEECH.

Of the Article - - - - -	9
Definitive Article - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Indefinite Article - - - - -	10
Partitive Article - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Declension of Proper Names and Pronouns - - -	11
Of the Gender of Nouns - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
New Set of Rules on Genders - - - - -	[5]
Exercise upon the Gender of Nouns - - - - -	13
Of Adjectives - - - - -	14
Exercise upon the Formation of the Feminine of Adjectives	15
Exercise upon the Plural of Nouns - - - - -	16
Of Personal Pronouns - - - - -	17
Of Possessive Pronouns - - - - -	19
Of Demonstrative Pronouns - - - - -	20
Of Relative Pronouns - - - - -	21
Of Interrogative Pronouns - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Of Indeterminate Pronouns - - - - -	22
The Auxiliary Verb AVOIR - - - - -	23
The Auxiliary Verb ÊTRE - - - - -	24
The First Regular Conjugation - - - - -	25
The Second Regular Conjugation - - - - -	27
Conjugation of Irregular Verbs - - - - -	29
Irregular Verbs in ER - - - - -	30
Irregular Verbs in IR - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Verbs in MIE, TIE, VIE - - - - -	33
Verbs in FAIE, VIE - - - - -	35

	Page
Verbs in <i>ENIR</i>	36
Verbs in <i>ÔIR</i>	37
Verbs in <i>VOIR</i>	40
Verbs in <i>FAIRE</i>	42
Verbs in <i>ÊTRE</i> and <i>ÔTRE</i>	45
Verbs in <i>OIRE, URE, IRE</i>	47
Verbs in <i>CRIRE</i>	50
Verbs in <i>UIRE</i>	51
Verbs in <i>CRE, DRE, PRE, TRE, VRE</i>	52
Verbs in <i>INDRE</i>	56
Verbs in <i>NDRE</i> and <i>RDRE</i>	57
Exercise upon the Compound Tenses	58
Several Manners of using Verbs	60
Of the Reflected Verbs	64
Exercise upon the Simple Tenses of the Reflected Verbs	65
Exercises upon the Compound Tenses of the Reflected Verbs	67
Exercise upon the Formation of Adverbs	68
Place of Adverbs	69

PART III. — OF SYNTAX.

CHAP. I. — SYNTAX OF ARTICLES.

Rule 1. Indefinite Article <i>un, une</i>	70
R. 2. Definite Article <i>le, la, les</i>	71
R. 3. <i>A, an</i> , rendered by <i>le, la, les</i>	72
☞ 4. <i>Le, la, les</i> , not <i>the</i>	<i>ib.</i>
☞ 5. <i>Le, la, les</i> , before Names of Kingdoms	73
R. 6. <i>Le, la, les</i> , before Adjectives	74
☞ 7. Partitive Article <i>du, de la, des</i> , some	75
☞ 8. <i>De</i> instead of <i>du, de la, des</i>	<i>ib.</i>
☞ 9. Where the Article is required	76
☞ 10. The Articles must be repeated	<i>ib.</i>
R. 11. <i>The</i> , not, <i>le, la, les</i>	77
R. 12. <i>A</i> , not, <i>un</i> or <i>une</i>	78
R. 13. <i>A</i> , not, <i>un</i> or <i>une</i>	<i>ib.</i>
☞ 14. No Article before Proper Names	79
R. 15. No Article before Pronouns	80
☞ 16. <i>De</i> after <i>sorte, genre, &c.</i>	<i>ib.</i>
☞ 17. Transposition of Words	81
☞ 18. Preposition <i>de</i>	82
☞ 19. <i>De</i> after an Adjective	83
R. 20. The Article in several other Cases	84
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Articles	85

CHAP. II. — SYNTAX OF SUBSTANTIVES.

☞ 21. Two Substantives in the same Case	87
☞ 22. Genitive Case	<i>ib.</i>

TABLE OF THE CONTENTS.

	Page
R. 23. Nouns in the Dative - - -	88
R. 24. Nouns Collective General - - -	<i>ib.</i>
R. 25. Nouns Collective Partitive - - -	89

CHAP. III. — OF ADJECTIVES.

26. Adjectives are declinable	90
R. 27. The Adjective agrees with the last Noun -	92
R. 28. Adjectives relating to several Nouns -	92
R. 29. Place of Adjectives - - -	<i>ib.</i>
29. Adjective put before the Substantive -	93
31. Adjectives put after the Substantive -	94
32. Adjectives which govern the Genitive -	<i>ib.</i>
R. 33. Adjectives which govern the Dative -	95
R. 34. Adjectives followed by <i>à</i> and <i>envers</i> -	96
35. How to express the Adjectives of Dimension -	<i>ib.</i>
36. Adjectives of Dimension take <i>à</i> or -	97

OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

37. <i>As</i> expressed by <i>que</i> - - -	98
R. 38. <i>By</i> expressed by <i>de</i> - - -	99
39. <i>Than</i> expressed by <i>que</i> , or by <i>de</i> - - -	<i>ib.</i>
40. <i>Than</i> expressed by <i>que de</i> , <i>que ne</i> - - -	100
41. <i>The more</i> expressed by <i>plus</i> - - -	101
42. Precedency of <i>plus</i> and <i>moins</i> - - -	<i>ib.</i>
43. The Superlative governs the Subjunctive and Genitive - - -	102
R. 44. The Superlative takes an Article - - -	103
Recapitulatory Exercise upon Adjectives, Comparatives, and Superlatives - - -	<i>ib.</i>

CHAP. IV. — OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

R. 45. Personal Pronouns in the Nominative -	105
R. 46. Personal Pronouns in the Genitive -	106
47. Personal Pronouns in the Dative -	107
48. Personal Pronouns in the Accusative -	108
R. 49. Pronouns after a Preposition -	109

Pronouns used with Reference to Animals and Things.

R. 50. The Pronouns <i>it</i> , <i>they</i> , <i>them</i> - - -	<i>ib.</i>
R. 51. <i>En</i> for <i>it</i> or <i>them</i> - - -	110
R. 52. <i>Lui</i> , <i>leur</i> , <i>y</i> , <i>it</i> , <i>them</i> - - -	111
R. 53. Pronouns <i>it</i> and <i>them</i> left out - - -	112
R. 54. Supplying Pronouns <i>le</i> , <i>la</i> , <i>les</i> - - -	<i>ib.</i>

Placing of Personal Pronouns.

R. 55. Place of <i>je</i> , <i>tu</i> , <i>il</i> , &c. - - -	114
R. 56. Pronouns after the Verb - - -	<i>ib.</i>

TABLE OF THE CONTENTS.

	Page
57. Pronouns before the Verb	115.
58. Order of the Pronouns before the Verb	116.
59. Pronouns <i>je, tu, il, &c.</i> repeated	117
60. Pronouns <i>me, te, se, &c.</i> repeated	118
61. Pronouns <i>himself, herself, &c.</i>	119
62. <i>Itself</i> expressed by <i>lui</i> , or <i>soi</i>	120
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Personal Pronouns	<i>ib.</i>

CHAP. V. — OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

63. Possessive Pronouns are repeated	122
64. Possessive Pronouns used in French and not in English	123
65. <i>Monsieur, &c.</i> before <i>votre</i> or <i>vos</i>	124
66. Possessive Pronouns rendered by the Personal	<i>ib.</i>
67. Possessive Pronouns left out	125
68. <i>Its</i> , expressed by <i>son</i> or <i>en</i>	126
69. <i>Mine</i> , expressed by <i>le mien, &c.</i>	127
70. <i>Mine</i> , expressed by <i>mes, &c.</i>	128
71. <i>Mine</i> , expressed by <i>à moi</i>	129
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Possessive Pronouns	<i>ib.</i>

CHAP. VI. — OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

72. <i>Ce, celle, ces</i>	131
73. <i>Ceci, cela</i>	<i>ib.</i>
74. <i>Ce qui, ce que</i>	132
75. <i>Celui-ci, celui-là, &c.</i>	133
76. <i>Celui, celle, that</i>	<i>ib.</i>
77. <i>Celui qui, he who</i>	134
78. <i>Celui</i> and <i>qui</i> must be joined	135
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Demonstrative Pronouns	<i>ib.</i>

CHAP. VII.—OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

79. <i>Qui, que, who, &c.</i>	137
80. <i>Dont, de qui, du quel</i>	138
81. <i>Qui, or lequel, &c.</i>	139
82. <i>Où, or lequel, &c.</i>	<i>ib.</i>
83. Relative Pronouns never suppressed	140
84. Place of Relative Pronouns	141
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Relative Pronouns	<i>ib.</i>

CHAP. VIII.—OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

85. <i>Qui? who?</i>	143
86. <i>Lequel? laquelle? which?</i>	<i>ib.</i>
87. <i>Quel? what?</i>	144
88. <i>Que? what?</i>	<i>ib.</i>
89. <i>Quot? what?</i>	145

TABLE OF THE CONTENTS.

		Page
CHAP. IX. — OF INTERROGATIONS.		
R.	90. <i>Où, d'où, comment ? &c.</i>	145
Q	91. Pronouns after the Verb	146
Q	92. Substantive before the Verb	ib.
R.	93. <i>Est-celà ? n'est-ce pas là ?</i>	148
R.	94. <i>Est-ce que ? n'est-ce pas ?</i>	ib.
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Interrogative Pro- nouns, &c.		149
CHAP. X. — OF THE DIFFERENT USES OF <i>que</i> .		
It.	95. <i>Que</i> , admirative	152
R.	96. <i>Que</i> , conditional	ib.
It.	97. <i>Que</i> , conjunctive	153
CHAP. XI. — OF THE INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.		
Q	98. Use of the Particle <i>on</i>	154
R.	99. <i>I'on</i> for <i>on</i>	155
It.	100. <i>Le même</i> , the same	ib.
R.	101. <i>Plusieurs</i> , many, several	156
R.	102. <i>Un autre</i> , another	ib.
R.	103. <i>Chacun</i> , every one	157
R.	104. <i>Quelqu'un</i> , somebody	158
R.	105. <i>Le tout</i> , the whole	159
R.	106. <i>Tout le</i> , all, the whole	ib.
Q	107. <i>Tout ce qui</i> , a that	160
Q	108. <i>Tout</i> , quite	161
R.	109. <i>Quelque</i> , indeclinable	ib.
R.	110. <i>Quelque</i> , declinable	162
R.	111. <i>Quel que</i> , in two words	163
R.	112. <i>Quelque chose que</i> , whatever	ib.
R.	113. <i>Quiconque</i> , whoever	164
Q	114. <i>L'un l'autre</i> , one another	165
It.	115. <i>L'un, et l'autre</i> , both	ib.
Q	116. <i>Ne</i> and <i>personne</i> , nobody	166
Q	117. <i>Pas un, aucun</i> , and <i>ne</i> , none	ib.
Q	118. <i>Ne rien</i> , nothing	167
Recapitulatory Exercises upon the Indeterminate Pro- nouns		ib.
CHAP. XII. — SEVERAL MODES OF NEGATION.		
Q	119. <i>Ni, ni ne</i> , neither	169
Q	120. <i>Ne jamais</i> , never	170
Q	121. <i>Ne aucun, non</i> , no	ib.
Q	122. <i>Ne pas, or non</i> , not	171
R.	123. <i>Ne</i> without <i>pas</i> , not	172
R.	124. Distinction between <i>pas</i> and <i>point</i>	173
Q	125. <i>Que ne</i> , than	ib.

	Page
126. <i>Ne</i> after <i>craindre</i> , &c. - - -	173.
127. <i>Ne</i> after <i>à moins que</i> - - -	174.
128. <i>Ne que</i> , but, only - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Recapitulatory Exercises upon the Negations -	175

CHAP. XIII.—OF THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

129. Verbs which govern the Genitive -	176
R. 130. Verbs which govern the Dative -	177
R. 131. Verbs which govern the Accusative -	178
R. 132. Accusative and Genitive -	<i>ib.</i>
R. 133. Accusative and Dative - - -	179
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Government of Verbs -	180

CHAP. XIV. — OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

Of the Present.

R. 134. Infinitive without Preposition - -	181
135. Infinitive with <i>de</i> - - -	182
136. Infinitive with <i>à</i> - - -	185
R. 137. Infinitive with <i>de</i> or <i>à</i> - - -	187
138. Infinitive with <i>pour</i> - - -	188
139. Infinitive instead of the Gerund - -	<i>ib.</i>
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Infinitive, with <i>de</i> , <i>à</i> , <i>pour</i> , <i>sans</i> , &c. - - -	189

Of the Gerund.

140. Gerund indeclinable - - -	190
R. 141. Indicative used instead of the Gerund -	191
142. <i>By</i> expressed by <i>en</i> - - -	192

Of the Participle.

143. Cases in which the Participle is declinable -	193
144. Cases in which the Participle is indeclinable -	194
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Gerunds and Participle - - -	195

Of the Concord of Verbs.

R. 145. The Verb agrees with its Nominative Case -	196
R. 146. The Verb with Nominatives of different Persons - - -	197
R. 147. The Verb after the Relative Pronoun <i>qui</i> -	198

CHAP. XV. — OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

R. 148. Use of the Present Tense - - -	<i>ib.</i>
149. ——— Imperfect of the Indicative - -	199
150. ——— Preterite of the Indicative - -	200.
R. 151. ——— Future and Conditional - -	201

	Page
¶ 152. Neither Future nor Conditional after <i>si</i> -	202
R. 153. Compound of the Present - - -	203
R. 154. Other Compound Tenses - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Tenses of the Indicative Mood - - -	204

CHAP. XVI. — OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

¶ 155. Superlatives and Indeterminate Pronouns govern the Subjunctive - - -	205
R. 156. Verbs which always govern the Subjunctive Mood after the Conjunction <i>que</i> - -	207
R. 157. Impersonal Verbs which govern the Subjunctive - - -	<i>ib.</i>
R. 158. Conjunctions which govern the Subjunctive -	208
<i>Verbs and Conjunctions which govern sometimes the Indicative and sometimes the Subjunctive.</i>	
¶ 159. Verbs which govern the Subjunctive in one sense, and the Indicative in another - -	209
R. 160. Impersonal Verbs which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive - - -	210
R. 161. Conjunctions which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive - - -	<i>ib.</i>
¶ 162. Which Tense must be used - - -	211
R. 163. Compound Tenses of the Subjunctive -	212
R. 164. Cases in which the Preterite of the Subjunctive is used - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Use of the Subjunctive - - -	213

CHAP. XVII. — OF THE AUXILIARIES *would, could, should, &c.*

R. 165. <i>Would, could, should</i> , expressed by <i>vouloir, pouvoir, devoir</i> - - -	214
R. 166. <i>Would, could, &c.</i> not followed by a Compound Tense - - -	215
R. 167. <i>Would, could, &c.</i> followed by a Compound Tense - - -	<i>ib.</i>

CHAP. XVIII. — OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS *il faut, il y a, &c.*

¶ 168. <i>Il faut</i> . it must - - -	216
R. 169. <i>Il y a</i> , there is - - -	217
¶ 170. Distinction between <i>c'est</i> and <i>il est</i> - -	218
¶ 171. <i>C'est, ce sont</i> , it is - - -	219

	Page
CHAP. XIX. — SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.	
172. Adverb after the Verb	220
173. Place of Adverbs	ib.

CHAP. XX. — OF PREPOSITIONS.	
174. Place of Prepositions	221
175. How to express <i>from</i> followed by <i>to</i>	ib.
176. <i>Depuis, jusqu'à</i> , from, to	222
177. Prepositions repeated	223

CHAP. XXI. — OF THE FRENCH IDIOMS	
178. <i>To be</i> , expressed by <i>avoir</i>	224
179. <i>To be</i> , expressed by <i>faire</i>	225
180. <i>To be</i> , expressed by <i>se porter</i>	226
181. <i>Il en est de</i> , it is with	ib.
182. <i>To have</i> , expressed by <i>être</i>	227
183. <i>Avoir mal à</i>	ib.
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the French Idioms	228

FREE EXERCISES.

1. The Two Bees	230
2. Respect paid by the Lacedæmonians to Old Age	231
3. Postus and Arria	232
4. Valentine and Unnion	234
5. Muly Moluc	236
6. Dionysius the Tyrant	237
7. Damon and Pythias	238
8. Destruction of the Alexandrian Library	239
9. The Advantages of a good Education	240
10. Dignity of Human Nature	243
11. Detached Sentences	244

GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES

UPON

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE,

COMPARED WITH THE ENGLISH,

PART I.

FRENCH ALPHABET.

A*, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L,
 ah, bay, say, day, a, eff, gey, ash, e, jee, kah, el,
 M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y,
 emm, • enn, o, pay, qu, 'air, s, tay, u, vay, ex, egrec,
 Z.
 æu.

A VOCABULARY.

1. <i>Days.</i>			
DIMANCHE,	<i>Sunday.</i>	août,	<i>august.</i>
lundi,	<i>monday.</i>	septembre,	<i>september.</i>
mardi,	<i>tuesday.</i>	octobre,	<i>october.</i>
merc:edi,	<i>wednesday.</i>	novembre,	<i>november.</i>
jeudi,	<i>thursday.</i>	décembre,	<i>december.</i>
vendredi,	<i>friday.</i>		
samedi,	<i>saturday.</i>		
•			
2. <i>Months.</i>		3. <i>Seasons.</i>	
janvier,	<i>january.</i>	le printemps,	<i>spring.</i>
février,	<i>february.</i>	l'été,	<i>summer.</i>
mars,	<i>march.</i>	l'automne,	<i>autumn.</i>
avril,	<i>april.</i>	l'hiver,	<i>winter.</i>
mai,	<i>may.</i>		
juin,	<i>june.</i>		
juillet,	<i>july.</i>		
		4. <i>Elements.</i>	
		le feu,	<i>fire.</i>
		l'eau,	<i>water.</i>
		la terre,	<i>earth.</i>
		l'air,	<i>air.</i>

* These letters are named in French pretty nearly as those under them are sounded in English.

5. *Eating.*

le déjeuner,	<i>breakfast.</i>
le dîner,	<i>dinner.</i>
le souper,	<i>supper.</i>
du pain,	<i>bread.</i>
de la croûte,	<i>crust.</i>
de la mie,	<i>crum.</i>
du beurre,	<i>butter.</i>
de la viande,	<i>meat.</i>
du rôti,	<i>roast meat.</i>
du bouilli,	<i>boiled meat.</i>
du bœuf,	<i>beef.</i>
du veau,	<i>veal.</i>
du mouton,	<i>mutton.</i>
du porc,	<i>pork.</i>
du lard,	<i>bacon.</i>
du gras,	<i>fat.</i>
du maigre,	<i>lean.</i>
une volaille,	<i>a fowl.</i>
du gibier,	<i>game.</i>
un lièvre,	<i>a hare.</i>
des perdrix,	<i>partridges.</i>
un faisan,	<i>a pheasant.</i>
une bécasse,	<i>a woodcock.</i>
une bécassine,	<i>a snipe.</i>
des pigeons,	<i>pigeons.</i>
un chapon,	<i>a capon.</i>
un dindon,	<i>a turkey.</i>
une oie,	<i>a goose.</i>
un canard,	<i>a duck.</i>
du poisson,	<i>some fish.</i>
une morue,	<i>a cod.</i>
du saumon,	<i>salmon.</i>
un turbot,	<i>a turbot.</i>
un merlan,	<i>a whiting.</i>
une sole,	<i>a sole.</i>
un maquereau,	<i>a mackerel.</i>
un hareng,	<i>a herring.</i>
une anguille,	<i>an eel.</i>
un brochet,	<i>a pike.</i>
une plie,	<i>a plaice.</i>
une truite,	<i>a trout.</i>
une tortue,	<i>a turtle.</i>
un chou,	<i>a cabbage.</i>
des navets,	<i>turnips.</i>
des carottes,	<i>carrots.</i>
des pommes de terre,	<i>potatoes.</i>
des artichauts,	<i>artichokes.</i>
des asperges,	<i>asparagus.</i>

des pois,	<i>pease.</i>
de la chicorée,	<i>succory.</i>
des laitues,	<i>lettuce.</i>
du céleri,	<i>celery.</i>
une pomme,	<i>an apple.</i>
une poire,	<i>a pear.</i>
une orange,	<i>an orange.</i>
un citron,	<i>a lemon.</i>
un abricot,	<i>an apricot.</i>
une pêche,	<i>a peach.</i>
une olive,	<i>an olive.</i>
une cerise,	<i>a cherry.</i>
des groseilles,	<i>gooseberries.</i>
des fraises,	<i>strawberries.</i>
des framboises,	<i>raspberries.</i>
des noix,	<i>walnuts.</i>
du raisin,	<i>grapes.</i>
des châtaignes,	<i>chestnuts, &c.</i>

6. *Drinking.*

du vin,	<i>wine.</i>
de la bière,	<i>beer.</i>
du cidre,	<i>cyder.</i>
de l'eau,	<i>water.</i>
du thé,	<i>tea.</i>
du café,	<i>coffee.</i>
du chocolat,	<i>chocolate.</i>
du cacao,	<i>cocoa, &c.</i>

7. *Things used at table.*

la nappe,	<i>the table-cloth.</i>
un plat,	<i>a dish.</i>
une assiette,	<i>a plate.</i>
un couteau,	<i>a knife.</i>
une cuillère,	<i>a spoon.</i>
une fourchette,	<i>a fork.</i>
du sel,	<i>salt.</i>
une salière,	<i>a salt-cellar.</i>
de la moutarde,	<i>mustard.</i>
du poivre,	<i>pepper.</i>
du vinaigre,	<i>vinegar.</i>
un verre,	<i>a glass, &c.</i>

8. *Furniture of a room.*

un lit,	<i>a bed.</i>
un matelas,	<i>a mattress.</i>
des draps,	<i>sheets.</i>
une couverture,	<i>a blanket.</i>
des rideaux,	<i>curtains.</i>
une chaise,	<i>a chair.</i>

un tapis,	<i>a carpet.</i>	la hanche,	<i>the hip.</i>
un miroir,	<i>a looking-glass.</i>	la cuisse,	<i>the thigh.</i>
une caisse,	<i>a chest.</i>	le genou,	<i>the knee.</i>
une armoire,	<i>chest of drawers.</i>	la jambe,	<i>the leg.</i>
un tableau,	<i>a picture.</i>	le pied,	<i>the foot.</i>
une chandelle,	<i>a candle.</i>	le talon,	<i>the heel, &c.</i>
un chandelier,	<i>a candlestick.</i>		
des mouchettes,	<i>snuffers.</i>		
un livre,	<i>a book.</i>		
du papier,	<i>paper.</i>		
de l'encre,	<i>ink.</i>		
des plumes,	<i>pens, &c.</i>		

9. *Of the Body.*

le corps,	<i>the body.</i>
le sang,	<i>the blood.</i>
la peau,	<i>the skin.</i>
les os,	<i>the bones.</i>
la moëlle,	<i>the marrow.</i>
les veines,	<i>the veins.</i>
le pouls,	<i>the pulse.</i>
les nerfs,	<i>the nerves.</i>
la tête,	<i>the head.</i>
le front,	<i>the forehead.</i>
le visage,	<i>the face.</i>
les yeux,	<i>the eyes.</i>
les paupières,	<i>the eyelids.</i>
les sourcils,	<i>the eyebrows.</i>
le nez,	<i>the nose.</i>
les oreilles,	<i>the ears.</i>
la bouche,	<i>the mouth.</i>
les lèvres,	<i>the lips.</i>
la langue,	<i>the tongue.</i>
les dents,	<i>the teeth.</i>
les joues,	<i>the cheeks.</i>
le menton,	<i>the chin.</i>
la gorge,	<i>the throat.</i>
le cou,	<i>the neck.</i>
l'épaule,	<i>the shoulder.</i>
le bras,	<i>the arm.</i>
la main,	<i>the hand.</i>
le pouce,	<i>the thumb.</i>
les doigts,	<i>the fingers.</i>
le sein,	<i>the bosom.</i>
le cœur,	<i>the heart.</i>
le dos,	<i>the back.</i>
le ventre,	<i>the belly.</i>
la ceinture,	<i>the waist.</i>
le côté,	<i>the side.</i>

10. *Dress.*

un chapeau,	<i>a hat.</i>
un habit,	<i>a coat.</i>
un gilet,	<i>a waistcoat.</i>
un pantalon,	<i>trousers.</i>
des bas,	<i>stockings.</i>
des souliers,	<i>shoes.</i>
des bottes,	<i>boots.</i>
un ruban,	<i>a ribbon.</i>
un collier,	<i>a necklace.</i>
des pendans	
d'oreille,	<i>ear-rings.</i>
une robe,	<i>a gown.</i>
une jupe,	<i>a petticoat.</i>
un tablier,	<i>an apron.</i>
une montre,	<i>a watch.</i>
des gants,	<i>gloves.</i>
un manchon,	<i>a muff.</i>
un parapluie,	<i>an umbrella.</i>
un mouchoir,	<i>a handkerchief,</i>
	<i>&c.</i>

11. *Relations.*

père,	<i>father.</i>
mère,	<i>mother.</i>
grand-père,	<i>grandfather.</i>
grand-mère,	<i>grand-mother.</i>
beau-père,	<i>father-in-law.</i>
belle-mère,	<i>mother-in-law.</i>
frère,	<i>brother.</i>
sœur,	<i>sister.</i>
beau-frère,	<i>brother-in-law.</i>
belle-sœur,	<i>sister-in-law.</i>
fil,	<i>son.</i>
fil,	<i>daughter.</i>
petit-fils,	<i>grandson.</i>
petite-fille,	<i>grand-daughter.</i>
parrain,	<i>godfather.</i>
marraine,	<i>godmother.</i>
fil,	<i>godson.</i>
fil,	<i>god-daughter.</i>

époux,	<i>husband.</i>	tailleur,	<i>tailor.</i>
épouse,	<i>wife.</i>	tanneur,	<i>tanner.</i>
oncle,	<i>uncle.</i>	tapissier,	<i>upholsterer.</i>
tante,	<i>aunt.</i>	teinturier,	<i>dyer.</i>
neveu,	<i>nephew.</i>	tisserand,	<i>weaver.</i>
nièce,	<i>niece.</i>	tonnelier,	<i>cooper.</i>
cousin,	<i>cousin (male).</i>	tourneur,	<i>turner.</i>
cousinè,	<i>cousin (female).</i>	vitrier,	<i>glazier, &c.</i>

12. *Professions.*

barbier,	<i>barber.</i>
bijoutier,	<i>toyman.</i>
boucher,	<i>butcher.</i>
boulangier,	<i>baker.</i>
brasseur,	<i>brewer.</i>
carrossier,	<i>coach-maker.</i>
chapelier,	<i>hatter.</i>
charpentier,	<i>carpenter.</i>
cocher,	<i>coachman.</i>
cordier,	<i>rope-maker.</i>
cordonnier,	<i>shoemaker.</i>
coutelier,	<i>cutler.</i>
cuisinier,	<i>cook.</i>
doreur,	<i>gilder.</i>
drapier,	<i>draper.</i>
épicier,	<i>grocer.</i>
faïencier,	<i>chinaman.</i>
fondeur,	<i>founder.</i>
forgeron,	<i>blacksmith.</i>
horloger,	<i>clock-maker.</i>
jardinier,	<i>gardener.</i>
imprimeur,	<i>printer.</i>
jouailler,	<i>jeweller.</i>
laboureur,	<i>ploughman.</i>
libraire,	<i>bookseller.</i>
maçon,	<i>bricklayer.</i>
meunier,	<i>miller.</i>
orfèvre,	<i>goldsmith.</i>
pâtissier,	<i>pastrycook.</i>
peintre,	<i>painter.</i>
perruquier,	<i>hairdresser.</i>
relieur,	<i>bookbinder.</i>
savetier,	<i>cobbler.</i>
sellier,	<i>saddler.</i>
serrurier,	<i>locksmith.</i>

13. *A Series of Substantives.*

Amertume, f.	<i>bitterness.</i>
ardoise, f.	<i>slate.</i>
astre, m.	<i>star.</i>
attrait,	<i>charm.</i>
avarice, f.	<i>covetousness.</i>
Bagatelle,	<i>trifle.</i>
bataille,	<i>battle.</i>
bateau,	<i>boat.</i>
bâton,	<i>stick.</i>
bonté,	<i>goodness.</i>
bordure,	<i>frame.</i>
boue, f.	<i>mud.</i>
brouillard,	<i>fog.</i>
bruit,	<i>noise.</i>
butin,	<i>booty.</i>
Cabinet,	<i>closet.</i>
cachet,	<i>seal.</i>
campagne, f.	<i>country.</i>
caractère, m.	<i>temper.</i>
carrosse,	<i>coach.</i>
chair,	<i>flesh.</i>
chaleur,	<i>heat.</i>
chambre, f.	<i>room.</i>
champ,	<i>field.</i>
chanson,	<i>song.</i>
charbon,	<i>coal.</i>
charrue, f.	<i>plough.</i>
chasse,	<i>hunting.</i>
chaux,	<i>lime.</i>
chemin,	<i>road.</i>
chute, f.	<i>fall.</i>
ciel,	<i>heaven.</i>
cire, f.	<i>wax.</i>
ciseaux,	<i>scissors.</i>
cloche, f.	<i>bell.</i>

* *The substantives not followed by m. or f. are masculine, or feminine, according as the final is masculine or feminine; for which see the table of terminations, p. 12.*

clop,	<i>naïl.</i>	fleur,	<i>flower.</i>
colère, <i>f.</i>	<i>anger.</i>	fleuve, <i>m.</i>	<i>river</i>
conduite, <i>f.</i>	<i>conduct.</i>	foi, <i>f.</i>	<i>faith.</i>
confiance,	<i>confidence.</i>	foin,	<i>hay.</i>
corps,	<i>body.</i>	force, <i>f.</i>	<i>strength.</i>
cuir,	<i>leather.</i>	foule, <i>f.</i>	<i>crowd.</i>
cuivre, <i>m.</i>	<i>copper.</i>	fromage,	<i>cheese.</i>
Danse,	<i>dance.</i>	fumée,	<i>smoke.</i>
débat,	<i>debate.</i>	fureur,	<i>fury.</i>
débauche, <i>f.</i>	<i>debauchery.</i>	Gâteau,	<i>cake.</i>
défiance,	<i>distrust.</i>	gazon,	<i>turf.</i>
délicatesse,	<i>delicacy.</i>	gelée,	<i>frost.</i>
déluge, <i>m.</i>	<i>flood.</i>	glace,	<i>ice.</i>
dépense,	<i>expense.</i>	gloire,	<i>glory.</i>
désir,	<i>desire.</i>	goût,	<i>taste.</i>
deuil,	<i>mourning.</i>	graine, <i>f.</i>	<i>seed.</i>
devoir,	<i>duty.</i>	grandeur,	<i>greatness.</i>
disette,	<i>scarcity.</i>	guerre,	<i>war.</i>
domaine, <i>m.</i>	<i>dominion.</i>	Haine, <i>f.</i>	<i>hatred.</i>
douceur,	<i>sweetness.</i>	haleine, <i>f.</i>	<i>breath.</i>
durée,	<i>duration.</i>	hardiesse,	<i>boldness.</i>
Eau,	<i>water.</i>	herbe, <i>f.</i>	<i>grass.</i>
école, <i>f.</i>	<i>school.</i>	homme,	<i>man.</i>
écriture,	<i>writing.</i>	honneur,	<i>honour.</i>
église, <i>f.</i>	<i>church.</i>	honte, <i>f.</i>	<i>shame.</i>
énigme, <i>f.</i>	<i>riddle.</i>	horloge, <i>f.</i>	<i>clock.</i>
éperon,	<i>spur.</i>	huitre, <i>f.</i>	<i>oyster.</i>
épine, <i>f.</i>	<i>thorn.</i>	Idée,	<i>idea.</i>
épingle, <i>f.</i>	<i>pin.</i>	impôt,	<i>tax.</i>
épreuve, <i>f.</i>	<i>trial.</i>	injure,	<i>abuse.</i>
espérance,	<i>hope.</i>	jour,	<i>day.</i>
espion,	<i>spy.</i>	juge, <i>m.</i>	<i>judge.</i>
esquisse,	<i>sketch.</i>	justesse,	<i>exactness.</i>
état,	<i>state.</i>	Lait,	<i>milk.</i>
étoile, <i>f.</i>	<i>star.</i>	langue, <i>f.</i>	<i>tongue.</i>
étude, <i>f.</i>	<i>study.</i>	lecture,	<i>reading.</i>
eventail,	<i>fan.</i>	lettre, <i>f.</i>	<i>letter.</i>
Faiblesse,	<i>weakness.</i>	lien,	<i>tie.</i>
famille,	<i>family.</i>	lieu,	<i>place.</i>
faute, <i>f.</i>	<i>fault.</i>	lune, <i>f.</i>	<i>moon.</i>
femme,	<i>woman.</i>	lunettes,	<i>spectacles.</i>
fenêtre, <i>f.</i>	<i>window.</i>	luxure, <i>m.</i>	<i>luxury.</i>
fer,	<i>iron.</i>	Maitre,	<i>master.</i>
fermé,	<i>firmness.</i>	maladie,	<i>illness.</i>
feu,	<i>fire.</i>	malheur,	<i>misfortune.</i>
feuille,	<i>leaf.</i>	matin,	<i>morning.</i>
félicité,	<i>happiness.</i>	mer,	<i>sea.</i>
fièvre, <i>f.</i>	<i>fever.</i>	mois,	<i>month.</i>
fièche, <i>f.</i>	<i>arrow.</i>	moisson,	<i>harvest.</i>

moulin,	mill.	reproche, m.	reproach.
mouvement,	motion.	rêve, m.	dream.
mur,	wall.	ronce, f.	bramble.
Naissance,	birth.	roue, f.	wheel.
neige, f.	snow.	Sac,	bag.
nid,	nest.	savon,	soap.
nuit,	night.	serment,	oath.
Oiseau,	bird.	serrure,	lock.
ombre, f.	shadow.	soir,	evening.
ongle, m.	nail.	sort,	fate.
ordre, m.	order.	soumission,	submission.
orge, m.	barley.	souris, f.	mouse.
orgueil,	pride.	suffrage,	vote.
orient,	east.	Tableau,	picture.
occident,	west.	tache, f.	blot.
Paille,	straw.	tapis,	carpet.
paix,	peace.	témérité,	rashness.
palais,	palace.	titre, m.	title.
panier,	basket.	travail,	work.
paysage,	landscape.	tristesse,	sadness.
peigne, m.	comb.	trou,	hole.
perfidie,	treachery.	troupe, f.	troop.
perte, f.	loss.	troupeau,	flock.
peste, f.	plague.	Vaisseau,	ship.
peuple, m.	people.	vent,	wind.
pierre,	stone.	ver,	worm.
pillage,	plunder.	verge, f.	yard.
pitié, f.	pity.	vérité,	truth.
plomb,	lead.	vertu, f.	virtue.
pluie,	rain.	vie,	life.
plume, f.	pen.	univers,	universe.
poche, f.	pocket.	voisin,	neighbour.
poids,	weight.	voix,	voice.
pont,	bridge.	voyage,	travel.
porte,	door.	usage,	custom.
poudre, f.	powder.		
pré,	meadow.	14. A series of Adjectives	
présage,	omen.	Absolu	absolute.
présent,	gift.	adroit,	dexterous.
prix,	price.	affable,	courteous.
progrès,	progress.	affreux,	frightful.
pudeur,	modesty.	aimable,	amiable.
Raison,	reason.	aise,	glad.
rasoir,	razor.	aisé,	easy.
ravage,	havoc.	âmer,	bitter.
rayon,	ray.	ancien,	old.
règle, f.	rule.	assidu,	assiduous.
repas,	meal.	aveugle,	blind.
réponse, f.	answer.	avide,	greedy.

Barbare,	<i>barbarous.</i>	flatteur,	<i>flattering.</i>
bas,	<i>low.</i>	fort,	<i>strong.</i>
beau,	<i>fine.</i>	frais,	<i>fresh.</i>
blanc,	<i>white.</i>	Généreux,	<i>generous</i>
bleu,	<i>blue.</i>	glorieux,	<i>glorious.</i>
bon,	<i>good.</i>	gracieux,	<i>graceful.</i>
bossu,	<i>crooked.</i>	grand,	<i>great.</i>
Capricieux,	<i>whimsical.</i>	gras,	<i>fat.</i>
chaud,	<i>hot.</i>	gros,	<i>big.</i>
chauve,	<i>bald.</i>	Habile,	<i>able.</i>
cher,	<i>dear.</i>	hardi,	<i>bold.</i>
clair,	<i>clear.</i>	haut,	<i>high.</i>
conforme,	<i>conformable.</i>	heureux,	<i>happy.</i>
contagieux,	<i>contagious.</i>	honnête,	<i>honest.</i>
content,	<i>satisfied.</i>	honteux,	<i>shameful.</i>
convenable,	<i>fit.</i>	humain,	<i>humane.</i>
coupable,	<i>guilty.</i>	humide,	<i>damp.</i>
cru,	<i>raw.</i>	Illustre,	<i>illustrious.</i>
curieux,	<i>curious.</i>	imparfait,	<i>imperfect.</i>
Dangereux,	<i>dangerous.</i>	impie,	<i>impious.</i>
dédaigneux,	<i>disdainful.</i>	importun,	<i>troublesome.</i>
dégoûtant,	<i>loathsome.</i>	incommode,	<i>inconvenient.</i>
dernier,	<i>last.</i>	incrédule,	<i>incredulous.</i>
désagréable,	<i>unpleasant.</i>	indigne,	<i>unworthy.</i>
difficile,	<i>difficult.</i>	industrieux,	<i>industrious.</i>
digne,	<i>worthy.</i>	infâme,	<i>infamous.</i>
douloureux,	<i>painful.</i>	infidèle,	<i>unfaithful.</i>
douteux,	<i>doubtful.</i>	ingrat,	<i>ungrateful.</i>
doux,	<i>sweet.</i>	injurieux,	<i>injurious.</i>
droit,	<i>straight.</i>	injuste,	<i>unjust.</i>
Eclatant,	<i>bright.</i>	inquiet,	<i>restless.</i>
effroyable,	<i>frightful.</i>	insensé,	<i>mad.</i>
ennuyeux,	<i>tedious.</i>	inutile,	<i>useless.</i>
enroué,	<i>hoarse.</i>	ivre,	<i>drunk.</i>
entêté,	<i>stubborn.</i>	Jaloux,	<i>jealous.</i>
envieux,	<i>envious.</i>	jaune,	<i>yellow.</i>
épais,	<i>thick.</i>	jeune,	<i>young.</i>
étonnant,	<i>wonderful.</i>	joli,	<i>pretty.</i>
étrange,	<i>strange.</i>	juste,	<i>just.</i>
étranger,	<i>foreign.</i>	Lâche,	<i>coward.</i>
étroit,	<i>narrow.</i>	large,	<i>broad.</i>
exquis,	<i>exquisite.</i>	las,	<i>tired.</i>
Fâcheux,	<i>sad.</i>	lent,	<i>slow.</i>
facile,	<i>easy.</i>	libre,	<i>free.</i>
faible,	<i>weak.</i>	Maigre,	<i>lean.</i>
fameux,	<i>famous.</i>	malade,	<i>sick.</i>
faux,	<i>false.</i>	malaisé,	<i>hard.</i>
féroce,	<i>fierce.</i>	malheureux,	<i>unhappy.</i>
fertile,	<i>fruitful.</i>	mauvais,	<i>bad.</i>

méchant,	<i>wicked.</i>	profond,	<i>deep.</i>
inépisable,	<i>contemptible.</i>	prodigue,	<i>prodigal.</i>
muet,	<i>dumb.</i>	Réel,	<i>real.</i>
Nécessaire,	<i>necessary.</i>	régulier,	<i>regular.</i>
net,	<i>clean.</i>	respectueux,	<i>respectful.</i>
neuf,	<i>new.</i>	rêveur,	<i>thoughtful.</i>
noir,	<i>black.</i>	rusé,	<i> cunning.</i>
nombreux,	<i>numerous.</i>	Sage,	<i>wise.</i>
nouveau,	<i>new.</i>	saint,	<i>holy.</i>
nuisible,	<i>hurtful.</i>	sauvage,	<i>wild.</i>
Obéissant,	<i>obedient.</i>	sec,	<i>dry.</i>
odieux,	<i>odious.</i>	sérieux,	<i>serious.</i>
orageux,	<i>stormy.</i>	superflu,	<i>superfluous.</i>
ordinaire,	<i>usual.</i>	Tel,	<i>such.</i>
Parfait,	<i>perfect.</i>	téméraire,	<i>rash.</i>
perfidé,	<i>perfidious.</i>	timide,	<i>fearful.</i>
perilleux,	<i>perilous.</i>	tranquille,	<i>quiet.</i>
pesant,	<i>heavy.</i>	triste,	<i>sad.</i>
petit,	<i>little.</i>	Vert,	<i>green.</i>
pieux,	<i>pious.</i>	véritable,	<i>true.</i>
plaintif,	<i>mournful.</i>	vieux,	<i>old.</i>
plein,	<i>full.</i>	voluptueux,	<i>voluptuous.</i>
poli,	<i>civil.</i>	vrai,	<i>true.</i>

SOUNDS OF BIRDS AND BEASTS.

Les oiseaux chantent,	<i>birds sing.</i>
le perroquet parle,	<i>the parrot talks.</i>
le merle siffle,	<i>the blackbird whistles.</i>
la colombe gémit,	<i>the dove cooes.</i>
le pigeon roucoule,	<i>the pigeon cooes.</i>
le coq chante,	<i>the cock crows.</i>
la poule glousse,	<i>the hen clucks.</i>
le corbeau croasse,	<i>the raven croaks.</i>
le cheval hennit,	<i>the horse neighs.</i>
l'âne brait,	<i>the ass brays.</i>
le bœuf meugle,	<i>the ox lows.</i>
le taureau mugit,	<i>the bull roars.</i>
le lion rugit,	<i>the lion roars.</i>
le serpent siffle,	<i>the snake hisses.</i>
la brebis bêle,	<i>the sheep bleats.</i>
le chat miaule et file,	<i>the cat mews and purrs.</i>
le chien aboie,	<i>the dog barks.</i>
le lièvre crie,	<i>the hare squeaks.</i>
le loup hurle,	<i>the wolf howls.</i>
le cerf brame,	<i>the stag brays.</i>
la grenouille coasse,	<i>the frog croaks.</i>

PART II.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

THERE are in French nine parts of Speech, which are called, 1. *Article*. 2. *Substantive*. 3. *Adjective*. 4. *Pronoun*. 5. *Verb*, these five declinable. 6. *Adverb*. 7. *Preposition*. 8. *Conjunction*. 9. *Interjection*, indeclinable.

OF THE ARTICLE.

The article is a word placed before a noun, to determine the extent of its signification.

There are three articles in French: 1. The definite, *le, la, les*, which is used before a noun restricted in its signification to an object specified. 2. The indefinite, *un, or une*, which is used before a noun singular, restricted to an object not specified. 3. The partitive, *du, de la, des*, which is used before a noun to denote a certain number or portion of a thing. They are declined as follows:

1. *Definitive Article*.

	Singular.			Plural for all.	
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>v. h.</i>		
N. Ac.	le,	la,	l'	les,	the
G.	du,	de la,	de l'	des,	of or from the
D.	au,	à la,	à l'	aux,	to the

N. B. The *m* denotes a noun masculine; *f* a noun feminine; *v* a noun which begins with a vowel; *h* a noun which begins with an *h* mute, and *pl* a noun plural. This mark — indicates that the words are alike in both languages, or differ only by their termination.

The father; of the son; to the brother. The mother;
père m fils m frère m mère f
 to the daughter; to the sister. The child; of the angel; to
fille f . sœur f enfant v ange v
 the soul. The man; of the history; to the harmony. The
âme v homme h histoire h harmonie h
 gardens; of the houses; to the friends. The master of
jardins pl maisons pl amis pl maître m
 the house. The rays of the sun. The lustre of the stars.
maison f rayons pl soleil m éclat v étoiles pl
 The return from the city. The breakfast; of the dinner; to
retour m ville f déjeuner m dîner m

* *L'* is used before a noun of both genders which begins with a vowel, or an *h* mute, as *l'oiseau, l'homme, &c.*

the supper. The malice of the boys. The prattling of
souper m — f garçons pl babil m
 the girls. The laziness of the scholars. The friendship;
filles pl paresse f écoliers pl amitié v
 the humanity; to the hatred. The shame; of the horror; to
—te h haine f honte f horreur h
 the honesty. Give the apple to the boy, and the orange to
honnêteté h donnez pomme f garçon m et — v
 the girl. The admiral spoke to the king, to the queen,
fille f amiral v parla roi m reine f
 and to the princes. The moon is the cause of the eclipses
— pl lune f est — f — pl
 of the sun.
soleil m.

2. Indefinite Article.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>No plural.</i>	
N. Acc.	un,	une		<i>a</i>
G.	d'un, d'une,			<i>of or from a</i>
D.	à un, à une,			<i>to a</i>

A dictionary and a grammar. A bird and a cage. A
dictionnaire m grammaire f oiseau m — f
 house; of a garden; to a tree; from a pear. A watch; of a
maison f jardin m arbre m poire f montre f
 diamond; to a ring. A garden; of a house; to an orchard;
diamant m bague f jardin m maison f verger m
 from a park. A river; of a boat; from a ship.
parc m rivière f bateau m vaisseau m.

3. Partitive Article.

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural for all.</i>	
	<i>m</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>v. h.</i>		
N. Acc.	du,	de la, de l'		des,	<i>some</i>
N. Acc.	de *,	de, d'		de,	<i>some</i>

Give me some bread and some butter; some meat and
donnez-moi pain m et beurre m viande f
 some mustard; some eggs and some oranges. Give me
moutarde f œufs pl — pl donnez-moi
 some good bread, and some good butter; some good meat,
bon bon bonne
 and some good mustard; some good eggs and some good
bonne bons bonnes
 apples. I have some ink and some pens.
pommes f j'ai encre v. plumes pl.

* When a substantive taken in a partitive sense is preceded by an adjective, the word *de* is always used instead of *du, de la, or des*: as *du pain, de bon pain; de la viande, de bonne viande, &c.*

4. Declension of proper Names and Pronouns.

	Singular.			Plural for all.		
N. Acc.	take neither prepositions nor article before them.					
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>v. h.</i>			
G.	de,	de,	d'	de,	prep.	of or from
D.	à,	à	à,	à,	prep.	to
The poems of Homer.				The genius of Milton.		
	<i>poèmes</i> pl.	<i>Homère</i> h.		<i>génie</i> m	—	
courage of Achilles.				Speak to Henry.		
—m	—v	<i>parlez</i>	—	<i>je reçois</i>	<i>lettre</i> f	
from Stephen.				From Paris to London; from Dover to		
	<i>Etienne</i> v	—		<i>Londres</i>	<i>Douvres</i>	
Calais; from Vienna to Rome.				The book belongs to		
—	<i>Vienne</i>	—		<i>livre</i> m	<i>appartient</i>	
John or to Peter.						
<i>Jean ou Pierre.</i>						

OF SUBSTANTIVES.

A substantive is the name of a person or object: as, *un homme*, a man; *une maison*, a house; *une pensée*, a thought.

A substantive is singular or plural. It is singular, when we speak of one person or thing: as, *un livre*, a book; *un cheval*, a horse. It is plural, when we speak of more than one: as, *deux livres*, two books; *trois chevaux*, three horses.

Of the Gender of French Nouns.

As, in French, every noun, adjective, and participle generally changes its spelling according to the gender of the noun to which it relates, it becomes a matter of great importance to the student that he should be provided with the most ready and effectual means of ascertaining, from memory, this peculiar property of the French noun. It is, therefore, earnestly requested that he should learn by heart the rules of the two following Tables A. and B., and their exceptions, contained in the Tables C. and D. But before committing these rules to memory, each student should acquire from the teacher the exact pronunciation and the meaning of each example. He should also be informed that in French there is no *neuter*: every noun being *either* masculine or feminine; that all the rules are included in Tables A. and B. (A. for those of the masc., B. for those of the fem.); that C. and D. contain all the exceptions, except those to rule 18., which occupy the remaining Tables; that there are three denominations of rules — NATURAL, PARTICULAR, and GENERAL, numbered in the order in which they should be consulted, that is to say, the two natural rules take precedence of every other, each of the particular rules is to be consulted after the two natural rules, but before the two general; thus, *homme* (man) does not come under the 18th nor under the 10² rule, but under the 1st rule, and, not being an exception to it, it must be of the masc. gender.

RULES FOR ASCERTAINING THE

MASCULINE.

NATURAL RULE	1	Nouns which are masc. in English are also masc. in French, as le père.		EXCEPTIONS. None.	
PARTICULAR RULES.	1 ¹	—a	as le sofa	See Exc. § 3 ¹ .	
	3 ²	—é *	„ le thé	Without Exc.	
	3	3 ³	—i	„ le cri	See Exc. § 3 ³ .
		3 ⁴	—o	„ le numéro	Without Exc.
		3 ⁵	—u	„ le sou	See Exc. § 3 ⁵ .
	4	4 ¹	—asme	„ le pléonasme	See Exc. § 4 ¹ .
		4 ²	—aume	„ le baume	See Exc. § 4 ² .
		4 ³	—ême	„ le diadème	See Exc. § 4 ³ .
		4 ⁴	—isme	„ le prisme	Without Exc.
		4 ⁵	—ôme	„ le dôme	See Exc. § 4 ⁵ .
	5	5 ¹	—age	„ le fromage	See Exc. § 5 ¹ .
		5 ²	—ége	„ le collège	See Exc. § 5 ² .
		5 ³	—uge	„ le déluge	Without Exc.
	6	6 ¹	—acle	„ le spectacle	See Exc. § 6 ¹ .
		6 ²	—ice	„ le supplice	See Exc. § 6 ² .
	7	7 ¹	—aire	„ le dictionnaire	See Exc. § 7 ¹ .
		7 ²	—oire	„ le réfectoire	See Exc. § 7 ² .
	8	{ names of trees }		„ le chêne	See Exc. § 8.
	9	{ words used substantively }		„ le rouge	See Obs. § 9.
	GENERAL RULE	17.	{ Those ending in a consonant, as, le soleil. }		See Exc. § 17.

* é accented, not preceded by t.

GENDER OF FRENCH NOUNS.

FEMININE.

NATURAL RULE	2	Nouns which are feminine in English are also feminine in French, as, la mère.			EXCEPTIONS. None.		
PARTICULAR RULES.	10	10 ¹	—lle	as la chandelle	See Exc. § 10 ¹ .		
		10 ²	—mme	„ la pomme	See Exc. § 10 ² .		
		10 ³	—nne	„ la canne	See Exc. § 10 ³ .		
		10 ⁴	—rre	„ la terre	See Exc. § 10 ⁴ .		
		10 ⁵	—sse	„ la chasse	See Exc. § 10 ⁵ .		
		10 ⁶	—tte	„ la fourchette	• See Exc. § 10 ⁶ .		
	11	11 ¹	{ —ance or —eue }	„ la France	See Exc. § 11 ¹ .		
		11 ²	{ —anse or —ense }	„ la danse	Without Exc.		
	12	Those ending in		12 ¹	—ace	„ la glace	See Exc. § 12 ¹ .
		12 ²	—ade	„ la promenade	See Exc. § 12 ² .		
		12 ³	—ude	„ la servitude	See Exc. § 12 ³ .		
	13	13 ¹	—ure	„ la voiture	See Exc. § 13 ¹ .		
		13 ²	—ière	„ la bière	See Exc. § 13 ² .		
	14	14 ¹	—ie	„ la comédie	See Exc. § 14 ¹ .		
		14 ²	—ée	„ la fumée	See Exc. § 14 ² .		
	15	15 ¹	—x	„ la croix	See Exc. § 15 ¹ .		
		15 ²	—eur	„ la fleur	See Exc. § 15 ² .		
		15 ³	—sion *	„ la pension	See Exc. § 15 ³ .		
		15 ⁴	—aison	„ la maison	See Exc. § 15 ⁴ .		
	16	16 ¹	—té	„ la divinité	See Exc. § 16.		
GENERAL RULE	18	{ Those ending in <i>e</i> unaccented, as, la lune. }			See Exc. § 18.		

* Whether spelt *sion*, *tien*, *xion*, or *cion*.

EXCEPTIONS.

3 ¹ . la polka,	(a dance.)	8. la vigne,	<i>the vine.</i>
3 ² . la foi,	<i>the faith.</i>	la ronce,	<i>the briar.</i>
la fourmi,	<i>the ant.</i>	une yeuse,	<i>a green oak.</i>
la loi,	<i>the law.</i>		
la merci,	<i>the mercy.</i>	9. When an adjective, used substantively,	
la paroi,	<i>the partition.</i>	relates to some definite object of the	
		1em. gender, it is put in the 1em., as	
3 ³ . l'eau,	<i>the water.</i>	à droite, viz. à main droite, &c.	
la glu,	<i>the birdlime.</i>		
la peau,	<i>the skin.</i>	10 ¹ . le calville,	<i>the calville.</i>
la surpeau,	<i>the epidermis.</i>	le chèvre-feuille,	<i>the honeysuckle.</i>
la tribu,	<i>the tribe.</i>	le codicille,	<i>the codicil.</i>
la vertu,	<i>the virtue.</i>	un intervalle,	<i>an interval.</i>
4 ¹ . la plasmé,	<i>the plasm.</i>	un libelle,	<i>a libel.</i>
4 ² . la paume,	<i>the palm.</i>	un mille,	<i>a mile.</i>
4 ³ . la crème,	<i>the cream.</i>	un portefeuille,	<i>a portfolio.</i>
4 ⁴ . la Drôme,	(a river in France).	un quadrille,	<i>(a dance)</i>
		un vaudeville,	<i>(a comedy).</i>
		du vermicelle,	<i>some vermicelli.</i>
		un violoncelle,	<i>a violoncello.</i>
5 ¹ . la cage,	<i>the cage.</i>	10 ² . un dilemme,	<i>a dilemma.</i>
l'image,	<i>the image.</i>	un gramme,	<i>a gramme.</i>
la nage,	<i>the swimming.</i>	un kilogramme,	<i>a 100 grammes.</i>
la page,	<i>the page (of a book).</i>	un lemme,	<i>a lemma.</i>
la plage,	<i>the shore.</i>	un monogramme,	<i>a monogramme.</i>
la rage,	<i>the rage.</i>	un parallélogramme,	} <i>a parallelogram.</i>
5 ² . une allége,	<i>a lighter.</i>	un programme,	
une dréce,	<i>a diag.</i>	un somme,	<i>a nap.</i>
la Norvège,	<i>Norway.</i>		
6 ¹ . la bernacle,	<i>the barnacle.</i>	10 ³ . un renne,	
la débacle,	{ <i>the clearing of the</i> <i>ice of a river.</i>		
6 ² . la justice,	<i>the justice.</i>	10 ⁴ . le babeurre,	<i>the butter milk.</i>
l'injustice,	<i>the injustice.</i>	le bécarré,	<i>(a note in music).</i>
la milice,	<i>the militia.</i>	le beurre,	<i>the butter.</i>
la police,	<i>the police.</i>	le cimenterre,	<i>the scimitar.</i>
7 ¹ . une affaire,	<i>an affair.</i>	le feurre,	<i>the straw.</i>
une aire,	<i>an area.</i>	le leurre,	<i>the lure.</i>
une aïre,	<i>a pulpit.</i>	le lierre,	<i>the ivy.</i>
une circulaire,	<i>a circular.</i>	le parterre,	<i>the flower garden.</i>
une glaire,	<i>a slime.</i>	le tintamarre,	<i>the thundering</i>
une grammaire,	<i>a grammar.</i>	le tonnerre,	<i>the thunder. [noise.</i>
une haire,	<i>a hair cloth.</i>	le verre,	<i>the glass.</i>
une paire,	<i>a couple.</i>		
une perpen- } diculaire, }	<i>a perpendicular.</i>	le carrosse,	<i>the coach.</i>
7 ² . la gloire,	<i>the glory.</i>	le colosse,	<i>the colossus.</i>
l'histoire,	<i>the history.</i>	le narcisse,	<i>the daffodil.</i>
la mémoire,	<i>the memory.</i>	le Parnasse,	<i>the Parnassus.</i>
la nageoire,	<i>the fin.</i>	le Permesse,	<i>the Permessus.</i>
la poire,	<i>the pear.</i>		
la racloire,	<i>the strickle.</i>	10 ⁵ . un amulette,	<i>a charm.</i>
		un squelette,	<i>a skeleton.</i>

11 ¹ . le silence,	<i>the silence.</i>
12 ¹ . un espace,	<i>a space.</i>
12 ² . un grade, un jade un stade	<i>a degree. a jade. a stade.</i>
12 ³ . le prélude, le coude,	<i>the prelude. the elbow.</i>
13 ¹ . un augure, un colub, le mercure, le murmure, le parjure, le peccateur, le tellure.	<i>an augury. an astronomical the mercury. [circle the murmur. the perjury. the corn cutter. (the metal).</i>
13 ² . le cimetière,	<i>the church-yard</i>
14 ¹ . le foie, le gémé, un incendie, un parapluie, un pavié,	<i>the liver. the gemus. a conflagration. an umbrella. a nectarine.</i>
14 ² . un athée, un athénée, un caducée, un camée, un colisée, un coryphée, un elysée, un empyrée, un hyménée, un lycée, un mausolée, un musée, un pygmée, un spondée, un trochée, un trophée,	<i>an atheist. an athenæum. a caduceus. a cameo. a coliseum. a corypheus. an elysium. a heaven. a marriage. a lyceum. a mausoleum. a museum. a pygmy. a spondee. a trochee. a trophy.</i>
15 ¹ . le choix, le courroux, le crucifix, le flux, le reflux, le larynx, le lynx, le prix, le sphinx,	<i>the choice. the wrath. the crucifix. the flux. the reflux. the larynx. the lynx. the price. the sphinx.</i>
15 ² . le bonheur, le chœur, le cœur, le choufleur,	<i>the happiness. the choir. the heart. the cauliflower.</i>

le déshonneur, l'équateur, l'extérieur, l'heur, l'honneur, l'intérieur, le labeur, le malheur, les pleurs, un secteur,	<i>the dishonour. the equator. the outside. the luck. the honour. the interior. the tillage. the misfortune. the tears. a sector.</i>
15 ³ . un bastion, un bastion, un scion,	<i>a bulwark. a wild animal. a scion or shoot.</i>
16. un arrêté, le bédicité, un comité, un comté, un côté, un été, un pâté, un traité, un velouté,	<i>a decree. the thanksgiving. a committee. a county. a side a summer. a pie. a treaty. a velvet lace.</i>
17. la boisson, la brebis, la chair, la chanson, la clef, la cloison, la cour, la cuiller, la cuisson, la dent, la dot, la façon, la contrefaçon, la faim, la fin, la fois, la forêt, la harte, la leçon, la main, la maman, la mer, la moisson, la mort, la mousson, la nef, la nuit, la part, la plupart, la prison, la rançon, la soif, la souris, la chauve-souris, la toison, la tour, la vis,	<i>the drink. the sheep. the flesh. the song. the key. the partition. the court. the spoon. the baking. the tooth. the dowry. the making. the counterfeit. the hunger. the end. once. the forest. the halter. the lesson. the hand. the mother. the sea. the harvest. the death. the monsoon. the nave. the night. the part. the most part. the prison. the ransom. the thirst. the mouse. the bat. the fleece. the tower. the screw.</i>

un colloque, *a conference.*
 un comble, *an over measure.*
 du commerce, *a trade.*
 un compte, *an account.*
 un concile, *a council.*
 un concave, *a concave.*
 un concombre, *a cucumber.*
 un cône, *a cone.*
 un conge, *a congeus.*
 un congre, *a conge.*
 un coque, *a tale.*
 un contraste, *a contrast.*
 un contrôle, *a control.*
 un conventicle, *a conventicle.*
 un corpuscule, *a corpuscle.*
 un corusc, *a corusc.*
 un costume, *a costume.*
 un cothurne, *a buskin.*
 le coude, *the elbow.*
 { un couple, *a couple of persons.*
 { une couple, *a couple of things.*
 un couvercle, *a lid.*
 un crabe, *a crab.*
 un crâne, *a skull.*
 un cratère, *a crater.*
 { un Cravate, *a Cravat.*
 { une cravate, *a neckcloth.*
 { un crepe, *a crape.*
 { une crepe, *a pancake.*
 un crépuscule, *the twilight.*
 un crible, *a sieve.*
 un crime, *a crime.*
 { un critique, *a censurer.*
 { une critique, *a criticism.*
 un crocodile, *a crocodile.*
 un cube, *a cube.*
 le cuivre, *the copper.*
 un culte, *a worship.*
 un custode, *a custain.*
 un cycle, *a cycle.*
 un cylindre, *a cylinder.*

D.

un dactyle, *a dactyle.*
 un débarcadère, *a terminus.*
 un decagone, *a decagon.*
 un decalogue, *a decalogue.*
 un decompte, *a discount.*
 un décuple, *a tenfold.*
 un dedale, *a maze.*
 un décide, *a decide.*
 un délire, *a delirium.*
 un démerite, *a demerit.*
 un denticle, *a denticle.*
 un désastre, *a disaster.*
 un désordre, *a disorder.*
 un diable, *a devil.*
 un dialecte, *a dialect.*
 un dialogue, *a dialogue.*
 un diamètre, *a diameter.*
 un dièse, *a sharp.*
 le digeste, *the digest.*
 un diocèse, *a diocese.*
 un disque, *a disk.*
 un distique, *a distich.*
 un dividende, *a dividend.*
 un divorce, *a divorce.*

un dogme, *a dogma.*
 un dogue, *a mastiff.*
 un domaine, *a domain.*
 un abode, *an abode.*
 un doute, *a doubt.*
 un drame, *a drama.*

E.

un échange, *an exchange.*
 un écaille, *a pattock.*
 de l'ellébore, *some hellebore.*
 un éloge, *an eulogy.*
 un embarcadère, *a terminus.*
 un émétique, *an emetic.*
 un empire, *an empire.*
 un emplâtre, *a poultice.*
 { un enseigne, *an ensign (in the army).*
 { une enseigne, *a sign-post.*
 un entr'acte, *an interlude.*
 un epilogue, *epilogue.*
 un episode, *an episod.*
 un équilibre, *an equilibrium.*
 un équinoxe, *an equinox.*
 un esclandre, *a bustle.*
 un escompte, *a discount.*
 un etre, *a being.*
 un évangile, *a gospel.*
 { un exemple, *an example.*
 { une exemple, *a copy in writing.*
 un exergue, *an exergue.*
 l'exode, *the Exodus.*
 un exorde, *an exordium.*

F.

le fante, *the top.*
 un fante, *an ostentation.*
 du feutre, *some felt.*
 un fiacre, *a hackney-coach.*
 un fife, *a fife.*
 un filigrane, *a filigrane.*
 un filtre, *a filter.*
 les flasques, *the cheeks of a mast.*
 une flasque, *a powder-horn.*
 un flegme, *a flegm.*
 un fleuve, *a river.*
 un follicule, *a follicle.*
 un fossile, *a fossil.*
 { un foudre, *a large tun.*
 { la foudre, *the thunderbolt.*
 un fraticide, *a fraticide.*

G.

{ un garde, *a keeper.*
 { une garde, *a watch.*
 un genre, *a gender.*
 un germe, *a bud.*
 un geste, *a gesture.*
 un gîte, *a convent.*
 du givre, *hoar-frost.*
 un glaive, *a sword.*
 un globe, *a globe.*
 un globule, *a globule.*
 un goitre, *a wen.*
 un golfe, *a gulf.*

un gouffre,
un grade,
{ un greffe,
{ une greffe,
un groupe,
{ un guide,
{ une guide,
un gymnase,

a whirlpool.
a degree.
a register.
a graft.
a group.
a guide.
a rim.
a gymnasium.

un lustre,
un luxe,

a lustre.
a luxury.

M.

le Maine,
un malaise,
{ un manche,
{ une manche,
les mânes,
un manifeste,
un manipule,
{ un manœuvre,
{ une manœuvre,
un manque,
un marbre,
un martyre,
un masque,
un massacre,
un mécompte,
un médianoche,
un mélange,
un mélodrame,
un membre,
un mensonge,
un mérite,
un merle,
un mesaise,
un mesentère,
un météore,
un mètre,
un meuble,
un meurtre,
un microscope,
un ministère,
un mobile,
un mode,
une mode,
un modèle,
un module,
{ un môle,
{ une môle,
un monastère,
le monde,
un monocorde,

(a province).
an uneasiness.
a handle.
a handle.
the manes.
a manifesto.
a manipule.
a labourer.
an intrigue.
a want.
a marble.
a martyrdom.
a mask.
a massacre.
a mischance.
a midnight meal.
a mixture.
a melodrama.
a member.
a lie.
a merit.
a blackbird.
a trouble.
a mesentery.
a meteor.
a metre.
a piece of furniture.
a murder.
a microscope.
an agency.

a mood.
a fashion.
a model.
a module.
a pier.
a moon-calf.
a monastery.
the world.
one-string instrument.
a monopoly.
a monosyllabic.
a monster.
a little mountain.
a muffle.
a mitten.
a mould.
a muscle.
a cabin boy.
a moss.
a muzzle.
a multiplicand.
a muscle.
a mystery.

N.

un narcotique,
un nautile,
un navire,
un négociant,
un nimbe,

a narcotic.
a nautilus.
a ship.
a trade.
(a circle of light)

II.

un hâle,
un havre,
{ un héliotrope,
{ une héliotrope,
un hémisphère,
un hémistiche,
un hiéroglyphe,
un holoocauste,
un homicide,
un hongre,
un horoscope,
un hôte,
{ un hymne,
{ une hymne,

a sun-burning.
a harbour.
a sun-flower.
a blood-stone.
a hemisphere.
a hemistich.
a hieroglyphic.
a holocaust.
a murder.
a gelt.
a horoscope.
a host.
a secular hymn.
a sacred hymn.

I.

un iambe,
un inceste,
un incube,
un infanticide,
un insecte,
un interligne,
un intermède,
un interrègne,
un isthme,

an iambus.
an act of incest.
a nightmare.
an infanticide.
an insect.
an interline.
an interlude.
an interregnum.
an isthmus.

J.

un jable,
un jasper,
le jeûne,
un jule,

a notch.
a jasper.
the fast.
a julis.

K.

un kiosque,

a kiosk.

L.

un labyrinthe,
un la te,
un légume,
un lexique,
un lièvre,
un limbe,
du linge,
un litre,
{ un livre,
{ une livre,
un lobe,
un logarithme,
un logogriphe,
{ un loutre,
{ une loutre,
le Louvre,
un lucre,

a labyrinth.
a last.
a legumen.
a lexicon.
a hare.
a limb.
some linen.
(a measure)
a book.
a pound.
a lobe.
a logarithm.
a riddle.
an otter-hat.
an otter.
the Louvre.
a profit.

du nitre,
un nocturne,
un nombre,

some nitre.
a nocturn.
a number.

O.

un obélisque
un œuvre,
une œuvre,
un ombre,
une ombre,
un ogre,
un ongle,
un opprobre,
un opuscule,
un orbe,
un ordre,
un organe,
un orgue,
des orgues,
un orle,
un ove,

an obelisk.
a work of art.
an action.
(a game).
a shadow.
(a monster).
a nail.
a disgrace.
an opuscula.
an orb.
an order.
an organ.
(n. in the sing.)
(pl. in the plur.)
an orle.
an oval.

P.

un pacte,
un pagne,
une palme,
une palme,
un pampre,
un panache,
un panégyrique,
un paradoxe,
un parafe,

a bargain.
a negro-cloth.
a palm branch.
a hand breadth.
a vine branch.
a plumet.
an eulogy.
a paradox.
a flourish added to
one's signature.

un parallèle,
une parallèle,
un paragraphe,
un parricide,
un participe,
un patronoime,
un pécule,
un pédicule,
un peigne,
un pêne,
un pendule,
une pendule,
le pentateuque,
le Perche,
un période,
une période,
un perpendiculaire,
un pétale,
un peuple,
un phare,
un phénomène,
un philtre,
le phosphore,
un pique,
une pique,
un pivoine,
une pivoine,
un plane,
une plane,
le platine,
la platine,
du plâtre,
un poêle,
une poêle,

a comparison.
a parallel line.
a paragraph.
a parricide.
a participle.
a patronymy.
a competence.
a pedicle.
a comb.
a bolt.
a pendulum.
a clock.
the pentateuch.
(a province).
the pitch.
a period.
a plummet.
a petal.
a people.
a lighthouse.
a phenomenon.
a philter.
the phosphor.
a mattock.
a pike.
a gnat-napper.
a piony.
a plane tree.
a plane.
the platina.
the platen.
some plaster.
a stove.
a flying-pan

le poivre;
le pôle,
un polype;
un polysyllabe,
un pouche,
un ponceire,
une ponte,
un porche,
un pore,
un porphyre,
un portique,
un poste,
une poste,
le pousse,
le pourpre,
la pourpre,
un préambule,
un précepte,
un prêche,
un presbytère,
un prestige,
un prétexte,
un principe,
un prodige,
un prône,
un protocole,
un proverbe,
un pupitre,

the pepper
the pole.
a polypus.
a polysyllabic.
a pouch.
a large lemon.
a punter.
a laying of eggs
a porch.
a pore.
a porphyry.
a portico.
an employment.
a post-office.
the thumb.
the purples.
the purple.
a preamble.
a precept.
a sermon.
a parsonage.
a charm.
a pretence.
a principle.
a prodigy.
a sermon.
a protocol.
a proverb.
a desk.

Q.

un quaterne,
un quadrupède,

a quaternion.
a quadruped.

R.

un râle,
un râle,
une réclame,
une réclame,
un régicide,
un régime,
un registre,
un règne,
un relâche,
un remède,
un reproche,
un reptile,
un reste,
un rétable,
un rêve,
un reverbère,
un rhombe,
un rhomboïde,
le Rhône,
un rhume,
un rythme,
un ridicule,
un risque,
un rite,
un rôle,
un rouge-gorge,
un rouge-queue,

back of a hare.
a rail.
a reclaiming.
a catch-word.
a regicide.
a diet.
a register.
a reign.
a relaxation.
a remedy.
a reproach.
a reptile.
a rest.
an altar-piece.
a di cam.
a street-lamp.
a lozenge.
a rhomboid.
(a river in France).
a cold.
a rhythm.
a ridicule.
a risk.
a rite.
a roll.
a robin redbreast.
a redtail.

S.

le sable,
un sabre,

the sand.
a broadsword.

EXERCISE upon the GENDER OF NOUNS.

The rules upon the articles must be applied here ; that is to say, the articles must be used, and agree with their substantive in genders, numbers, and cases.

The virtue ; of the sobriety ; to the prudence ; from the
vertù —été —
 hand ; the necklace ; of the reason ; to the miracle ; the
main collier raison —
 nation ; of the cupola ; to an age ; a boat ; of the ice ; to the
— dôme âge bateau glace
 clemency ; from a church-yard ; the (native country) ; of a
clémence cimetière patrie
 colony ; to the goodness ; the happiness ; of the poison ; to
—nie bonté bonheur —
 the fish ; from the price ; a cage ; the salary ; of a song ; to a
poisson prix — —aire chanson
 knife ; of a fork ; to the salad ; of a fur ; the beer ; of the night ;
couteau fourchette —e fourrure bière nuit
 a summer ; the constancy ; of the death ; to the castle ; an
été —ce mort château
 ink-pot ; the directory ; a building ; of the fear ; to a com-
encrier —oire bâtiment peur
 parison ; the burning ; a suffering ; of a calamity ; the bed ; of
—raison brûlure souffrance —té lit
 the dish ; to a chimney ; of a picture ; some paper ; a pen
plat cheminée tableau papier ca-
 knife ; the heaven ; of the garden ; the market ; of the roof ; a
nif ciel jardin marché toit
 pot ; the looking-glass ; the bolt ; of a day ; to the morning ;
— miroir verrou jour matin
 of the evening ; of an advantage ; the painting ; of the fate ;
soir avantage peinture sort
 to the felicity ; of a secret ; to the perseverance ; the courage ;
— félicité — persévérance —
 an education ; of the forest ; to the yard ; of a genius ; the
— é— forêt cour génie
 description ; of an effect ; the pleasure ; of the neatness ; to
— effet plaisir propreté
 the life ; from the light ; of the time ; a variation ; the sim-
— vie lumière temps —
 plicity ; of the nature ; an art ; of a description ; to the north ;
—té — — — nord
 of a point ; to the youth ; of the glory ; the poetry ; some
— jeunesse gloire poésie
 wisdom ; a reward ; the silence ; the providence ; some
sagesse récompense — —
 patience ; a restitution ; a boarding-school ; of the harvest .
— pension moisson.

OF ADJECTIVES.

An adjective expresses the quality of an object or person. Such are *grand*, great; *bon*, good; *mauvais*, wicked; *petit*, little. An adjective is always joined or relative to a substantive or a pronoun.

As the adjectives agree in French with their substantives, they have also two genders and numbers. They form their feminine from the masculine, and the plural from the singular, after the following directions.

How to form the Feminine of Adjectives.

The adjectives become feminine, by changing their masculine terminations, as follows :

	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>		<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>
1.	e unaccented	alike	as	sage	sage
2.	x	se		curieux	curieuse
3.	f	ve		actif	active
4.	teur*	trice		moteur	motrice
	cur†	cuse		chanteur	chanteuse
5.	el	elle		cruel	cruelle
	eil	eille		pareil	pareille
	et	ette		muët	muette
	an	anne		paysan	paysanne
	en	enne		ancien	ancienne
	on	onne		bon	bonne
6.	Adjectives of other terminations in the masculine take an <i>e</i> unaccented in the feminine : as				
	aimé	aimée		petit	petite

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Traître*, treacherous, makes *traïtresse*.

2. *Faux*, *roux*, double the *s* of the feminine ending, and make *fausse*, *rousse*; *doux* makes *douce*, and *vieux*, *vieille*.

4. *Baïlleur*, *défendeur*, *demandeur*, all law-terms, make *baïllesse*, *défenderesse*, and *demanderesse*. *Enchanteur*, *exécuteur*, *pécheur*, *persécuteur*, and *vengeur*, notwithstanding the gerunds in *ant*, make *enchanteresse*, *exécutrice*, *pécheresse*, *persécutrice*, and *vengeresse*. Adjectives in *eur* not derived from verbs do not fall under this rule, but take *e* mute by Rule 6, as *meilleure*, *mineure*, &c.

5. The adjective *plan*, level, makes *planc*. *Complet*, *discret*, *inquiët*, *replet*, and *secret*, make in the feminine *complète*, *discrète*, *inquiète*, *replète*, *secrète*.

* Not derived from a verb.

† Derived from a verb.

6. *Châlain, aquilin, dispos, discord, and fat*, have no feminine; *favori* makes *favorite*, *absous* and *dissous* make *absoute, dissoute*; *nul* and *sot* make *nulle* and *sotte*. *Blanc, frais, franc, sec*, make *blanche, fraîche, franche, sèche*. *Long* makes *longue*, and the sound of *c* is given by *qu* in *caduque, grèque, turque, publique*. *Tiers* has *tierce*. *Bénin* and *malin* make *bénigne* and *maligne*. *Bas, épais, exprès, gras, gros, las, prêts*, follow the analogy of Rule 5, and make *basse, épaisse, expresse, grasse, grosse, lasse, professe*.

N. B. *Beau, nouveau, fou, mou, vieux*, also make in the masculine *bel, nouvel, fol, mol, vieil*, when placed before nouns beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute. It is from that final they form their feminine, by adding *le* to it: as *nouvel, m. nouvelle, f. bel, m. belle, f. vieil, m. vieille, f.*

EXERCISE upon the FORMATION of the FEMININE of ADJECTIVES.

N. B. The adjectives which must in French be placed after the substantives, have the last letter in *Italic*.

The learner must apply the rules about the articles, and the gender of substantives.

A good man; a good woman; a great garden; a great house;
bon homme femme grand jardin maison
 a white handkerchief; a white gown; a new hat; a new
blanc mouchoir robe f. neuf chapeau
 waistcoat; an attentive boy; an attentive girl; a fat ox; a fat
gilet m. —tif garçon fille gras bœuf
 cow; an ambitious project; an ambitious woman; a cruel
vache —tueux projet femme —
 father; a cruel mother; a bitter fruit; a bitter apple; a con-
père. mère amer — pomme
 stant friend; a constant resolution; an elegant speech; an
ami résolution élégant discours
 elegant lady; a figurative sense; a figurative expression; a
dame —tif sens —
 frugal dinner; a frugal life; some cold beef; some cold meat;
— dîner vie froid bœuf viande f
 a warlike people; a warlike nation; a long discourse; a long
guerrier peuple m. — —rs
 period; a natural style; a natural inclination; the public
phrase f —rel — m — public
 interest; the public opinion; a specious pretence; a specious
intérêt — spécieux prétexte m
 answer; a high wall; a high tower; a pretty boy; a pretty
réponse f haut mur tour joli garçon

16 EXERCISE UPON SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

girl; a fine hat; a fine gown; a pernicious game; a pernicious
fille beau chapeau robe —cieux jeu
 company.
—gnie.

How to form the Plural of Substantives and Adjectives.

The substantives and adjectives form their plural from the singular, by changing their final as follows:

<i>singular.</i>	<i>plural.</i>	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural.</i>
1. s } x } z }	alike	as, le fils	les fils
		la voix	les voix
		le nez	les nez
2. eu	eux	le jeu	les jeux
au	aux	l'eau	les eaux
3. *al	aux	le canal	les canaux
4. All other finals take an s for the plural: as			
le trou	les trous	petit	petits

N. B. The plural masculine of adjectives is formed from the singular masculine; and the plural feminine from the singular feminine: as *grand, grands; grande, grandes; beau, beaux; belle, belles.*

EXCEPTIONS.

* There are some exceptions to the third rule, namely, *avals, bals, cals, carnavals, pals, and régals.*

The exceptions to the fourth or general rule end chiefly in *ou* and *ail*: as *bijoux, cailloux, genoux, hiboux, poux*; and these, *bail, corail, émail, plumail, soupirail, travail, vantail*, make the plural in *aux*. *Aïeul, ail, ciel, œil*, have *aïeux, aux, cieux, yeux*, in the plural. *Tout*, indeterminate pronoun, makes *tous*.

EXERCISE upon the PLURAL of SUBSTANTIVES and ADJECTIVES.

Remember to apply in this exercise the rules for the articles, and for the feminine of adjectives, as well as for their plural; and in every exercise, the rules which precede must be applied.

An harmonious concert; two harmonious concerts; an
—nieux — deux
 harmonious voice; three harmonious voices; a white horse;
voix trois blanc cheval
 four white horses; a white house; five white houses. Your
quatre maison cinq votre

brother is prudent and wise; your brothers are prudent and
frère est — et sage vos sont
 wise; your sister is prudent and wise; your sisters are
votre sœur vos
 prudent and wise. A pretty picture; a pretty girl; two
joli tableau fille
 pretty pictures; two pretty girls. The English general
anglais général
 is brave and courageous; the English generals are brave
— —-geux
 and courageous; our army is brave and courageous; our
notre armée nos
 armies are brave and courageous. Your son is young
votre fils jeune
 and handsome; your sons are young and handsome; your
beau vos votre
 daughter is young and handsome; your daughters are
fille vos
 young and handsome. This book is new; these books
ce livre m neuf ces
 are new; this table is new; these tables are new.
cette — f cès
 My uncle is rich and generous; my uncles are rich
mon oncle riche généreux mes
 and generous; my aunt is rich and generous; my aunts
ma tante mes
 are rich and generous. Give me a small knife, and a
donnez-moi petit couteau
 small fork; give me two small knives, and two small
fourchette donnez-moi
 forks. This animal is cruel and revengeful; these animals
cet — — vindicatif ces
 are cruel and revengeful; this beast is cruel and revengeful;
cette bête f
 these beasts are cruel and revengeful. Our love is mutual;
ces . . notre amour mutuel
 our sentiments are mutual; our fear is mutual; our fears
nos — notre crainte f nos
 are mutual. I have a good fire in my room; I have two
j'ai feu dans ma chambre f
 good fires in my house.
ma maison.

1. OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The personal pronouns serve to distinguish persons in discourse, without naming them.

A difference is established among the French pronouns that we do not observe in English; for we use the same pro-

nouns conjoined with a verb in the sentence, or not conjoined: as, *I, the teacher, speak*. In which case the French would employ two forms for *I*, the one *je* conjunctive; the other *moi*, disjunctive.

DECLENSION OF THE CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

N.	G.	D.	Acc.
je <i>I</i>	en <i>of me</i>	me <i>to me</i>	me <i>me</i>
tu <i>thou</i>	en <i>of thee</i>	te <i>to thee</i>	te <i>th</i>
il <i>he</i>	en <i>of him</i>	lui <i>to him</i>	le <i>him</i>
elle <i>she</i>	en <i>of her</i>	lui <i>to her</i>	la <i>her</i>
		se <i>to one's self</i>	se <i>one's self</i>
nous <i>we</i>	en <i>of us</i>	nous <i>to us</i>	nous <i>us</i>
vous <i>you</i>	en <i>of you</i>	vous <i>to you</i>	vous <i>you</i>
ils <i>they</i>	en <i>of them</i>	leur <i>to them</i>	les <i>them</i>
elles <i>they</i>	en <i>of them</i>	leur <i>to them</i>	les <i>them</i>
		se <i>to themselves</i>	se <i>themselves</i>

DECLENSION OF THE DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

N.	G.	D.	Acc.
moi <i>I</i>	de moi <i>of me</i>	à moi <i>to me</i>	moi <i>me</i>
toi <i>thou</i>	de toi <i>of thee</i>	à toi <i>to thee</i>	toi <i>thee</i>
lui <i>he</i>	de lui <i>of him</i>	à lui <i>to him</i>	lui <i>him</i>
	de soi <i>of one's self</i>	à soi <i>to one's self</i>	soi <i>one's self</i>
elle <i>she</i>	d'elle <i>of her</i>	à elle <i>to her</i>	elle <i>her</i>
nous <i>we</i>	de nous <i>of us</i>	à nous <i>to us</i>	nous <i>us</i>
vous <i>you</i>	de vous <i>of you</i>	à vous <i>to you</i>	vous <i>you</i>
eux <i>they</i>	d'eux <i>of them</i>	à eux <i>to them</i>	eux <i>them</i>
elles <i>they</i>	d'elles <i>of them</i>	à elles <i>to them</i>	elles <i>them</i>

The conjunctive pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, in the nominative case precede their verb when there is no interrogation, but are inverted in a few other instances, and in all interrogative sentences: ex. *je parle, &c.* I speak; *parlez-vous?* do you speak? *dit-il, says he.*

If the personal pronouns be in the genitive, dative, or accusative, they always go immediately before the verb they are governed by, or before its auxiliary in compound tenses: ex. *je les connais*, I know them; *je les ai connus*, I have known them. If, however, the verb were in the imperative affirmative, the governed pronouns should go after it: ex. *voyez-les, parlez-lui*, see them, speak to him. The disjunctive pronouns are put in the same place in French as they are in English, and require no explanation.

N. B. A *c* is put under the pronoun when it is conjunctive, and a *d* when it is disjunctive.

I speak. Who speaks? I. He reads. Who reads? He.
c parle qui parle d c lit qui lit d

They dance. Who dance? They. He speaks to me; he
c dansent qui danse: d c d
 and his brother speak against me; they love me; you
et son frère parlent contre d c aiment c c
 know them; you speak to him; you speak of them; you
connaîtrez c c parlez c c d c
 speak against them; we love you; we respect them; we
contre d c aimons c c respectons c c
 respect him; he speaks to you and to me; he speaks to him
c c parle d et d c d
 and to her.
et d

2. OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The possessive pronouns denote the possession, and particularise the substantive to which they have reference. They are called conjunctive when they come before a substantive; and disjunctive when they refer to a substantive antecedent. The first take the preposition *de* in the genitive case, and *à* in the dative; the second are declined with the definite article *le, la, les* in the nominative and accusative; *du, de la, des* in the genitive; and *au, à la, aux* in the dative, like a substantive. Both are declinable, and agree in gender and number with the noun to which they are joined or relative. They are as follows:

CONJUNCTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.			Plural.		
m.	f.		m.	f.	
mon	ma	mon	mes		my
ton	ta	ton	tes		thy
son	sa	son	ses		one's, his, her, its
notre			nos	alike	our
votre	alike		vos		your
leur			leurs		their

DISJUNCTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

m.	f.	m.	f.	
le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	mine
le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes	thine
le sien	la sienne	les siens	les siennes	his, hers, its
le nôtre	la nôtre	les nôtres		ours
le vôtre	la vôtre	les vôtres	alike	yours
le leur	la leur	les leurs		theirs

My brother; my sister; my brothers; my sisters; of my
frère m sœur f

garden; of my house; of my books; of my tables; to my
jardin m *maison* f *livres* pl —pl
 country; to my nation; to my horses; to my cows; his
pays m — f *chevaux* pl *vaches* pl
 master; his mistress; of his pleasure; to his duty; our
maître m *maîtresse* f *plaisir* m *devoir* m
 friend; of your picture; to their room; of our closet; to
ami m *tableau* m *chambre* f *cabinet*
 your bed; of their enemies; of my soul; to his humour.
 lit *ennemis* pl *âme* f *humeur* h

3. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The demonstrative pronouns denote precisely, and, as it were, point to the eye, the person or thing spoken of. They are the following:

Singular.			Plural.		
m.	f.		m.	f.	
1. ce, cet *	cette,	<i>this, that</i>	ces	ces	<i>these, those</i>
2. celui	celle,	<i>that</i>	ceux	celles	<i>those</i>
3. celui-ci	celle-ci	<i>this</i>	ceux-ci	celles-ci	<i>these</i>
celui-là	celle-là	<i>that</i>	ceux-là	celles-là	<i>those</i>
4. ceci, m. <i>this</i> ; cela m. <i>that</i> . They are used as follows.					

1. The pronoun *ce* &c. is used before a substantive: as, *ce jardin, cet oiseau, cet homme, cette femme, ces enfants, ces filles*.

2. *Celui, celle*, &c. are used for *that* and *those*, followed by a genitive case, or a relative pronoun: as, *ce livre vaut mieux que celui de mon frère*, this book is better than *that* of my brother.

3. When we have spoken of several objects, *celui-ci*, or *celle-ci* are used with reference to the last; and *celui-là*, or *celle-là* to the former: as, *le vice et la vertu ont des effets contraires*; *celle-ci rend l'homme heureux, et celui-là le rend malheureux*.

4. *Ceci* and *cela* are used to show some particular object, without naming it: as, *donnez-moi ceci, et gardez cela pour vous*; give me *this*, and keep *that* for yourself.

N. B. These pronouns agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they are joined or relative. They take the preposition *de* for the genitive case, and *à* for the dative.

This wine is good; that beer is good; that man is
 vin m est bon *bière* f *homme* h

* *Cet* is used instead of *ce*, when the next word begins with a vowel or an h mute.

learned; that woman is learned; these apples are ripe; do
savoir *femme* *pommes sont mûres*
 not speak of that child; do not speak of that girl; of these
ne parlez pas *enfant m* *fille f*
 pens; to these books; this bird; of that cage; to that
plumes pl *livres pl* *oiseau s* — *f*
 country; these arms; of these soldiers; to those armies;
pays m *armes pl* *soldats pl* *armées pl*
 give me this or that; do not do that.
donnez-moi ou ne faites pas.

4. OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The relative pronouns have a particular reference to the noun to which they belong, and come immediately after it in French. They are as follows:

PRONOUNS RELATIVE TO PERSONS.

Of both Genders and Numbers.

N.	qui	who
G.	de qui, dont	whose, of whom
D.	à qui	to whom
• Acc.	que	whom

PRONOUNS RELATIVE TO ANIMALS AND THINGS.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>
N.	qui	le quel	la. quelle	qui	les quels	les quelles
G.	dont	du quel	de la quelle	dont	des quels	des quelles
D.		au quel	à la quelle		aux quels	aux quelles
Acc.	que	le quel	la quelle	que	les quels	les quelles

N.B. *Qui* is used in the nominative, *dont* in the genitive, and *que* in the accusative, for both genders and numbers of all sorts of objects: as, *l'homme qui lit*, *le cheval qui paît*, *le livre qui est sur la table*, nom.—*l'homme dont vous parlez*, *le cheval dont vous parlez*, *le livre dont vous parlez*, gen.—*l'homme que je vois*, *le cheval que je vois*, *le livre que je vois*, acc.

5. OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The interrogative pronouns are used to ask questions, and

have reference to the noun mentioned in the answer: as, *qui est là? — votre frère.* They are the following:

WITH REFERENCE TO PERSONS. WITH REFERENCE TO THINGS.

N.	qui	who?		quoi	what?
G.	de qui	of whom?		de quoi	of what?
D.	à qui	to whom?		à quoi	to what?
Acc.	qui	whom?		que	what?

WITH REFERENCE TO PERSONS AND THINGS.

		Singular.		Plural.		
		m.	f.	m.	f.	
N. Acc.		quel	quelle	quels	quelles	what?
G.	de quel	de quelle	de quels	de quelles		of what?
D.	à quel	à quelle	à quels	à quelles		to what?

WITH REFERENCE TO PERSONS AND THINGS.

N. Acc.	lequel	laquelle	lesquels	lesquelles	which?
G.	duquel	de laquelle	desquels	desquelles	of which?
D.	auquel	à laquelle	auxquels	auxquelles	to which?

N. B. *What*, as an interrogative, is expressed by *quel* or *quelle* before a substantive: as, *Quel livre lisez-vous?* *what book do you read?* After a preposition it is expressed by *quoi*, as, *Je sais en quoi vous êtes coupable,* I know of *what* you are guilty.

6. OF INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

The indeterminate pronouns are so called, because they express a vague and indeterminate object. They are the following:

on	one (<i>one's-self</i>),	quiconque	whoever
le même	the same	l'un l'autre	one another
plusieurs	many, several	l'un et l'autre	both
autres	others	l'un ou l'autre	either
quelqu'un	somebody	ni l'un ni l'autre	neither
chacun	everybody	aucun	none
tout	everything	personne	nobody
tout ce qui	whatever	rien	nothing

All these pronouns take the preposition *de* for the genitive, and *à* for the dative: as, *rien, de rien, à rien.*

As the three last classes of pronouns cannot be applied but in sentences too difficult for beginners, the exercises upon them will be found in the syntax, rule 79, and following.

OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

Inf. Avoir, *to have.* *P. pr.* ayant, *having.* *P. p.* eu *had.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>J'</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elles</i>
*A Ai,	as, a;		avons,	avez,	ont.
B Avais,	avais,	avait;	avions,	aviez,	avaient.
C Eus,	eus,	eut;	eûmes,	eûtes,	eurent.
D Aurai	auras,	aura;	aurons,	aurez,	auront.
E Aurais,	aurais,	aurait;	aurions,	auriez,	auraient.
F Aie,	aies,	ait;	ayons,	ayez,	aient.
G Eusse,	eusses,	eût;	eussions,	eussiez,	eussent.
H ...	aie,	ait;	ayons,	ayez,	aient.

N. B. You must apply here, and always in future, the rules for the place of adjectives, and those for the gender and the plural of nouns and adjectives.

A. I have a new riband; she has a new gown; we have
neuf ruban robe f
 new stockings; you have new ruffles; they have a fine
des † bas des † manchette beau
 nosegay.—B. I had a good master; she had a good mistress;
bouquet bon maître maîtresse
 we had good brothers; you had good sisters; they had
de frère de † sœurs
 good friends.—C. I had a large garden; he had a great
de † ami grand jardin
 house; we had two large gardens; you had two great
maison deux
 houses; they had a young turkey for their dinner.—D. I
jeune dindon pour diner
 shall have a white horse; he will have a white waistcoat;
blanc cheval veste f
 we shall have white curtains; you will have a bad supper;
des † rideau mauvais souper
 they will have a bad excuse.—E. I would have delicious
—f un délicieux
 fruit, she would have a delicious pear; we would have a
— poire
 precious jewel; you would have a precious stone; they
précieux jouuu pierre

* The letter A denotes the present tense of the indicative mood, B the imperfect, C the preterite, D the future, E the conditional, F the present of the subjunctive, G the preterite, and H the imperative. *P. pr.* denotes present participle, *P. p.* past participle.

† See the *Partitive Article*, page 10.

would have a bloody war.—F. That I may have sincere
sanglant guerre *des** —
 friends; that he may have elevated sentiments; that we
ami *des* élevé* —
 may have delightful landscapes; that you may have
des délicieux paysage* *des**
 prepossessing manners; that they may have enlightened
présentant manière *des* éclairé*
 judges.—G. That I might have a sword, a musket, and
juge *épée* *fusil* *des**
 pistols; that he might have a furnished house; that we
pistolet *garni maison*
 might have faithful servants; that you might have a
des fidèle domestique*
 pretty dressing-room; that they might have a beautiful
joli cabinet de toilette *superbe*
 drawing-room.—H. Have new gloves; let him have
salon de compagnie *s des* neuf gant* *qu'il* *des**
 precious jewels; let us have a skilful gardener; have
précieux bijou *habile jardinier* *pl de**
 large buildings; let them have a regular conduct.
grand bâtiment *régulier conduite f.*

Inf. Etre, to be. *P. pr.* étant, being. *P. p.* été, been.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>Je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elles.</i>
A Suis,	es,	est;	sommes,	êtes,	sont.	
B Etais,	étais,	était;	étions,	étiez,	étaient.	
C Fus,	fus,	fut;	fûmes,	fûtes,	furent.	
D Serai,	seras,	sera;	serons,	serez,	seront.	
E Serais,	serais,	serait;	serions,	seriez,	seraient.	
F Sois,	sois,	soit;	soyons,	soyez,	soient.	
G Fusse,	fusses,	fût;	fussions,	fussiez,	fussent.	
H	sois,	soit;	soyons,	soyez,	soient.	

A. I am sick; thou art young; he is unhappy; she is
malade *jeune* *malheureux*
 unhappy; we are laborious; you are modest; they are
—rieux *—te*
 lazy.—B. I was prudent; she was prudent; we were dis-
pareseux —
 creet; you were studious; they were jealous; your sisters
cret *—dieux* *jaloux* *sœurs*
 were jealous.—C. I was his intimate friend; she was my
—me *ami*
 greatest enemy; we were generous; you were ungrateful;
plus grand ennemie *généreux* *ingrat*
 they were cruel; your daughters were cruel.—D. I shall be
 — *filles*

a brave soldier; he will be a handsome man; she will be a
soldat *bel* *homme* *
 handsome woman; we will be faithful to our country; you
femme *fidèle* *pays*
 will be in continual fears; they will be our mortal
dans des *—uel* *crainte* *f* *—tel*
 enemies.—E. I. should be ready; she would be trouble-
ennemi *prêt* *incom*—
 some; we should be very ridiculous; you would be too
mode *très* *—le* *trop*
 eager; they would be extremely unpolite.—F. That I may
empressé *extrêmement* *malhonnête*
 be so impatient; that he may be obstinate; that we may
si *—* *entêté*
 be unreasonable; that you may be humane and generous;
déraisonnable *humain* *généreux*
 that they may be guilty.—G. That I might be grateful;
coupable *reconnaisant*
 that she might be careful; that we might be attentive; that
soigneux *—tif*
 you might be credulous; that they might be inconsiderate.
—le *indiscret*
 —H. Be benevolent; let him be firm and courageous; let
s *bienfaisant* *ferme* *—geux*
 us be reserved; be economical and temperate; let them be
réservé *économe* *sobre* *pl*
 kind and indulgent.
doux *compatissant*.

THE TWO REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Parl-er, to speak.		P. pr. parl-ant.		P. p. parl-é.†	
Singular.		Plural.			
	<i>Je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i> or <i>elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i> <i>ils</i> or <i>elles</i> .
A Parl	-e,	es,	e ;	ons,	ez, ent.
B Parl	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	ions,	iez, aient.
C Parl	-ai,	as,	a ;	âmes,	âtes, èrent.

* See page iv.

† The pupil must repeat the English words, which answer to every tense and person of the French verbs. This will be an easy task, if he remember, that to is the mark of the infinitive, was do-ing, the mark of the imperfect, shall or will, of the future, would, could, or should, of the conditional, may, of the present of the subjunctive, might, of the preterite, and let, of the imperative.

D	Parl-e	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
E	Parl-e	-rais,	rais,	rait;	rions,	riez,	raient.
F	Parl	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
G	Parl	asse,	asses,	ât;	ussions,	assiez,	assent.
H	Parl	-e,	e;	ons,	ez,	ent.

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminated in *er*.*

REMARK 1st. In verbs ending in *ger* the *e* is not suppressed in those tenses where the *g* is to be followed by *a* or *o*, in order to preserve to *g* its soft pronunciation: as, *mangeant, jugeons, je négligeai*.

2dly. In verbs ending in *cer*, we put, for the same reason, a cedilla under *c*, when followed by *a* or *o*; as, *suçant, plaçons, j'effaçai*.

3dly. In verbs ending in *oyer, oyer, and uyer*, the *y* is changed into *i* before a mute *e*; as, *j'emploie, il essuie, j'ap- puierai, il nettoierait*.

To conjugate a verb upon another, is to make the final of every tense and person of one verb, in perfect rhyme with the verb upon which it is conjugated. To make this rhyme perfect, consider the infinitive as the root of verbs from which all tenses are formed; and change for any person the same letters in all verbs of the same conjugation: thus, as *parler* makes *parlant, parlé, je parle, je parlais*; *chanter* will make *chantant, chanté, je chante, je chantais*; and so on for all other tenses and persons without any exception.

A. I love my father; thou adorest God; he alarms the
aimer père —rer Dieu —mer
country; she dances very well; we announce good news;
pays —scr très-bien annoncer de nouvelles
you water the garden; they attack the enemy.—B. I did
arroser jardin attaquer ennemi
sweep the school; he did warm the bed; she did embroider
balayer école bassiner broder
her gown; we did seal the letter; you did begin your
robe f cacheter lettre f commencer
exercise; they did condemn my conduct.—C. I rewarded
thème m condamner conduite f récompenser
the servant; he considered the question; she comforted her
domestique m considérer — consoler
mother; we satisfied our master; you corrected the faults;
contenter maître corriger faute
they unsealed the letter.—D. I will decide the question; he
décacheter lettre f décider —
will declare war; she will breakfast with us; we will
déclarer la guerre déjeuner avec

* For further observations see Thibaudin's French Verbs.

arm the wicked; you will undeceive my sister; they will
armer méchants . détromper . sœur
 defer the punishment.—E. I would frequent good company;
différer . punition . fréquenter la compagnie
 he would engrave my arms; she would humble your pride;
graver armes humilier orgueil
 we would print a grammar; you would forget injuries;
imprimer grammaire f oublier les —re
 they would reform their conduct.—F. That I may give this
réformer donner
 plaything to my sister; that he may propose a salutary
joujou sœur —ser —taire
 advice; that we may admire the beauty of that landscape;
avis —rer beauté paysage
 that you may think of my misfortunes; that they may
penser à malheur
 forget an essential circumstance.—G. That I might surmount
oublier —tiel circonstance surmonter
 the obstacles; that he might reinforce his party; that we
— renforcer parti
 might shut the shutter; that you might begin that
fermer volet commencer
 charming history; that they might protect that bad man.—
—mant histoire protéger méchant homme
 H. Sacrifice thy interest to the public good; let him unravel
—fier intérêt bien débrouiller
 that business; let us finish this book; appease his anger;
affaire f achever livre m appaiser colère f
 let them avoid the danger.
éviter

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Ag-ir, to act. P. pr. ag-issant. P. p. ag-i.

	J'	tu	il or elle	nous	vous	ils or elles
A Ag	-is,	is,	it;	issons,	issez,	issent.
B Ag-iss	-ais,	ais,	ait;	ions,	iez,	aient.
C Ag	-is,	is,	it;	imes,	îtes,	irent.
D Ag-i	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
E Ag-i	-rais,	rais,	rait;	rions,	riez,	raient.
F Ag-iss	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
G Ag	-isse,	isses,	ît;	issions,	issiez,	issent.
H Ag	...	-is,	isse;	issons,	issez,	issent.

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminated in *ir*.

A. I shorten the way; he softens the heart; she liberates
accourcir chemin adoucir cœur pl affranchir
 c 6

her slaves; we remove difficulties; you applaud what he
esclave applaudir les —té —dir à ce qu'il

says; they examine into the question.—B. I did warn your

brother of his danger: he did build the fortifications of our
dit approfondir — avertir*

town; we did banish the wicked from our society; you did
ville bannir méchans société

choose a bad colour; they did convert the impious.—C. I
choisir mauvais couleur —tir impie pl

unfurnished the house; he demolished the wall; we dis-
*dégarnir maison démolir mur **

obeyed our master; you invaded their country; they filled
obéir à maître envahir pays remplir

the bottle with wine.—D. I shall finish my work to-night;
bouteille de vin finir ouvrage ce soir

this tree will soon blossom; he will furnish this room; we
arbre fleurir bientôt garnir chambre f

shall succeed in our undertaking; you will enjoy good
réussir dans entreprise jouir d'une

health; they will languish a long while.—E. I would feed
*santé languir * longtemps nourrir*

the chickens; he would betray my interest; we would
poulet trahir intérêt pl

weaken their party; you would roast the hare; they would
affaiblir parti rôtir lièvre m

undergo the punishment.—F. That I may pity his sor-
*subir punition * compatir à cha-*

rows; that he may embellish his country-seat; that we
grin embellir maison de campagne

may soften our enemies; that you may enrich your family;
fléchir ennemi enrichir famille

that they may sully their glory.—G. That I might cherish
ternir gloire chérir

my relations; that she might soften that unfeeling heart;
parent attendrir insensible cœur

that we might reflect on the shortness of life; that you
réfléchir sur brièveté la vie

might shudder with horror; that they might submit to an
frémir d'horreur fléchir sous

unjust yoke.—H. Punish thy scholars for their inattention;
injuste joug punir écolier de —

let him establish wise laws; let us rebuild our farm;
établir des sage lui rebâtir ferme

polish those spoons; let them bless the providence.
polir cuiller bénir

OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

For brevity's sake we shall give only the first person of each tense, whenever all the others are formed regularly from this first person. The learner must therefore refer to the following table, where he will find all the remaining terminations of the tenses in every verb when there is no irregularity.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

		<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
		<i>Je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>		<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elles</i>
A.	{ 1st conj.	e,	es,	e ;	}	ons	ez,	ent.
	{ 2d conj.	s,	s,	t ;				

IMPERFECT.

B.	aïs,	aïs,	ait ;	ions,	iez,	aient.
----	------	------	-------	-------	------	--------

PRETERITE.

C.	{ 1st conj.	ai,	as,	a ;	âmes,	âtes,	èrent.
	{ 2d conj.	s,	s,	t ;	mes,	tes,	rent.

FUTURE.

D.	rai,	ras,	ra ;	rons,	rez,	ront.
----	------	------	------	-------	------	-------

CONDITIONAL.

E.	rais,	rais,	rait ;	rions,	riez,	raient.
----	-------	-------	--------	--------	-------	---------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

F.	e,	es,	e ;	ions,	iez,	ent.
----	----	-----	-----	-------	------	------

IMPERFECT.

G.	{ 1st conj.	asse,	asses,	ât ;	assions,	assiez,	assent.
	{ 2d conj.	sse,	sses,	t ;	ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

IMPERATIVE.

H.	{ 1st conj.	e,	e ;	}	ons,	ez,	ent.
	{ 2d conj.	s,	e ;				

N. B. When the letters *d*, *t*, or *c*, are in the root of the present tense, they receive no addition in the third person singular.

The irregular verbs are classed by groups, according to the termination of their infinitive mood.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN ER.

Aller, to go. *P. pr.* allant. *P. p.* allé.

A. Vais, vas, va; allons, allez, vont.

B. Allais.—C. Allai.—D. Irai.—E. Ir^{ai}ais.

F. Aille, ailles, aille; allions, alliez, aillent.—G. Allasse.

H. Va, aille; allons, allez, aillent.

* Envoyer, to send. *P. pr.* envoyant. *P. p.* envoyé.

A. Envoie.—B. Envoyais.—C. Envoyai.—D. Enverrai.

E. Enverrais.—F. Envoie.—G. Envoyasse.—H. Envoie.

Conjugate in the same manner *renvoyer*, to send back, to dismiss; but *convoier*, to escort, is regular.

A. I go every day to the park; he sends back to you your
tous les jours *parc*
 books; we go to-night to the play; they go to dine (out
ce soir *comédie* * *dîner à*
 of town).—B. I (was going) (to your house) when I
la campagne *chez vous* *quand ai*
 met you.—C. We went yesterday to see a review.—D.
rencontr' * *voir revue*
 He will go to Richmond next week; we shall send
la prochain semaine f *du*
 succour to our allies; you will go (to-morrow) to fetch
secours *allié*
 my coat; they will (send back) our horses.—E. He would
habit *cheval*
 go without me; you would send too little money.—F. That
sans *trop peu d'argent*
 we may go into the wood; that they may send me my razors.
dans bois *rasoir*
 G. That she might dismiss her chambermaid; that we
femme de chambre
 might go to church.—H. Go to school; let us go to Vaux-
Péglise *sing.* *P'école* *au*
 hall; send your children (to take a walk).
enfant à la promenade

IRREGULAR VERBS IN IR.

Acquérir, to acquire. *P. pr.* acquérant. *P. p.* acquis.

A. Acquiers, -iers, -iert; acquér-ons, -ez, acquièrent.

B. Acquérais.—C. Acquis.—D. Acquerrai.—E. Acquerrais.

F. Acquièr-e, -es, -e; acquér-ions, -iez, acquièrent.

G. Acquisse.—H. Acquiers

Conjugate in the same manner *conquérir*, to conquer; *enquérir*, to enquire; and *requérir*, to request, to require.

Assaillir, to assault. *P. pr.* assaillant. *P. p.* assailli.

- A. Assaille. — B. Assaillais. — C. Assaillis. — D. Assaillirai.
E. Assaillirais. — F. Assaille. — G. Assaillisse. — H. Assaille.

Conjugate in the same manner *tressaillir*, to start.

Bouillir, to boil. *P. pr.* bouillant. *P. p.* bouilli.

- A. Bous, bous, bout; bouillons, bouillez, bouillent.
B. Bouillais. — C. Bouillis. — D. Bouillirai. — E. Bouillirais.
F. Bouille. — G. Bouillisse. — H. Bous.

Conjugate in the same manner *ébouillir*, to boil down; and *rebouillir*, to boil again.

Courir, to run. *P. pr.* courant. *P. p.* couru.

- A. Cours, cours, court; courons, courez, courent.
B. Courais. — C. Courus. — D. Courrai. — E. Courrais.
F. Coure. — G. Courusse. — H. Cours.

Conjugate in the same manner *accourir*, to run to; *concourir*, to concur; *discourir* to discourse; *encourir*, to incur; *parcourir*, to run over; *recourir*, to have recourse; and *secourir*, to assist.

Cueillir, to gather. *P. pr.* cueillant. *P. p.* cueilli.

- A. Cueille. — B. Cueillais. — C. Cueillis. — D. Cueillirai.
E. Cueillirais. — F. Cueille. — G. Cueillisse. — H. Cueille.

Conjugate in the same manner *accueillir*, to welcome; and *recueillir*, to collect.

Fuir, to flee. *P. pr.* Fuyant. *P. p.* Fui.

- A. Fuis, fuis, fuit; fuyons, fuyez, fuient.
B. Fuyais. — C. Fuis. — D. Fuirai. — E. Fuirais.
F. Fuie, fuies, fuie; fuyions, fuyiez, fuient.
G. Fuisse, not commonly used. — H. Fuis.

Conjugate in the same manner *s'enfuir*, to run away.

Mourir, to die. *P. pr.* mourant. *P. p.* mort.

- A. Meurs, meurs, meurt; mourons, mourez, meurent.
B. Mourais. — C. Mourus. — D. Mourrai. — E. Mourrais.
F. Meure, meures, meure; mourions, mouriez, meurent.
G. Mourusse. — H. Meurs.

Vêtir, to clothe. P. pr. Vêtant. P. p. Vêtu.

- A. Vêts, vêts, vêt; vêtons, vêtez, vêtent. → B. Vêtais.
 C. Vêtais. → D. Vêtirai. → E. Vêtirais. → F. Vête. → G. Vétisse
 H. Vêts.

Conjugate in the same manner *revêtir*, to invest; and *dévêtir*, to divest.

- A. I acquire every day new knowledge; he
tous les jours de nouveau connaissance pl
 collects a selection of useful books; that water boils too
choix m utile livre eau trop
 fast; we (have recourse) to your generosity; you gather
fort générosité
 fruits which are not ripe; they clothe all the poor
des — mûr revêtir pauvre pl
 of their parish. → B. I did incur the hatred of that cruel
paroisse haine f —
 man; that affair required all your attention; we did
affaire f —
 clothe all the orphans of our neighbourhood; you did en-
vêtir orphelin voisinage
 quire about idle stories; they were dying with fear. —
de vain histoire se mourir de peur
 C. I ran at his voice; Alexander conquered a great part of
accourir à voix partie
 Asia; we ran away at the first appearance of danger;
l'Asie à premier apparence —
 you did not succour him in time; they died last year. —
à temps dernier l'année
 D. I shall flee from bad companies; he will discourse
** les mauvais compagnie*
 upon the immortality of the soul; we shall assault the
sur — le âme
 enemy to-morrow in their entrenchments; by your
ennemi pl demain dans retranchement par
 imprudence, will you not concur to the ruin of your
ruine
 brother? they will receive you with kindness. → E. I would
frère accueillir avec bonté
 (run over) all that province; he would start with joy; we
— f de joie
 should run faster than your friend; you would incur the
plus vite que ami
 displeasure of your parents; they would (throw off some
disgrâce — se dévêtir
 clothing) before summer. → F. That I may reap corn
avant l'été recueillir du blé

and wine for two years; have a care that the milk do not
du vin pour deux ans H * *soin* *lait*
 (boil again); that we may request that favour from you;
fauteur
 that you may flee ^{le mauvais exemple} bad example; that they may die in
bras the arms of their friends.—G. That I might run after ^{dans}
chimères chimeras; that he might collect the fruit of his labours;
chimère — *travail*
 that we might start with fear; that you might clothe
de peur yourself more fashionably; that those ladies might acquire
 * *plus à la mode* *dame*
 a general esteem by their modesty.—H. Gather these flowers
l'estime f — *lie* *fleur*
 and fruits for thy sisters; let him run away rather than
ces — pour sœur *plutôt que*
 (expose himself) to perish; let us run over the career of
de s'exposer périr carrière
 life with patience and resignation; enquire about that
la vie avec — — de
 event; let them run at the voice of that honest man
événement accourir à voix honnête
 and assist him.
qu'ils

IRREGULAR VERBS IN MIR, TIR, VIR

Sen-tir, to feel. P. pr. sen-tant, P. p. sen-ti.

- A. Sens, sens, sent; sentons, sentez, sentent.
 B. Sentais.—C. Sentis.—D. Sentirai.—E. Sentirais.
 F. Sente.—G. Sentisse.—H. Sens, sente.

• Conjugate in the same manner the sixteen following verbs terminated in *mir, tir, vir*.

consentir, to consent.	s'endormir, to fall asleep.
démentir, to give the lie.	se rendormir, to fall asleep again.
desservir, to clear the table.	repartir, to set out again, to reply.
dormir, to sleep.	se repentir, to repent.
endormir, to lull asleep.	ressentir, to resent.
mentir, to lie.	ressortir, to go out again.
partir, to set out.	servir, to serve.
pressentir, to foresee.	sortir, to go out.
rendormir, to lull asleep again.	

- A. I consent to the marriage of my son; (she tells a falsehood) as often as she opens her mouth; we (set out) for France to-morrow; you apprehend misfortunes before they come; they (lull asleep) the children. — B. I did sleep very well; he did smell very bad; we did serve our country; you did (go out) before me; they did feel the effects of his anger. — C. I slept very well yesterday; he felt his misfortune; we consented to pay your father; you (went out) without my leave; they (went out again) as soon as they were returned. — D. I shall (go out) to-morrow if it be fine weather; he will serve his friend; we shall smell the dinner when it is ready; you will consent (to go there); they will (set out) to-morrow for London. — E. I would contradict that report; he would sleep immediately; we should injure more than serve you; I thought you would (set out again) before him; the children would sleep. — F. That I may consent to that bargain, that he may belie his character; that we may (clear the table) before we (go out); that you may sleep all night; that they may wheedle that credulous man by vain promises. — G. That I might (set out) sooner than I thought; that he might (tell a falsehood) designedly; that we might foresee your designs; that you might serve me with more zeal; that they might feel the horror of their situation. — H. (Be sensible of) all my good.
- mariage* *fil* *mentir*
toutes les fois qu'elle ouvre la bouche *pour*
la — *demain* *pressentir les malheurs avant qu'ils*
arrivent *enfant*
très-mauvais *pays*
avant moi *ressentir* *effet*
colère *f* *lâcher* *sentir* *mal-*
heur *à payer* *père*
sans *permission* *aussi-tôt qu'ils*
furent revenus *demain* *s'il fait*
temps *ami* *dîner*
quand il sera prêt *à y aller*
pour Londres *démentir*
rapport *sur-le-champ* *vous desservir*
plus que nous ne vous servir E * *croyais que*
avant lui *enfant*
marché *démentir*
caractère m *avant que* F
toute la nuit *endormir*
crédule *par de — promesse*
plus tôt, que je ne pensais
de dessein prémédité *dessein*
avec plus de zèle *sentir*
l'horreur — *sentir* *toute* *bonté*

ness to thee; let him (sleep again) for a few hours;
envers toi * * * *quelques heures*
 let us (go out again) (as soon as possible); consent to be.
au plus tôt
 miserable rather than to offend God; let them (go out) when
 — *plutôt que d'offenser Dieu* *quand*
 they will.
voudront.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN FRIR, VRIR.

Off-rir, to offer. P. pr. Off-rant. P. p. off-ert.

- A. Offre, offres, offre; offrons, offrez, offrent.
B. Offrais. — C. Offris. — D. Offrirai. — E. Offrirais.
F. Offre. — G. Offreisse — H. Offre.

Conjugate in the same manner all verbs terminated in *frir, vrir*.

A. I offer my services to your father; my cousin suffers
 (very much); we discover your design; they open the
beaucoup découvrir dessein ouvrir
 window.—B. I did suffer with patience; he did offer too
fenêtre f avec — trop
 little; we did (open a little) the door; you did undervalue
peu entr'ouvrir porte f mésoffrir
 that stuff too much; they did renew all the wounds of my
trop de cette étoffe rouvrir toutes plaie
 heart.—C. I discovered his malice; he suffered with much
cœur — f avec beaucoup de
 courage; we offered our assistance to your brother; you
 — *secours pl frère*
 covered the table with money; they (covered again) the
couvrir — f d'argent recouvrir
 bed.—D. I shall suffer more than you think; he will dis-
lit plus que vous ne pensez
 cover the fraud; we will open our heart to our father; they
fraude f cœur
 will offer a great sum of money.—E. I would discover the
grand somme argent
 snare; he would cover that man with filth; we should
piège d'ordure
 (open again) the shop; you would (cover again) this book;
recouvrir boutique f recouvrir livre m
 they would (open a little) the window.—F. That I may dis-
fenêtre f

cover the plot formed against me; that he may offer a great
complot formé contre
 sum for that land; that we may suffer with patience; that
somme de terre *avec* —
 you may open your heart to your friends; that they may
cœur *ami*
 (open a little) their eyes.—G. That I might (open again) that
les yeux
 trunk; that she might discover all his perversity; that we
malle *toute* —*te*
 might suffer your ill treatment; that you might offer
mauvais traitement
 to (set off) with him; that they might cover him with con-
de partir avec lui *de*
 fusion.—H. (Cover again) this pot; let him suffer without
 — *s* — *sans*
 complaining; let us uncover the roof of my house; (open
se plaindre *découvrir* *toit* *maison*
 again) the coach; let them offer my thanks to the minister.
carrosse *remercement* —*tre*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN ENIR.

Tenir, to hold. *P. pr.* tenant. *P. p.* tenu.

- A. Tiens, tiens, tient; tenons, tenez, tiennent.
 B. Tenais.—C. Tins.—D. Tiendrai.—E. Tiendrais.
 F. Tienne.—G. Tinsse.—H. Tiens, tienne; tenons, tenez, tiennent.

Conjugate in the same manner all verbs terminated in *enir*.

A. I hold my book; she comes to see us every fortnight;
livre m *venir* * *voir tous les quinze jours*
 we agree with you that he was in the wrong; you become
convenir *qu'il avait* * * *tort* *devenir*
 an honest man; these horses belong to my father.—B. I did
 * *honnête* *cheval appartenir*
 maintain the fact; he did obtain a good place; we did re-
soutenir *fait* *obtenir* — *reve-*
 turn home; you did detain my son; they did retain a part
nir à la maison *détenir* *fil* *retenir partie*
 of the money.—C. I disowned what he said; he maintained
argent *disconvenir de ce qu'il dit* —*tenir*
 discipline in the army; we restrained the mob; you inter-
la — *f* *dans* *armée* *contenir* *populace* *inter-*
 posed in the affair; they kept their promises.—D. I shall
venir dans *affaire* *tenir* *promesse*

obtain the consent of the king; she will return to-night
obtenir consentement roi revenir ce soir
 from town; we shall attain our end; you will support your
de la ville parvenir à but soutenir
 rank; they will return in a few days.—E. I would maintain
rang revenir sous peu de jours entretenir
 my family; he would become a learned man; you would
*famille devenir * savant*
 detain the captain; they would obtain what they ask.—
détenir capitaine obtenir ce qu' demander
 F. That I may relieve the wants of that unfortunate family;
subvenir aux besoins malheureux famille
 that he may deceive his judges; that we may prevent the
circonvenir juges prévenir
 bad effects of the prejudices of their infancy; that you
mauvais effet préjugé enfance
 may agree that my reasons are better than yours; that they
raison meilleur que
 may attain the highest pitch of glory.—G. That I might
parvenir à plus haut comble in gloire
 obtain better terms from him; that she might become
de condition de
 more prudent; that we might sustain the weight of
plus — soutenir poids
 affliction with courage; that you might (come back) be-
l' — avec — revenir a-
 fore the end of this month; that they might detain him
vant fin mois retenir
 till the beginning of next week.—H. Keep thy
jusqu'au commencement la prochain semaine f tenir
 word; let him become learned; let us prevent the mischief
parole f instruit mal pl.
 which could proceed from his imprudence; confess that
pourraient provenir de — convenir que
 you return too late; let them support the part of the
A trop tard soutenir parti
 innocent.
 —pl

IRREGULAR VERBS IN OIR.

Asseoir, to sit. P. pr. asseyant. P. p. assis.

- A. Assieds, assieds, assied; asseyons, asseyez, asseyent.
 B. Asseyais.—C. Assis.—D. Assièrai, or asseyerai.
 E. Assièrais, or asseyerais.—F. Asseye.—G. Assisse.
 H. Assieds.

This verb, and its compound *rasseoir*, to sit down again, are oftenest used as reflected verbs

Falloir, *to be necessary (impersonal)*. No *P. pr.* *P. p.* fallu.

- A. Il faut. — B. Il fallait. — C. Il fallut. — D. Il faudra.
E. Il faudrait. — F. Qu'il faille. — G. Qu'il fallût. (*No Imp.*)

Mouvoir, *to move*. *P. pr.* mouvant. *P. p.* mu.

- A. Meus, meus, meut ; mouvons, mouvez, meuvent.
B. Mouvais. — C. Mus. — D. Mouvrai. — E. Moutrais.
F. Meuve, meuves, meuve ; mouvions, mouviez, meuver
G. Musse. — H. Meus, meuve ; mouvons, mouvez, meuvent.

Conjugate in the same manner *émouvoir*, *to stir up* ; and *promouvoir*, *to promote*.

Pleuvoir, *to rain (impersonal)*. *P. pr.* Pleuvant. *P. p.* Plu.

- A. Il pleut. — B. Il pleuvait. — C. Il plut. — D. Il pleuvra.
E. Il pleuvrait. — F. Qu'il pleuve. — G. Qu'il plût. (*No Imp.*)

Pouvoir, *to be able*. *P. pr.* pouvant. *P. p.* pu.

- A. Puis or peux, peux, peut ; pouvons, pouvez, peuvent.
B. Pouvais. — C. Pus. — D. Pourrai. — E. Pourrais.
F. Puisse. — G. Pusse. (*No Imperative*).

Savoir, *to know*. *P. pr.* sachant. *P. p.* Su.

- A. Sais, sais, sait ; savons, savez, savent. — B. Savais.
C. Sus. — D. Saurai. — E. Saurais. — F. Sache. — G. Sussè.
H. Sache, sache ; sachons, sachez, sachent.

Valoir, *to be worth*. *P. pr.* valant. *P. p.* valu.

- A. Vaux, vaux, vaut ; valons, valez, valent.
B. Valais. — C. Valus. — D. Vaudrai. — E. Vaudrais.
F. Vaille, vailles, vaille ; valions, valiez, vaillent.
G. Valusse. — H. Vaux ; *pl.* valez.

Conjugate in the same manner, *équivaloir*, *to be equivalent*, and *revaloir*, *to return like for like* ; but *prévaloir*, *to prevail*, makes in the present of the subjunctive *que je prévale, tu prévalues, il prévale ; nous prévalions, vous prévaliez, ils prévalent*.

Voir, *to see*. *P. pr.* voyant. *P. p.* vu.

- A. Vois, vois, voit ; voyons, voyez, voient.
B. Voyais. — C. Vis. — D. Verrai. — E. Verrais.
F. Voic, voies, voie ; voyions, voyiez, voient. — G. Visse.
H. Vojs, voie ; voyons, voyez, voient.

Conjugate in the same manner *revoir*, *to see again*, and *entrevoir*, *to have a glimpse of*. *Prévoir*, *to foresee*, makes in the future and the conditional, *je prévoirai, je prévoirais* ; the other tenses like *voir*. *Pourvoir*, *to provide*, makes in the preterite of the indicative *je pourvus* ; in the future, *je*

pourvoirai; in the conditional, *je pourvoirais*; and, in the preterite of the subjunctive, *je pourvusse*; the other tenses like *voir*. • *Surseoir*, to supersede, is also conjugated like *voir*; but it makes in the future and the conditional *je surseurai*, *je surseoirais*, in the pret. *je sursis*; and in the p. p. *sursis*.

Vouloir, to be willing. P. pr. *voulant*. P. p. *voulu*.

- A. *Veux*, *veux*, *veut*; *voulons*, *voulez*, *veulent*.
 B. *Voulais*.—C. *Voulus*.—D. *Voudrai*.—E. *Voudrais*.
 F. *Veuille*, *veuilles*, *veuille*; *voulions*, *vouliez*, *veussent*.
 G. *Voulusse*.

N.B. The imperative *veux*, *voulons*, *voulez*, is very seldom used. *Veuillez* is used in the sense of, be so good as: example, *Veuillez permettre que je me retire*, be so good as to allow me to depart.

A. I (have a glimpse of) something shining under
quelque chose de brillant sous
 the bed; thou (art not better) than thy brother; the
lit ne valoir pas mieux que
 spring which moves the machine is very simple; it is ne-
cessaire qui —f *fort* —
 cessary to practise virtue, if we wish to be happy;
 * *pratiquer la vertu si l'on veut* 98 A *heureux*
 we can be very useful to you on that occasion; you
pouvoir très utile 47 *dans* —
 do not know your lesson; they see that they were mistaken.
 * *leçon s'étaient trompés*

—B. I did foresee that you would not succeed; it did rain
réussir E

yesterday; we could not (set off) sooner; you did prevail
hier pouvoir partir plus tôt
 over us; they did (stir up) the passions of the audience.—
sur émeouvoir auditeur pl

C. I foresaw the dangerous consequences of that step;
dangereux — *démarche* f
 he (sat down) under the shade of a tree; we revised his
asseoir à ombre arbre m revoir
 work before it was printed; you provided for the safety
ouvrage avant qu'on l'imprimât à sureté
 of your house; the judges did (put off) the execution of
maison juges surseoir dat. —

the arrest that they had decreed.—D. I shall know how to
arrêt B *rendre*
 remunerate you for your diligence; (he shall suffer for it),
récompenser de — *il me le rendrait*
 we shall (sit down again) when they are gone; you will see
se rasseoir quand D *partis*

better from this place; their apology will be equivalent to
mneur — *excuse* pl
 a refusal.—E. I would with all my heart oblige you in
refus *vouloir* *de* *cœur* — *ger*
 that affair; the king would promote him to a higher
affaire f *roi* *plus haut*
 office, if he would only seem to wish for it;
charge f; *s'il* *vouloir* B *seulement* *paraître* * *désirer* * *la*
 we should (put off) the pursuit of our designs; you would
surseoir dat. *poursuite* f *dessin*
 move the heart of that unfeeling man; they would
émouvoir *insensible*
 provide for our wants.—F. That I may prevail upon his
à *besoin* *sur la*
 hard-heartedness: I do not think that it will rain to-day;
dureté de son cœur *penser* F *aujourd'hui*
 that we may see again those happy days; that you may
heureux jour
 move that stone; that their estates may be equivalent to
pierre *terres*
 ours.—G. That I might sit down among his judges; that
s'asseoir *parmi* *juge*
 it might be necessary to ask his pardon; that we
 * *lui demander* * —
 might comfort him; that you might know where to find
pouvoir consoler *où* * *trouver*
 him; that those stockings might (be good for nothing).—
le *bas* *ne valoir rien*
 H. See the consequences of thy folly; let him provide for
 — *folie* *à*
 the happiness of his children; let us foresee the danger;
bonheur *enfant* —
 (sit down) by me; let them know three or four pages
s'asseoir *auprès de* *trois ou quatre* —
 of their catechism before dinner.
catéchisme avant le dîner.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN EVOIR.

Rec-evoir, to receive. P. *pr.* rec-avant. P. *p.* reçu.

- A. Reçois, reçois, reçoit; recevons, recevez, reçoivent.
 B. Recevais. — C. Reçus. — D. Recevrai. — E. Recevrais.
 F. Reçoive. — G. Reçusse. — H. Reçois, reçoive; recevons,
 recevez, reçoivent.

Conjugate in the same manner all verbs terminated in
evoir.

A. I perceive how[•] that has happened; he perceives your
concevoir comment cela est arrivé • apercevoir
intention; we owe ten pounds to your father; you receive
— *devoir dix livre*
a letter; they perceive the danger. — B. I did receive my
lettre f apercevoir — percevoir
revenues; he did (owe still) a great sum; we did frustrate
— *nu redevoir • somme décevoir*
his hopes; we did owe two thousand pounds; you did
espérance devoir mille livre
perceive his atrocity; they did receive his compliments
apercevoir — té • —
with contempt. — C. I received a visit from your sister;
mépris visite f de sœur
she conceived great hopes; we perceived a thief; you re-
concevoir de • apercevoir voleur
ceived (yesterday) a great sum of money; they conceived a
hier somme argent
great horror for his conduct. — D. I shall receive a letter
horreur de conduite f lettre f
from France in a few days; he will owe me two hundred
sous peu de jours cents
pounds at the death of my mother; we shall receive a re-
livre à mort ré-
ward for that brilliant action; you will easily perceive
compense pour cette brillant — apercevoir aisément
if they be guilty; they will conceive a new project. — E. I
*s'ils A coupables • nouveau projet**
would receive his advice; he should write to his brother;
avis devoir écrire frère
we should perceive if he said the truth; you ought to do
*apercevoir s'il dit vérité devoir * faire*
your exercise; they would receive your presents with joy.
thème présent joie
— F. That I may perceive the defects of that work; that he
défauts ouvrage
may owe more than he possesses; that we may conceive a
plus qu'il ne posséder A
sentence which perhaps the author himself does not con-
*phrase f que peut-être auteur lui-même * ne*
ceive; that you may receive unjust taxes; that they
A pas percevoir des injuste impôt
may receive that company with great respect. — G. That I
compagnie grand — •
might (owe still) a trifle; that he might deceive his
bagatelle • décevoir
friend by fine promises; that we might owe respect to
par de beau promesse • du —

his misfortunes; that they might conceive the depth of
malheur *profondeur*
 his plan; that you might perceive the castle (from such a
château de si
 distance).—H. Receive my thanks for all thy kindness;
loin *remerciement de toutes bonté pl*
 let him receive the interest of that money; let us conceive
percevoir intérêt argent
 the importance of our duties; receive that stranger with
devoirs étranger
 affection; let them conceive how far their imprudence will
jusqu'où
 take them
mener D

IRREGULAR VERBS IN AIRE.

Faire, to do, to make. *P. pr. faisant. P. p. fait.*

- A. Fais, fais, fait; faisons, faites, font.—B. Faisais.
 C. Fis.—D. Ferai.—E. Ferais.—F. Fasse.—G. Fisse.
 H. Fais, fasse; faisons, faites, fassent.

Conjugate in the same manner *contrefaire*, to counterfeit, to mimic; *défaire*, to undo; *refaire*, to do again; *satisfaire*, to satisfy; *surfaire*, to ask too much; and *redéfaire*, to undo again.

Traire, to milk. *Ger. trayant. Part. trait.*

- A. Trais, trais, trait; trayons, trayez, traient.
 B. Trayais. (*No Pret.*)—D. Trairai.—E. Trairais.
 F. Traie. (*No Pret.*)—H. Trais.

Conjugate in the same manner, *attirer*, to allure; *abstraire*, to abstract; *distraindre*, to distract; *extraire*, to extract; *retraire*, to fine-draw; *retraire*, to redeem; and *soustraire*, to subtract, to withdraw.

- A. I do no harm; she milks her cows; we satisfy our
ne pas de mal vache
 masters; you (ask too much) for that meadow; they extract
maître prairie
 all the finest passages of that work.—B. I was undoing all
plus beau — ouvrage toutes
 the seams of my gown; he distracted his school-fellows;
couture robe f camarades

we subtracted the fourth of the sum; you did fine-draw
 the tapestry; they did attract the birds. — c. I (made again)
 a journey to Paris; he (got rid) of the false opinion he had
 conceived of their merit; we (undid again) five or six times
 the same hem; you made a great mistake; they mimicked
 the singularities of that (young lady.) — d. I shall redeem that
 land; he will abstract from those bodies all the accessory
 qualities; we shall satisfy you (as much as) we can; you
 will not withdraw those guilty persons from the rigour of
 the laws; they will not distract me from my studies. —
 e. I would not do it for (any thing) in the world; she
 would fine-draw her gown; we would withdraw our pupils
 from the dangers of bad companies; you would extract
 the salts of these plants; they would distract us by their
 prattle. — f. That I may (ask too much) for that muslin; that
 salt may attract pigeons; that we may satisfy you in
 (every thing); that you may not (get rid) of your prejudices;
 that they may not do again their exercises. — g. That I might
 not (undo again) my work; that he might not (ask too much)
 for his goods; that we might (take again) a walk; that
 you might not mimic every body; that they might not make
 any noise. — h. Milk thy goats; let us satisfy our parents;
 pay more attention to your writing.

Pl-aire, to please. *P. pr.* pl-aisant. *P. p.* pl-u.

- A. Plais, plais, plaît ; plaisons, plaisez, plaisent.
 B. Plaisais.—C. Plus.—D. Plairai.—E. Plairais.
 F. Plaise.—G. Plusse.—H. Plais.

Conjugate in the same manner all other verbs terminated in *aire*.

A. I please all the family; he (is silent) when I speak;
à tout famille se taire quand A
 we (are displeased) in that situation; you (take pleasure) in
nous déplaire dans — vous plaire à
 contradicting; they delight in their works.—B. I did
contredire se complaire ouvrage
 (remain silent) against my wish; he did please every body;
me taire contre gré à tout le monde
 we did displease, the governor; you did delight in your
deplaire au gouverneur vous complaire
 vices; they did conceal the truth.—C. I (was pleased) with
— taire vérité me plaire à
 doing that; he displeased by his haughtiness; we (re-
faire cela arrogance
 mained silent) (in spite of ourselves); you displeased your
nous taire malgré nous à
 uncle; they delighted in tormenting me.—D. (I will be
oncle se plaire à me tourmenter me
 silent); he will please the king; we shall (be pleased) with
taire au roi nous plaire avec
 him; you will displease my mother; these books will please
lui déplaire à livre
 me.—E. (I would be pleased) with reading; his friend would
me plaire à lire ami
 displease me; we would conceal that event; you would
événement
 (be pleased) with talking with him; his manners would
vous plaire à converser avec manières
 please you.—F. That I may please by my condescension;
par —douce
 that she may displease by her spirit of contradiction;
esprit —
 that we may conceal the true motives of his conduct,
vrai motif conduite
 that you may delight in tormenting every one; that
vous plaire à tourmenter tout le monde
 their answers may displease every virtuous man.—G. That
réponse à tout vertueux

I might (remain silent) when I am (so much) offended; that
me quand tellement outragé
 my son might please you; that we might displease by our
fil
 sincerity; that you might delight in your faults; that
—lé vous complaire défauts
 those beautiful descriptions might please at every time.—H.
superbe en tout temps
 Please by thy submission; let him conceal the greatest
soumission plus grand
 part of what he has heard; let us (be pleased) in cultivating
partie ce qu' A entendu se plaisir à —ver
 sciences; (hold your tongues):
les — se taire

IRREGULAR VERBS IN AITRE AND OITRE.

Naitre, to be born. *P. pr.* naissant. *P. p.* né.

- A. Nais, nais, naît; naissons, naissez, naissent.
 B. Naissais.—C. Naquis.—D. Naîtrai.—E. Naîtrais.
 F. Naisse.—G. Naquisse.—H. Nais.

Conjugate in the same manner *renaitre*, to be born again.

Paitre, to graze. *P. pr.* paissant. *P. p.* pu.

- A. Pais, pais, paît; paissions, paisez, paissent.
 B. Paissais. (no *pret.*)—D. Paîtrai.—E. Paîtrais.—F. Paisse.
 (no *pret.*)—H. Pais.

Conjugate in the same manner its compound *repaitre*, to feed; but it makes in the preterit of the indicative, *je repus*, and in the preterit of the subjunctive, *je repusse*.

- A. That man thirsts (after nothing but) blood and
ne se repaitre que de sang
 slaughter; we are all born liable to many infirmities.—
de carnage sujet beaucoup de —tés
 B. Hope revived in his heart; their flocks fed on the
*l'espérance renaitre dans cœur troupeau paitre**
 tender grass.—C. Virgil was born at Mantua; those fools
tendre herbe f Virgile à Mantouc insensé
 (fed themselves) upon chimeras.—D. Arts and sciences
se repaitre de chimère les — les —
 will revive under his reign.—E. Could that man feast his
renaitre sous

eyes on that cruel sight?—F. I wish that happiness may
cril de spectacle souhaiter le bonheur
 revive for him.—G. I did not think that he might feast his
reûnâître pour penser B repâître
 imagination with that hope.
 — *de espoir.*

Conn-âître, to know. *P. pr.* conn-aiissant. *P. p.* conn-u.

A. Connais, connais, connaît; connaissons, connaissez, connaissent.—B. Connaisais.—C. Connûs.—D. Connaitrai.—E. Connaitrais.—F. Connaisse.—G. Connusse.—H. Connais, connaisse.

Conjugate in the same manner all other verbs terminated in *âître* and *oître*.

A. I know your father; he forgets his friends; we increase our income; you appear very dull; they appear and *méconnâître amis ac-*
croître revenu parâître très-triste
 disappear in a moment.—B. I did (entertain myself) with *disparâître dans — me repâître de*
 that hope; his mare did graze in the park; we did appear *espoir jument f pâître parc comparâître*
 before the judges; you did (not recognize) your hand-
devant juge méconnâître écri-
 writing; they did (appear again) upon the stage.—C. I *ture reparâître sur théâtre m*
 knew your sister when she spoke; she knew the world *reconnâître sœur quand parler c monde m*
 before you; we appeared in public; you appeared *avant en public*
 dissatisfied; they knew their horse again.—D. I will know *mécontent reconnaître cheval **
 (the whole business); she will appear handsomer; we shall *toute l'affaire plus beau*
 grow this year; they will know your father and mother.—
croître année père votre mère
 E. I would acknowledge your innocence; she would grow *reconnâître —*
 every day, if she were not ill; we would know the forces *tous les jours n'était pas malade —*
 of the enemy; you would appear older than I; they would *ennemi plus âgé que moi*
 know the truth.—F. That I may know my duty; that she *vérité devoir*

may acknowledge her errors ; that we may appear before
 that tribunal ; that you may disappear for some time ; that
 — *erreur* *comparaître devant*
 they may know me. — G. That I might know him after an
 — *pour quelque temps*
 absence of several years ; that he might (not acknowledge)
 — *reconnaître* *après*
 — *plusieurs années* *méconnaître*
 his friends since his preferment ; that we might increase our
 — *ami depuis agrandissement*
 possessions ; that you might (appear again) in your
 — *dans*
 (native country) ; that these trees might grow rapidly. —
 — *patrie* *arbre* *rapidement*
 H. Acknowledge thy imprudence ; let her appear more
 — *qu'elle* *plus*
 reserved ; let us increase every day our reputation
 — *réserve* *tous les jours* —
 by new acts of courage ; know all the extent of your
 — *par de nouveau acte* — *toute étendue*
 folly ; let them appear joyful and satisfied.
folie. *joyeux* *content.*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN OIRE, URE, IRE.

Boire, to drink. P. pr. buvant. P. p. bu.

- A. Bois, bois, boit ; buvons, buvez, boivent.
- B. Buvais. — C. Bus. — D. Boirai. — E. Boirais.
- F. Boive, boives, boive ; buvions, buviez, boivent.
- G. Busse. — H. Bois, boive ; buvons, buvez, boivent.

Conjugate in the same manner *reboire*, to drink again.

Conclure, to conclude. P. pr. concluant. P. p. conclu.

- A. Conclue, conclus, conclut ; conclu -ons, -ez, -ent.
- B. Concluais. — C. Conclus. — D. Conclurai. — E. Conclurais.
- F. Conclue. — G. Conclusse. — H. Conclus.

Conjugate in the same manner *exclure*, to exclude.

Confire, to pickle. P. pr. confisant. P. p. confit.

- A. Confis, confis, confit ; confis -ons, -ez, -ent.
- B. Confisais. — C. Confis. — D. Confirai. — E. Confirais.
- F. Confise. — G. Confisse. — H. Confis.

Conjugate in the same manner *circoncire*, to circumcise,

* See "Thibaudin's French Verbs," Obser. No. 11.

and *suffire*, to suffice, except in the participle past, where they make *circoncis* and *suffi*.

• *Croire*, to believe, to think. *P. pr.* croyant. *P. p.* cru.

- A. Crois, crois, croit; croyons, croyez, croient.
 B. Croyais.—C. Crus.—D. Croirai.—E. Croirais.
 F. Croie, croies, croie; croyions, croyiez, croient.
 G. Crurse.—H. Crois, croie; croyons, croyez, croient.

Dire, to say, to tell. *P. pr.* disant. *P. p.* dit.

- A. Dis, dis, dit; disons, dites, disent.—B. Disais.
 C. Dis.—D. Dirai.—E. Dirais.—F. Disc.—G. Disse.
 H. Dis, dise; disons, dites, disent.

Conjugate in the same manner *redire*, to say again. As for the other compounds of *dire*, viz. *dédire*, to unsay; *contredire*, to contradict; *interdire*, to forbid; *médire*, to slander, and *prédire*, to foretel; they make in the second person plural of the present of the indicative and of the imperative, *vous dédisez, contredisez, interdisez, médisez, prédisez*. *Maudire*, to curse, takes two *ss* in the following forms, *Ger. maudissant*.—A. *Maudissons, maudissez, maudissent*.—B. *Maudissais*.—F. *Maudisse*.—H. *qu'il maudisse; maudissons, maudissez, qu'ils maudissent*.

Lire, to read. *P. pr.* lisant. *P. p.* lu.

- A. Lis, lis, lit; lisons, lisez, lisent.—B. Lisais.—C. Lus.—D. Lirai.—E. Lirais.—F. Lise.—G. Lusse.—H. Lis.

Conjugate in the same manner *relire*, to read over again, and *élire*, to elect.

Luire, to shine, *reluire*, to glitter, and *nuire*, to hurt, are only irregular in the participle past, *lui, relui, nui*; the other parts to be conjugated like *instruire*, page 51.

Rire, to laugh. *P. pr.* riant. *P. p.* ri.

- A. Ris, ris, rit; rions, riez, rient.—B. Riaais.—C. Ris.
 D. Rirai.—E. Rirais.—F. Ric.—G. Risse.—H. Ris.

Conjugate in the same manner *sourire*, to smile.

- A. I read an interesting book; he thinks to (impose
intéressant livre m * *m'en*
 upon me); we drink with ice; you speak truth; they
imposer à la glace dire la vérité
 curse their fate.—B. I did laugh heartily; he did pickle
destinée (de bon cœur)

cucumbers; we did contradict that news; you did
des concombres *nouvelle*
 read again my letter; they did forbid him the entrance of
lettre f *lui* *l'entrée*
 their house.—C. A ray of hope conducted us in the midst
maison *rayon* *conduire* *à* *milieu*
 of our misfortunes; he smiled at him as a sign of approba-
malheur ** lui en * signe*
 tion; we foretold those disasters; you did hurt your
— *désastre* *à*
 interests; they elected an honest man for their representa-
intérêt *honnête* *pour* *représen-*
 tive.—D. I will not drink again of that liquor; he will ex-
tant *liqueur*
 clude his son from his succession; we shall not slander
filz *—* *ne* *de*
 any one; you will conclude, if you like, that we are wrong;
personne *vouloir A* *avoir tort*
 the Rabbins will circumcise several children to-morrow.—E. I
plusieurs enfant *demain*
 would not contradict you in any manner; that would not
ne *dédire* *en aucun manière cela*
 suffice me; that diamond would not shine (so much), if it
diamant *reluire* *tant* *s'il*
 were not pure; we should laugh at his expense; you would
B *fin* *à ses dépens*
 hurt me more than you think; they would preserve
plus *ne croire A* *confire des*
 peaches with brandy.—F. That I may exclude him from
pêche *à l'eau-de-vie*
 my company; that he may read attentively; that we may
compagnie *—ment*
 drink with sobriety; that you may elect a president; that
avec. *—été* *pré—*
 they may curse their perverseness.—G. That I might read
—sité
 again that poem; that she might slander her best friends;
poème *médire de meilleur ami f*
 that we might suffice to ourselves; that you might tell a
se suffire *nous-mêmes*
 falsehood; that they might drink the health of the king.—H.
fausseté *à* *santé* *roi*
 Conclude thy speech; let him smile to his mother; let us
discours *—* *mere* *ne*
 curse nobody; tell me again your adventure.
personne *—* *aventure.*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN CRIRE.

Ecr-ire, to write. *P. pr.* écr-iv-ant. *P. p.* écr-it.

- A. Ecris, écris, écrit; écrivons, écrivez, écrivent.
 B. Ecrivais.—C. Ecrivis.—D. Ecrirai.—E. Ecrirais.
 F. Ecrive.—G. Ecriviss-.—H. Ecris, écrive.

Conjugate in the same manner all verbs terminated in *crire*.

A. I transcribe my exercise; he inscribes his name in a
 —*crire* *thème* m —*crire* *nom* dans
 register; we subscribe for your work; you prescribe more
 —*tre* m *souscrire* pour *ouvrage* *prescrire* plus
 than I can do; they circumscribe his authority in narrow
que ne puis faire *circonscrire* *autorité* dans d'étroites
 limits.—B. I did write every day to my sister, who did
limites *tous les jours* *sœur*
 answer me very seldom; we did transcribe all your letters;
récrire *très-rarement* *lettre* f
 you did consent to every thing he said; they did describe a
souscrire à tout ce qu'il disait *décrire*
 horrid tempest.—C. I wrote last week to my attorney,
horrible tempête f *la semaine dernière* *procureur*
 who answered me yesterday; we proscribed every delay in
récrire *hier* —*crire* tout *délai*
 that affair; you inscribed the names of persons unknown to
affaire f *nom* *personnes inconnues* de
 every one; they proscribed all their enemies.—D. I will
tout le monde *ennemi* *ne*
 prescribe nothing without your advice; he will subscribe
rien *sans* *avis*
 to (every thing) you wish; we will transcribe his memorial;
tout ce que *désirer* A *mémoire* m
 you will (write again) your exercise; they will describe
récrire *thème*
 what they have seen.—E. I would transcribe all that work;
ce qu' A *ou* *ouvrage*
 he would (write again) his letter; we would proscribe
 vicious people from our society; you would write better
les gens vicieux *société* *mieux*
 if you were more attentive; they would order their scholars
si B —*tif* *prescrire* à *écolier*
 to study more attentively.—F. That I may describe all the
d'étudier —*ment* *tous*
 charms of that beautiful landscape; that he may circum-
charme m *superbe* *paysage*
 scribe our power; that we may write upon that subject;
pouvoir *sur* *sujet*

that you may inscribe all the principal inhabitants among
tous — *habitant parmi*
 your subscribers; that they may prescribe unjust orders.
souscripteur *des injuste ordre*
 —G. That I might proscribe all vain splendour from that
 ceremony; that she might (write again) her novel; that we
cérémonie *roman*
 might accept the conditions they prescribe; that you might
souscrire (dat.) — *qu'ils* A
 transcribe anew all the regular verbs of your grammar;
de nouveau tous régulier verbe m *grammaire*
 that they might write in a legible manner. — H. Inscribe my
de lisible manière
 name immediately after thine; let him describe more
nom — *ment après* *plus*
 clearly the circumstances of that event; let us circum-
clairement *circonstances* *événement*
 scribe our wishes in the limits of uprightness; transcribe
désir *la droiture*
 two or three pages of that book; let them proscribe every
deux ou trois — *livre m* *toute*
 affectation from their writings.
 — *écrit*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN UIRE.

Instr-uire, *to instruct*. P. pr. instr-uisant. P. p. instr-uit.

- A. Instruis, instruis, instruit; instruisons, instruisez,
 instruisent.
 B. Instruisais. — C. Instruisis. — D. Instruirai.
 E. Instruirais. — F. Instruise. — G. Instruisisse. — H. Instruis.

Conjugate in the same manner all verbs terminated in *uire*.

A. I instruct youth; she leads them into error; we
la jeunesse induire en erreur
 translate English into French; you seduce the ignorant
traduire l'Anglais en Français séduire — pl
 by your discourses; these trees produce good apples every
par discours arbres —dire de pomme tous
 year. — B. I did introduce a new custom; he did destroy the
les ans —duire nouveau coutume f détruire
 wall; we did build a ship; you did conduct the enterprise;
mur construire vaisseau conduire entreprise
 they did produce their title. — C. I deducted the expenses;
titre déduire dépense

he behaved very well; we translated their work; you
se conduire très-bien *ouvrage*
seduced the witnesses; they led young people into error
témoin *induire les jeunes gens en erreur*
—D. I shall convey the water into the meadow; he will
conduire *eau dans prairie*
construct a palace; we will reduce your brother to silence;
construire palais *réduire frère au* —
you will instruct their children; they will destroy the
enfant
fortifications.—E. I would translate Italian; he would in-
— *l'italien*
troduce my son to the Court; we would reconduct
fil *Cour* —*duire*
you home; you should plaster the wall; they would
à la maison *enduire* *mur*
produce a good effect.—F. That I may dress that meat; that
effet *cuire* *viande* f
he may refuse his brother; that we may hurt your interests;
éconduire frère *nuire à intérêt*
that you may (show home) that lady; that these diamonds
reconduire *dame* *diamant*
may shine in the dark.—G. That I might (produce again)
reluire dans obscurité *reproduire*
the papers of my family; that he might (plaster anew) the
papier *famille* *renduire*
outside of his house; that we might introduce a new
extérieur *maison* *nouveau*
custom; that you might instruct youth in true
coutume f *la jeunesse dans la vrai*
religion; that they might seduce by their modest exterior.
— *modeste extérieur* m
—H. Translate thy exercises more literally; let him deduct
thème *plus littéralement*
at least the half of that sum; let us manage our affairs
au moins *moitié* *somme* *conduire* *affaire*
with more circumspection; introduce that history in your
avec plus de circonspection *histoire dans*
new work; let them destroy all obstacles.
nouvel ouvrage *tous les* —

IRREGULAR VERBS IN TRE, DRE, PRE, VRE, CRE.

Battre, to beat. P. pr. battant. P. p. battu.

- A. Bats, bats, bat; battons, battez, battent.—B. Battais.
C. Battis.—D. Battrai.—E. Battrais.—F. Batte.
G. Battisse.—H. Bata.

Conjugate in the same manner *abattre*, to pull down; *combattre*, to fight, and *rebattre*, to beat again.

Coudre, to sew. *P. pr.* cousant. *P. p.* cousu.

- A. Couds, couds, coud; cousons, cousez, cousent.
- B. Cousais.—C. Cousis.—D. Couffrai.—E. Coudrais.
- F. Couse.—G. Cousisse.—H. Couds.

Conjugate in the same manner *découdre*, to unsew and *recoudre*, to sew over again.

Mettre, to put. *P. pr.* mettant. *P. p.* mis.

- A. Mets, mets, met; mettons, mettez, mettent.
- B. Mettais.—C. Mis.—D. Mettrai.—E. Mettrais.—F. Mette.
- G. Misse.—H. Mets.

Conjugate in the same manner *admettre*, to admit; *commettre*, to commit; *compromettre*, to compromise; *démettre*, to turn out, to disjoint; *omettre*, to omit; *permettre*, to permit; *promettre*, to promise; *remettre*, to put again, to restore, to replace; *soumettre*, to submit; *transmettre*, to transmit, and *s'entremettre*, to intermeddle.

Moudre, to grind. *P. pr.* moulant. *P. p.* moulu.

- A. Mouds, mouds, moud; moulons, moulez, moulent.
- B. Moulais.—C. Moulus.—D. Moudrai.—E. Moudrais.
- F. Moule.—G. Moulusse.—H. Mouds.

Conjugate in the same manner *émoudre*, to grind (razors, knives, &c.), and *remoudre*, to grind again.

Prendre, to take. *P. pr.* prenant. *P. p.* pris.

- A. Prends, prends, prend; prenons, prenez, prennent.
- B. Prenais.—C. Pris.—D. Prendrai.—E. Prendrais.
- F. Prenn-e, -es, -e; pren-ions, -iez, prennent.—G. Prisse.
- H. Prends, prenne; pren-ons, -ez, prennent.

Conjugate in the same manner *apprendre*, to learn; *comprendre*, to comprehend, to understand; *déprendre*, to lose, to part; *désapprendre*, to unlearn; *entreprendre*, to undertake; *se méprendre*, to mistake, to be deceived; *reprandre*, to take again, to reply, to chide, and *surprendre*, to surprise.

Résoudre, to resolve. *P. pr.* résolvant. *P. p.* résolu or résous.

- A. Résous, résous, résout; résolv-ons, -ez, -ent.
 B. Résolvais.—C. Résolus.—D. Résoudrai.—E. Résoudrais.
 F. Résolve.—G. Résolussc.—H. Résous.

Conjugate in the same manner *absoudre*, to absolve, and *dissoudre*, to dissolve; but they have no preterit either in the indicative or in the subjunctive; their participles are *absous*, *dissous*.

Rompre, to break. *P. pr.* rompant. *P. p.* rompu.

- A. Romps, romps, rompt; romp -ons, -ez, -ent.
 B. Rompais.—C. Rompis.—D. Romprai.—E. Romprais.
 F. Rompe.—G. Rompisse.—H. Romps.

Conjugate in the same manner *corrompre*, to corrupt, and *interrompre*, to interrupt.

Suivre, to follow. *P. pr.* suivant. *P. p.* suivi.

- A. Suis, suis, suit; suivons, suivez, suivent.—B. Suivais.
 C. Suivis.—D. Suivrai.—E. Suivrais.—F. Suive.
 G. Suivisse.—H. Suis.

Conjugate in the same manner *s'ensuire*, to ensue, only used in the third persons of every tense, and *poursuivre*, to pursue.

Vaincre, to conquer. *P. pr.* vainquant. *P. p.* vaincu.

- A. Vaines, vaines, vainc; vainqu -ons, -ez, -ent.
 B. Vainquais.—C. Vainquis.—D. Vaincrai.—E. Vaincrais.
 F. Vainque.—G. Vanquisse.—H. Vaincs.

Conjugate in the same manner *convaincre*, to convince.

Vivre, to live. *P. pr.* vivant. *P. p.* vécu.

- A. Vis, vis, vit; vivons, vivez, vivent.
 B. Vivais.—C. Vécus.—D. Vivrai.—E. Vivrais.
 F. Vive.—G. Vécusse.—H. Vis.

Conjugate in the same manner *revivre*, to revive, and *survivre*, to survive.

A. I admit that principle; 'thou takest (too much) trouble; the wood which is burnt resolves itself into ashes
—pe in trop de
*peine bois qu' on brûle se résoudre * en cendre*

and smoke; we submit ourselves to your decision; you
*en fumée se soumettre * dé—*
 surprise me (very much); strong waters dissolve metals.
beaucoup les fort eau les métal
 —B. I did fight for my country; thou didst not follow the
pour pays
 lessons of thy tutor; that did not convince me; we did
leçons précepteur cela se
 compromise ourselves to serve him; you did pursue an in-
*—mettre * pour servir*
 nocent person; they did omit an essential duty.—C. I ground
*—m * —tiel devoir*
 all the coffee; thou didst not learn thy lesson; he did not
café leçon
 out-live that misfortune; we promised him a reward; you
survivre à malheur lui récompense
 interrupted his sleep; they transmitted their glory to their
sommeil gloire
 posterity.—D. I will not intermeddle in their dispute; thou
postérité de —
 shalt conquer thy enemies; he will grind again the grain;
ennemi —
 we shall permit you to go to the fair; you will unlearn
de aller faire f
 all that you have learnt; you see the consequences that
tout ce que voir — qu
 will ensue.—E. I should grind my razors; thou wouldst
rasoir se
 disjoint thy leg; he would not understand that expla-
démordre la jambe expli-
 nation; we should convince him; you would absolve
cation
 them; they would pull down their castle.—F. That I may
château
 (be deceived) upon that point; that she may sew her gown;
sur — robe f
 that he may commit the crime; that we may break the
—m
 truce; that you may thrash the corn; that fathers may
trêve f battre blé les père
 revive in their children.—G. That I might undertake that
dans enfant
 journey; that she might sew again that hem; that we might
voyage ourlet
 put more order in our affairs; that you might live more
plus d'ordre affaire
 regularly; that they might beat again these mattresses.
régulièrement matelas

—H. Put again all thy books in their place; let her unsew
livre m à —
 this whip; let us not corrupt the morals of youth; chide
surjet mœurs la jeunesse
 your pupils for their faults; let them resolve to suffer
élève de défait se résoudre souffrir
 much.
beaucoup.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN INDRE.

Crai-indre, to fear. *P. pr.* crai-gnant. *P. p.* crai-nt.

- A. Crains, crains, craint; craignons, craignez, craignent.
 B. Craignais.—C. Craignis.—D. Craindrai.—E. Craindrais.
 F. Craigne.—G. Craignisse.—H. Crains, craigne.

Conjugate in the same manner all verbs terminated in
aindre, cindre, and oindre.

A. I fear my master; she extinguishes the fire; we pity
éteindre feu plaindre
 the unfortunate; you paint very well; they complain of
malheureux pl peindre très-bien se plaindre
 every body.—B. I did fear your anger; he did pity my
tout le monde colère f
 sister; we did dye the silk; you did constrain my cousin to
sœur teindre soie contraindre à
 sell his house; they did paint a shipwreck.—C. I feigned
vendre maison naufrage feindre
 to be sick; he transgressed the laws of his country; we
d'être malade enfreindre lois pays
 joined hands; you (put out) the candles; they compelled
joindre les mains éteindre chandelle contraindre
 their son to learn mathematics.—D. I will enjoin
fils à apprendre les mathématiques enjoindre
 the servant to stay at home; she will transgress
au domestique de rester à la maison
 your orders; we will paint our room; you will pity their
ordre chambre
 folly; they will fear to be discovered.—E. I would compel
folie d'être découverts
 the enemy to fight; he would fear to displease his mas-
ennemi à combattre de déplaire à
 ter; we would feign (to believe them); you would paint
de les croire
 very well; they would infringe the constitution.—F. That
très-bien enfreindre

I may join my efforts to yours; that her aunt may fear
 the effects of her levity; that we may compel him to
 alter his conduct; that you may pity his fate; that
 they may pity his misfortune.—G. That I might join my
 opinion to that of the other judges; that he might draw
 your picture; that we might feign to be satisfied with
 him; that you might fear those spectres; that they might
 dye that cloth in black.—H. Fear God during all thy life;
 let him paint his house anew; let us enjoin our children
 to respect (old people); compel him to follow your advice;
 let them fear my anger.

VERBS IN NDRE, AND RDRE

Ven-dre, to sell. P. pr. ven-dant. P. p. ven-du.

- A. Vends, vends, vend; vendons, vendez, vendent.
 B. Vendais.—C. Vendis.—D. Vendrai.—E. Vendrais.
 F. Vende.—G. Vendissc.—H. Vends, vende.

Conjugate in the same manner all the verbs terminated in ndre, endre, erdre, ondre, and ordre.

A. I expect company to-day; he answers impudently;
 we hear a great noise; you defend your country; they spill
 human blood.—B. I did suspend my judgment; that dog
 did bite every body; we did spread terror every where; you
 did aim in vain at that place; they did (take down) their
 bed.—C. I sold my house; he condescended to her desires;
 we melted the lead; you lost your time yesterday; they

stretched their arms.—D. I will answer in few words; he
tendre les bras répondre en peu de mots

will hear what they say; we shall lose our friends; you
entendre ce qu' disent perdre ami

will shear your sheep; they will sell their country-house.

tondre brebis pl . maison de campagne

—E. I would confound his pride; he would wait for an
*confondre orgueil attendre **

answer; we would defend that honest man (at the hazard)
réponse f honnête homme au péril

of our life; you would render justice to every body; they
vie rendre à tout le monde

would hang the rebels.—F. That I may wait his return with
pendre rebelle attendre retour avec

impatience; that he may confound these notions one with
— l'une

another; that we may waste our time about trifles; that
l'autre perdre temps à des bagatelle

you may throw the graces of expression into your speeches;
répandre — l' — dans discours

that they may sell their incense to the pride of a blockhead.
encens orgueil sot

—G. That I might aim at an honest end; that he might
tendre à honnête but

(come down) at the first order; that we might hear the
descendre premier ordre m

music of the new opera; that you might recompose a
musique f nouvel — répondre

work so full of errors; that they might correspond with
ouvrage plein erreur — pondre

their relations.—H. Hear their justification; let him (come
parent s —

down) immediately; let us expect our happiness from our-
sur-le-champ attendre bonheur nous-

selves; ye sovereigns, make the people happy; let them
*mêmes * souverain rendre peuple m heureux*

answer your letters.
à lettre.

EXERCISE upon the COMPOUND TENSES.

Combinations of the auxiliary verbs with a participle are called compound tenses: as, *j'ai parlé*, I have spoken; *je suis venu*, I have come.

When a participle is preceded by any tense of the verb *être*, it agrees in French with the noun antecedent in gender and number, few cases excepted: as. *mon frère est estimé*,

ma sœur est *estimée*; mes frères sont *estimés*, mes sœurs sont *estimées*. When the participle comes after any tense of the verb *avoir*, it is only declinable in French in the cases mentioned in rule 143. In the following exercise it will be declinable after the verb *être*, and indeclinable after *avoir*. The feminine and plural of participles are formed like those of adjectives, p. 14.

I have spoken to the queen of England; the law is abolished; we have slept ³very ¹well²; we have (found out) his fraud; his fraud is found out; we are come to dine with you; you have received a letter; the letters are received; we have concealed that affair; that affair was concealed; we have (put out) the candles; the candles are put out; we have understood their intentions; their intentions were known; you have translated many English books into French; many English books are translated into French; I have sold my horses; my horses are sold; he has written his answer; his answer is written; she has sung a pretty song; the song was well sung; I had built a house; my house was built; we had foreseen these misfortunes; you had served your friends; your friends were gone; they have offered a reward; a reward was offered; they had obtained his favour; his pardon was obtained; we had perceived the enemies; the enemies were perceived; I have known your sister; your sisters are well known; we have reduced your sisters to silence; your sisters were reduced to silence; you have sealed the letter; the letter

A parler • • reine Angleterre loi A abo-
lished; we have slept ³very ¹well²; we have (found out)
lir A dormir très-bien A découvrir
his fraud; his fraud is found out; we are come to dine with
—de f A venir * dîner.
you; you have received a letter; the letters are received;
A recevoir lettre f A
we have concealed that affair; that affair was concealed;
A taire affaire f C •
we have (put out) the candles; the candles are put out;
A éteindre chandelle A
we have understood their intentions; their intentions were
A connaître — •B
known; you have translated many English books into
connaître A traduire plusieurs anglais livres en
French; many English books are translated into French;
Français A
I have sold my horses; my horses are sold; he has written
A vendre cheval • A A écrire
his answer; his answer is written; she has sung a pretty
réponse f A A chanter joli
song; the song was well sung; I had built a house;
chanson C B bâtir maison
my house was built; we had foreseen these misfortunes;
B B pressentir malheurs
you had served your friends; your friends were gone;
B servir amis B partir
they have offered a reward; a reward was offered; they
• A offrir récompense • C
had obtained his favour; his pardon was obtained; we
B obtenir faveur grâce C
had perceived the enemies; the enemies were perceived;
B apercevoir ennemi pl C
I have known your sister; your sisters are well known; we
A • connaître sœur • A
have reduced your sisters to silence; your sisters were re-
A réduire au — C
duced to silence; you have sealed the letter; the letter
A cacheter lettre f

is sealed; they had filled the bottles; the bottles were filled;
 A B *remplir* bouteille B
 they had detained my sisters; my sisters were detained;
 B *détenir* C
 we have joined the two parts together; the two parts are
 A *joindre* partie ensemble A
 joined together; they had acknowledged my innocence;
 B *reconnaître* —
 my innocence was acknowledged; we have introduced this
 C A — *duire*
 custom; this custom was introduced; you have corrupted
coutume f C a A *séduire*
 the witnesses; the witnesses are corrupted; they had
témoin A B
 answered to my questions; your letters were received.
répondre — *lettre* f C *recevoir*.

SEVERAL MANNERS OF CONJUGATING VERBS.

A verb may be conjugated with affirmation, negation, interrogation and pronouns as follows :

RULE 1. With Affirmation. — By putting the nominative before the verb in French, as in English. Example :

Je parle,	<i>I speak.</i>
tu parles,	<i>thou speakest.</i>
il parle,	<i>he speaks.</i>
elle parle,	<i>she speaks.</i>
on parle,	<i>one speaks.</i>
mon frère parle,	<i>my brother speaks.</i>
ma sœur parle,	<i>my sister speaks.</i>
nous parlons,	<i>we speak.</i>
vous parlez,	<i>you speak.</i>
ils, or elles parlent,	<i>they speak.</i>
mes frères parlent,	<i>my brothers speak.</i>
mes sœurs parlent,	<i>my sisters speak.</i>

RULE 2. With Negation. — By putting the particle *ne* between the nominative and the verb, and *pas* or *point* after the verb. Example :

Je ne parle pas,	<i>I do not speak.</i>
tu ne parles pas,	<i>thou dost not speak.</i>
il ne parle pas,	<i>he does not speak.</i>
elle ne parle pas,	<i>she does not speak.</i>
on ne parle pas,	<i>one does not speak.</i>
mon frère ne parle pas,	<i>my brother does not speak.</i>
ma sœur ne parle pas,	<i>my sister does not speak.</i>
nous ne parlons pas,	<i>we do not speak.</i>

<i>vous ne parlez pas,</i>	<i>you do not speak.</i>
<i>ils or elles ne parlent pas,</i>	<i>they do not speak.</i>
<i>mes frères ne parlent pas,</i>	<i>my brothers do not speak.</i>
<i>mes sœurs ne parlent pas,</i>	<i>my sisters do not speak.</i>

RULE 3. With Interrogation.—By putting the nominative after the verb, if it be a pronoun. Example:

<i>Parlé-je ?</i>	<i>Do I speak ?</i>
<i>parles-tu ?</i>	<i>dost thou speak ?</i>
<i>parle-t-il ?</i>	<i>does he speak ?</i>
<i>parle-t-elle ?</i>	<i>does she speak ?</i>
<i>parle-t-on ?</i>	<i>does one speak ?</i>
<i>parlons-nous ?</i>	<i>do we speak ?</i>
<i>parlez-vous ?</i>	<i>do you speak ?</i>
<i>parlent-ils ?</i>	<i>do they speak ?</i>
<i>parlent-elles ?</i>	

N.B. When the first person ends with a mute *e*, it is changed into an acute *é*: when the third person singular ends with a vowel, a *t* between two hyphens is placed between the verb and the pronoun.

When the nominative of the verb is a substantive, it is placed before the verb, and the pronoun *il*, or *elle*, for the singular, *ils*, or *elles*, for the plural is put after. Example:

<i>Mon frère parle-t-il ?</i>	<i>Does my brother speak ?</i>
<i>ma sœur parle-t-elle ?</i>	<i>does my sister speak ?</i>
<i>mes frères parlent-ils ?</i>	<i>do my brothers speak ?</i>
<i>mes sœurs parlent-elles ?</i>	<i>do my sisters speak ?</i>

When an interrogative sentence is also negative, *ne* is placed at the beginning of the sentence, or after the substantive when there is one, and *pas* after the verb and the pronoun. Example:

<i>Ne parlé-je pas ?</i>	<i>Do I not speak ?</i>
<i>ne parles-tu pas ?</i>	<i>dost thou not speak ?</i>
<i>ne parle-t-il pas ?</i>	<i>does he not speak ?</i>
<i>ne parle-t-elle pas ?</i>	<i>does she not speak ?</i>
<i>ne parle-t-on pas ?</i>	<i>does not any one speak ?</i>
<i>mon frère ne parle-t-il pas ?</i>	<i>does not my brother speak ?</i>
<i>ma sœur ne parle-t-elle pas ?</i>	<i>does not my sister speak ?</i>
<i>ne parlons-nous pas ?</i>	<i>do we not speak ?</i>
<i>ne parlez-vous pas ?</i>	<i>do you not speak ?</i>
<i>ne parlent-ils pas ?</i>	<i>do they not speak ?</i>
<i>ne parlent-elles pas ?</i>	
<i>mes frères ne parlent-ils pas ?</i>	<i>do not my brothers speak ?</i>
<i>mes sœurs ne parlent-elles pas ?</i>	<i>do not my sisters speak ?</i>

RULE 4. With governed Pronouns.—By putting the governed pronoun immediately before the verb, whether the sentence be affirmative, negative, or interrogative. Example:

1. AFFIRMATIVE SENTENCE.

Je lui parle,	<i>I speak to him.</i>
tu lui parles,	<i>thou speakest to him.</i>
il lui parle,	<i>he speaks to him.</i>
elle lui parle,	<i>she speaks to him.</i>
on lui parle,	<i>some one speaks to him.</i>
mon frère lui parle,	<i>my brother speaks to him.</i>
ma sœur lui parle,	<i>my sister speaks to him.</i>
nous lui parlons,	<i>we speak to him.</i>
vous lui parlez,	<i>you speak to him.</i>
ils or elles lui parlent,	<i>they speak to him.</i>
mes frères lui parlent,	<i>my brothers speak to him.</i>
mes sœurs lui parlent,	<i>my sisters speak to him.</i>

2. NEGATIVE SENTENCE.

Je ne lui parle pas,	<i>I do not speak to him.</i>
tu ne lui parles pas,	<i>thou dost not speak to him.</i>
il ne lui parle pas,	<i>he does not speak to him.</i>
elle ne lui parle pas,	<i>she does not speak to him.</i>
on ne lui parle pas,	<i>some one does not speak to him.</i>
mon frère ne lui parle pas,	<i>my brother does not speak to him.</i>
ma sœur ne lui parle pas,	<i>my sister does not speak to him.</i>
nous ne lui parlons pas,	<i>we do not speak to him.</i>
vous ne lui parlez pas,	<i>you do not speak to him.</i>
ils or elles ne lui parlent pas,	<i>they do not speak to him.</i>
mes frères ne lui parlent pas,	<i>my brothers do not speak to him.</i>
mes sœurs ne lui parlent pas,	<i>my sisters do not speak to him.</i>

3. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE.

Lui parlé-je ?	<i>Do I speak to him ?</i>
lui parles-tu ?	<i>dost thou speak to him ?</i>
lui parle-t-il ?	<i>does he speak to him ?</i>
lui parle-t-elle ?	<i>does she speak to him ?</i>
lui parle-t-on ?	<i>does some one speak to him ?</i>
mon frère lui parle-t-il ?	<i>does my brother speak to him ?</i>
ma sœur lui parle-t-elle ?	<i>does my sister speak to him ?</i>
lui parlons-nous ?	<i>do we speak to him ?</i>
lui parlez-vous ?	<i>do you speak to him ?</i>
lui parlent-ils ? lui parlent-elles ?	<i>do they speak to him ?</i>
mes frères lui parlent-ils ?	<i>do my brothers speak to him ?</i>
mes sœurs lui parlent-elles ?	<i>do my sisters speak to him ?</i>

4. INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCE.

Ne lui parlé-je pas ?	<i>Do I not speak to him ?</i>
ne lui parles-tu pas ?	<i>dost thou not speak to him ?</i>
ne lui parle-t-il pas ?	<i>does he not speak to him ?</i>

ne lui parle-t-elle pas ?	does she not speak to him ?
ne lui parle-t-on pas ?	does not some one speak to him ?
mon frère ne lui parle-t-il pas ?	does not my brother speak to him ?
ma sœur ne lui parle-t-elle pas ?	does not my sister speak to him ?
ne lui parlons-nous pas ?	do we not speak to him ?
ne lui parlez-vous pas ?	do you not speak to him ?
ne lui parlent-ils pas ?	do they not speak to him ?
ne lui parlent-elles pas ?	
mes frères ne lui parlent-ils pas ?	do not my brothers speak to him ?
mes sœurs ne lui parlent-elles pas ?	do not my sisters speak to him ?

OBSERVATION.—In the compound tenses, you apply these rules with the auxiliary *avoir* or *être*, as if there were no other verb, because the participle is put the last: as, j'ai parlé, je n'ai pas parlé, ai-je parlé ? je ne lui ai pas parlé, ne lui ai-je pas parlé ?

EXERCISE upon the preceding Rules.

N.B. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, have reference to the four rules above.

You know the king; you do not know the king; do you
 1 connaître roi 1 2 3
 know the king? you know him; you do not know him; do
 1 4 1 2 4
 you know him? he sells his horse; he does not sell his
 3 4 1 vendre cheval 1 2
 horse; does he sell his horse? he does not sell it; does he
 3 1 2 4 le 3
 sell it? has he sold it? they are sick; are they sick? they
 4 3 4 l' 1 malade 3 1
 are not sick; I will give a watch to your son; I will not
 2 1 donner d montre f fils 1 2
 give a watch to your son; I have given it to your son; I
 d 1 f 4 l' fils 1
 have not given it to your son; I do not blame your conduct;
 2 f 4 l' 1 2 blâmer conduite f
 does she choose a fine colour? we hold him; have you an-
 3 choisir beau couleur 1 tenir 4 le 3 ré-
 sivered to their questions? you have translated the book,
 pondre — 1 traduire livre m
 but you have not translated it well; do not threaten them;
 mais 1 2 4 l' bien 2 menacer H 4 les
 has he spoken (to them)? we have pacified him; they have
 3 4 leur 1 —fier 4 l' 1
 not pardoned me; do you look for your book? yes, I have
 2 pardonner 4 m' 3 chercher * oui 1
 lost it; they do not sing well; have you breakfasted? he
 perdre 4 l' 1 chanter 3 déjeuner 1

has not received a letter from his father; I have sent him
 2 recevoir de lettre 1 envoyer à lui
 a book; has he received it? no, sir, he has not received it;
 3 4 non monsieur 1 2 4
 you do not neglect your friends; have you not neglected
 1 2 négliger ami " 3 2
 me? the Austrians have not ratified the treaty; but the
 4 m' Autrichiens 2 —fier traité
 French will force them to do it; have you decided the
 Français pl forcer 4 les à faire 4 le 3 décider
 question?

OF THE REFLECTED VERBS.

We give the name of *reflected verbs* to all those which have for their subject and object the same person or thing, such as *je m'habille*, I dress myself; *je me repens*, I repent.

RULE 1.—All reflected verbs are conjugated with two pronouns in every tense and person of the indicative and subjunctive moods; thus, *je me*, is used for the first person singular; *tu te*, for the second; *il se*, or *elle se*, for the third; *nous nous*, for the first plural; *vous vous*, for the second; *ils se*, or *elles se*, for the third. Example:

Je me lève,	<i>I rise.</i>
tu te lèves,	<i>thou risest.</i>
il se lève,	<i>he rises.</i>
elle se lève,	<i>she rises.</i>
mon frère se lève,	<i>my brother rises.</i>
ma sœur se lève,	<i>my sister rises.</i>
nous nous levons,	<i>we rise.</i>
vous vous levez,	<i>you rise.</i>
ils or elles se lèvent,	<i>they rise.</i>
mes frères se lèvent,	<i>my brothers rise.</i>
mes sœurs se lèvent,	<i>my sisters rise.</i>

RULE 2.—All reflected verbs are conjugated in English with the verb *to have* in their compound tenses, in French with the verb *être*; and then the participle generally agrees with the accusative of the verb. Example:

Je me suis levé,	<i>I have risen.</i>
tu t'es levé,	<i>thou hast risen.</i>
il s'est levé,	<i>he has risen.</i>
elle s'est levée,	<i>she has risen.</i>
mon frère s'est levé,	<i>my brother has risen.</i>
ma sœur s'est levée,	<i>my sister has risen.</i>

nous nous sommes levés,	we have risen.
vous vous êtes levés,	you have risen.
ils se sont levés, •	they have risen.
elles se sont levées,	
mes frères se sont levés,	my brothers have risen.
mes sœurs se sont levées,	my sisters have risen.

OBSERVATION.—When you see *se* or *s'* before a verb in the infinitive, it is not always in the accusative, but sometimes in the dative case: as, *ils se sont imaginé, they have fancied.*

EXERCISE upon the **SIMPLE TENSES** of the
REFLECTED VERBS.

A. I abstain from doing it; he (stoops down); we bathe
s'abstenir de le faire *se baisser* *se baigner*
every summer; you (go to bed) before your brother; they
tous les étés *se coucher* *avant*
rebel.—B. I did (nurse myself) (too much); he did
se révolter *s'écouter* *trop*
mean to travel; we did torment ourselves about
se proposer de voyager *se tourmenter* * *pour*
that affair; you did despair without reason; they did
affaire f *se désespérer* *sans* *raison*
applaud themselves for their folly.—C. I retracted; the river
s'applaudir *de* *sottise f* *se rétracter* *rivière*
overflowed; we distrusted your sister; you (made haste);
se déborder *se défier de* *se dépêcher*
they were very well.—D. I shall seize upon his fortune;
se porter très-bien *s'emparer de* — *f*
he will (be eager) to do it; she will (fall asleep); we shall
s'empreser de le faire *s'endormir*
(grow bold); you will (catch cold); they will (take root).
s'enhardir *s'enrhumer* *s'enraciner*
—E. I would (grow rich); he would discourse with her;
s'enrichir *s'entretenir avec*
we would rise; you would wonder; they would (fly away);
se lever *s'étonner* *s'envoler*
the flowers would blow.—F. That I may perceive your
fleurs *s'épanouir* *s'apercevoir de*
designs; that he may amuse himself at his expense; that
dessein *s'amuser* * *à* *dépens pl*
we may incur this danger; that you may (be em-
se précipiter dans — *s'oc-*
ployed) about trifles; that they may (go out) of the
cuper de bagatelle *se détourner* •
right way.—G. That I might yield to his reasons; that
droit chemin *se rendre* *raison*

he might employ, the means. I (point out) to him;
se servir de moyen que indiquer A,
 that we might (be degraded) in our own eyes; that you
s'avilir propre
 might (be proud) of this trifling advantage; that they might
s'enorgueillir faible avantage
 (love each other) from their infancy.
s'entr'aimer depuis enfance.

N. B. The imperative of reflected verbs being conjugated in a different manner, according as it is affirmative or negative, we shall give both.

AFFIRMATIVELY.

Lève-toi,	rise (thou).
qu'il se lève,	let him rise.
levons-nous,	let us rise.
levez-vous,	rise.
qu'ils se lèvent,	let them rise.

NEGATIVELY.

Ne te lève pas,	do not rise.
qu'il ne se lève pas,	let him not rise.
ne nous levons pas,	let us not rise.
ne vous levez pas,	do not rise.
qu'ils ne se lèvent,	let them not rise.

1. O man! remember that thou art mortal; do not rejoice to see thine enemies unhappy; let him (be undeceived);
se souvenir mortel se
plaire voir ennemi malheureux se désabuser
 let her not (go to bed) so early; let us habituate
se coucher de si bonne heure s'habituer
 ourselves to employment; let us not deceive ourselves;
au travail se séduire nous-mêmes
 rest yourself under the shade of this tree; do not
se reposer à ombre arbre
 interfere in that business; let them (make haste); let them
se mêler de affaire f se dépêcher
 not behave so ill.
se comporter si mal.

EXERCISES upon the COMPOUND TENSES of the REFLECTED VERBS.

A. I have (stolen away); she has (fainted away); we have trusted to your father; you have (found fault) without occasion; these flowers have (faded away).—B. I had married; she had distrusted me; we had been tolerably well; you had laughed at him; they had complained of you.—C. I had rejoiced at that news; he had repented of his faults; we had walked in the park; you had submitted to their orders; they had remembered me.—D. I shall have seized his arms; she will have (painted her face); we shall have fancied that he was right; you will have (grown rich); those women will have (stolen away).—E. I should have repented of my temerity; he would have boasted of his birth; we should have devoted ourselves entirely to the service of our country; you would have degraded yourselves in the public opinion; they would have (been drowned).—F. That I may have (been deceived) so grossly; that she may have decided to stay; that we may have (had relaxation) from the fatigue; that you may have disguised yourself so cleverly; that your sisters may have exposed themselves so rashly.—G. That I might have revenged myself; that she might have neglected herself in that important circumstance; that we might have

lost ourselves in the forest; that you might have con-
s'égarer * *forêt* *s'en-*
 versed about plots against the state; that they might
tretenir de complot contre état
 have annoyed (one another) in that law-suit.
se desservir réciproquement *procès.*

HOW TO FORM THE ADVERBS FROM THE ADJECTIVES.

RULE 1.—The adjectives which end with a vowel become adverbs, by adding *ment* to their final; as, *sage*, *sagement*; *poli*, *poliment*; *ingenu*, *ingénument*.

RULE 2.—The adjectives which end in *nt* become adverbs, by changing the final *nt* into *nement*; as, *constant*, *constamment*; *patient*, *patiemment*.

RULE 3.—The adjectives which end in any other consonant, become adverbs by adding *ment* to their feminine termination: as, *grand*, *cruel*, m. *grande*, *cruelle*, f. *grandement*, *cruellement*, adverbs.—See how to make the feminine of adjectives, p. 14. The figures 1, 2, 3, have reference to the above three rules.

EXERCISE upon the FORMATION of ADVERBS.

My father can do that easily; you speak freely;
pouvoir (ir) A faire cela 1 aisé 1 libre
 they act prudently; he died suddenly; they fight
agir 2 prudent mourir (ir) C 3 soudain combattre (ir)
 vigorously; he answered wisely; do you speak seriously?
3 vigoureux répondre C 1 sage 3 sérieux
 you suffer patiently; he denied the fact absolutely; they
souffrir 2 patient nier C fait 1 absolu
 are happily out of danger; they will come, probably; I
3 heureux hors venir 1 probable
 have eaten sufficiently; speak to them separately; he an-
manger 2 suffisant parler H leur 1 séparé ré-
 sponded affirmatively; you do not speak clearly; I am
pondre C 3 affirmatif 3 clair
 constantly occupied; they speak figuratively; children are
2 constant occupé 3 figuratif les enfans

naturally fond of pleasure; your loss is really great
naturel passionné pour le plaisir *perte f 3 réel*
 he comes regularly; you did that secretly.
venir 3 régulier *faire (ir) c cela 3 secret.*

PLACE OF THE ADVERBS.

Adverbs are generally placed in French after the verb, but never between the personal pronouns and the verb as in English, as will be further explained in chapter 19 of the Syntax, rules 172 and 173. Example:

They never say what they think
Ils ne disent jamais ce qu'ils pensent.
 and not *Ils ne jamais disent.*

We always patiently suffer their insults; he seldom
toujours patiemment souffrir *insulte* *rarement*
 reads; they bravely assaulted the enemy; we dis-
lire (ir) *—ment assaillir (ir) c*
 tinctly see; they miserably died; we are
—tement voir (ir) *misérablement mourir (ir) c* *
 sometimes deceived; you often contradict me;
quelquefois se méprendre (ir) A *souvent contredire (ir)*
 they secretly retired; I willingly consent to that bar-
secrètement se retirer c *volontiers consentir*
 gain; they reluctantly promised to go there; they
marché à contre-cœur promettre (ir) c *d'y aller*
 strongly opposed that measure; they really deceive
fortement s'opposer c a *mesure* *réellement tromper*
 you; he minutely enquired about that affair;
minutieusement s'enquérir (ir) c de *affaire*
 they are grossly mistaken.
 * *grossièrement se méprendre (ir) A.*

PART III.

CHAP. I.

SYNTAX OF ARTICLES.

THIS chapter is divided into four sections. The first explains the circumstances in which articles are used in both languages; the second enumerates the cases in which the article is used in French and not in English; the third describes those in which, on the contrary, it is used in English and not in French; and the fourth contains all cases in which both languages take no article.

N.B. It is proper to make the pupils learn the rules by heart, and translate them into French; also to explain the parts of speech of at least one sentence in every lesson. This practice will soon make them acquainted with all the terms of the grammar, and greatly facilitate the acquisition of the rules.

SECTION I.

CASES IN WHICH ARTICLES ARE USED IN FRENCH AND IN ENGLISH.

RULE 1.—*Indefinite Article, un, une; a, an.*

The indefinite article (*un*, m. *une*, f., *a* or *an*) is used in both languages before a substantive singular, to denote one individual of a class, without specifying which one. Examples:

a man; *of a* woman; *to a* bird; *from a* house.
un homme; *d'une* femme; *à un* oiseau; *d'une* maison.

A friend cannot be well known in prosperity, nor
ami ne peut bien connu dans la prospérité ni
hidden in adversity. Good example is a language which
se cacher l' —té le bon exemple langue f que
every body understands. Fortune is a capricious deity.
tout le monde comprend la — f —cieux divinité
When a man is once out of the way of God, he easily
quand une fois hors voie Dieu 172 aisément
falls from one fault into another. A wise man values
tomber une faute f dans une autre sage homme estimer
pleasure very little, because it is a bane to the mind; but
très-peu le plaisir parce que c' poison pour l'esprit

he values virtue much, because it is an ornament in
beaucoup la vertu parce qu'elle • *ornement la*
 prosperity, a comfort in adversity, and the source of all
consolation • *source f tout*
 happiness.
bonheur.

RULE 2.—*Definite article le, la, les; the.*

The definite article (*le, m, la, f, l',* before a vowel or an *h* mute, *les*, plural of both genders, *the; du, de la, de l', des*, of or from the; *au, à la, à l', aux*, to the,) is used in both languages before a substantive taken in a particular or an individual sense. Examples:

The days of the month of January are very short.

Les jours du mois de Janvier sont très-courts.

The earth turns, and not the sun.

La terre tourne, et non le soleil.

The spring, the summer, the autumn and the winter are
printemps été automne hiver
the four seasons of the year. The sight, the hearing, the
saison année vue ouïe
feeling, the taste and the smell are the five natural senses.
toucher goût odorat cinq naturel sens
The east, the west, the north, and the south are the four
est ouest nord sud
cardinal points.
cardinal —

The love of glory, the fear of shame, and the design
amour la gloire crainte f la honte dessein
of making one's fortune, are often the cause of that valour
*de faire * — f souvent — f valeur*
so much celebrated among men. The instructions of
*si * vanté parmi les — de l'*
adversity are wholesome, though unpleasing; the lessons
salutaire quoique désagréable leçon
of prosperity are pleasing, but often pernicious: the
de la agréable — cieux.
first discover sometimes concealed virtues, and the
première découvrir a quelquefois des caché
others hidden vices. The air is very healthy in France,
autre des secret — m — • très-sain en
and the climate temperate.
climat tempéré •

PART III.

CHAP. I.

SYNTAX OF ARTICLES.

THIS chapter is divided into four sections. The first explains the circumstances in which articles are used in both languages; the second enumerates the cases in which the article is used in French and not in English; the third describes those in which, on the contrary, it is used in English and not in French; and the fourth contains all cases in which both languages take no article.

N.B. It is proper to make the pupils learn the rules by heart, and translate them into French; also to explain the parts of speech of at least one sentence in every lesson. This practice will soon make them acquainted with all the terms of the grammar, and greatly facilitate the acquisition of the rules.

SECTION I.

CASES IN WHICH ARTICLES ARE USED IN FRENCH AND IN ENGLISH.

RULE 1.—*Indefinite Article, un, une; a, an.*

The indefinite article (*un*, m. *une*, f., *a* or *an*) is used in both languages before a substantive singular, to denote one individual of a class, without specifying which one. Examples:

a man; *of a* woman; *to a* bird; *from a* house.
un homme; *d'une* femme; *à un* oiseau; *d'une* maison.

A friend cannot be well known in prosperity, nor
ami ne peut bien connu dans la prospérité ni
hidden in adversity. Good example is a language which
se cacher l' —té le bon exemple langue f que
every body understands. Fortune is a capricious deity.
tout le monde comprend la — f —cieux divinité
When a man is once out of the way of God, he easily
quand une fois hors voie Dieu 172 aisément
falls from one fault into another. A wise man values
tomber une faute f dans une autre sage homme estimer
pleasure very little, because it is a bane to the mind; but
très-peu le plaisir parce que c' poison pour l'esprit

he values virtue much, because it is an ornament in
beaucoup la vertu parce qu'elle • *ornement la*
 prosperity, a comfort in adversity, and the source of all
consolation • *source f tout*
 happiness.
bonheur.

RULE 2.—*Definite article le, la, les; the.*

The definite article (*le, m, la, f, l',* before a vowel
h mute, *les*, plural of both genders, the; *du, de la, de l', des*,
 of or from the; *au, à la, à l', aux*, to the,) is used in both
 languages before a substantive taken in a particular or an
 individual sense. Examples:

The days of the month of January are very short.

Les jours du mois de Janvier sont très-courts.

The earth turns, and not the sun.

La terre tourne, et non le soleil.

The spring, the summer, the autumn and the winter are
printemps été automne hiver
the four seasons of the year. The sight, the hearing, the
saison année vue ouïe
feeling, the taste and the smell are the five natural senses.
toucher goût odorat cinq naturel sens
The east, the west, the north, and the south are the four
est ouest nord sud
cardinal points.
cardinal —

The love of glory, the fear of shame, and the design
amour la gloire crainte f la honte dessein
of making one's fortune, are often the cause of that valour
*de faire * — f souvent — f valeur*
so much celebrated among men. The instructions of
*si * vanté parmi les — de l'*
adversity are wholesome, though unpleasant; the lessons
salutaire quoique désagréable leçon
of prosperity are pleasing, but often pernicious: the
de la agréable — cieux.
first discover sometimes concealed virtues, and the
première découvrir a quelquefois des caché
others hidden vices. The air is very healthy in France,
autre des secret — m — • très-sain en
and the climate temperate.
climat tempéré •

RULE 3.—*a, an*, rendered by *le, la, les*.

The English use the indefinite article (*a* or *an*) before nouns of *measure, weight, and number*, when they want to express how much a thing is worth, or sold for; the French, on the contrary, use the definite article (*le, la, les*) in such cases. Examples:

A shilling *a* yard; six-pence *a* pound.

Un schelling la verge; douze sous la livre.

as if it were, a shilling the yard, six-pence the pound.

I sell sugar for five guineas *a* hundred weight; coffee
*vendre le sucre * guinée quintal * le café*
 at seven shillings *a* pound, and tobacco at three-pence *an*
** schelling livre f le tabac sou*
 ounce. Corn is sold for two crowns *a* bushel. This
*once le blé se vend * écus boisseau*
 riband costs a shilling *a* yard. This cheese costs seven-
riban coûter verge f fromage
 pence *a* pound. Good wine is sold for five shillings *a*
*le bon vin se vend **
 bottle. Bread costs two-pence *a* pound. Beer is sold
bouteille le pain la bière se vend
 for five-pence *a* pot. (How much) *a* pound? How much
pot combien
a yard? How much *a* dozen?
verge f douzaine f

SECTION II.

CASES IN WHICH ARTICLES ARE USED IN FRENCH, AND NOT IN ENGLISH.

RULE 4.—*le, la, les*, not *the*

☞ * The definite article (*le, la, les*) is used in French and not in English, before substantives common taken in the whole extent of their signification. Examples:

Virtue is amiable. Vice is odious.

La vertu est aimable. Le vice est odieux.

* The rules marked thus ☞ are the most essential, and must be learnt by heart. I should advise to make the pupil first go through them only; and afterwards to begin the *syntax* a second time; and then to do all the rules in the same order in which they are set down in the book.

Clemency, wisdom and courage are finer ornaments
clémence sagesse — de plus beau ornement
in a prince, than the jewels with which he is covered. Custom
*dans — que • joyau * dont couvert usage*
is the legislator of languages. Charity is the greatest of
• législateur des • langue charité la plus grande
all christian virtues. History, geography and mathematics
chrétien • vertu histoire • géographie mathématique
are necessary sciences. Pride and vanity are often the
des nécessaire — orgueil — té souvent
source of many misfortunes. Heroes have their fits
— f bien des malheurs héros moment
of fear, and cowards their brave moments. Intemperance
de crainte lâche moment de bravoure intempérance
and idleness are the two most dangerous enemies of life.
 paresse plus dangereux ennemi vie
Eloquence, painting, sculpture and poetry belong to the
é— peinture — poésie appartenir
imagination.

RULE 5.—*le, la, les*, before names of kingdoms.

1. The definite article (*le, la, les*) is used in French, and not in English, before the names of kingdoms, countries, and provinces. Examples:

France, England, and Spain are three great kingdoms.
*La France, l'Angleterre, et l'Espagne sont trois grands royaumes.**

2. Nevertheless, these nouns take no articles, when they are preceded by the preposition *en*. Examples:

I am going to France. He lives in Spain.

Je vais en France. Il demeure en Espagne.

3. They are usually preceded by the preposition *de*, instead of the definite article *du, de l', or de la*, when they are the latter of two substantives, and express the country of the first, and also when they come after the verb *venir*. Examples:

Burgundy wine. Spanish wool. I come from Russia.
Le vin de Bourgogne. La laine d'Espagne. Je viens de Russie.

In this case nouns of kingdoms and provinces may be considered as adjectives, used to specify the noun antecedent.—See for farther explanation the same rule in the grammar.*

* There are some nouns of kingdoms and provinces, which are always preceded by an article: such are, *le Mexique, le Bengal, le Perche, le Maine, &c.*

2. I like to travel; I was last year in Italy;—3. I come
aimer à voyager B *l'an dernier* *Italie* *venir*
 now from Prussia;—2. I shall stay this winter in England;
à présent *Prusse* *rester cet hiver* *Angleterre*
 but I shall go next spring to Germany.
aller (ir) au prochain printemps en Allemagne

1. Europe, Asia, Africa, and America, are the four
 — *Asie* *Afrique* *Amérique*
 parts of the world.—3. The kingdoms of France, Spain,
partie *monde m* *royaume m* — *Espagne*
 and England are very powerful.—1. Sicily is the granary of
très-puissant *Sicile f* *grenier*
 Italy, and Italy the garden of Europe.—3. I come from
l'Italie *jardin de l'* *venir*
 Russia, and I go next spring to America.—1.
Russie *aller (ir)* D *au* *en*
 Touraine, Anjou and Normandy are three fruitful provinces
 — f — — *die f* *fertile* —
 of France.—1. I set out for Portugal next week.—3. My
*partir A** — *m la* *semaine f*
 father comes from Switzerland.
venir *Suisse*

RULE 6.—*le, la, les*, before adjectives.

The definite article (*le, la, les*) is used in French before all
 adjectives substantively used. Example :

I like black better than red.
J'aime mieux le noir que le rouge.

Observe that all adjectives, verbs, prepositions, &c. when
 substantively used, are masculine in French.

Good and bad seem to be blended together through
*bon mauvais sembler** *mêlé ensemble dans*
 all nature, and sometimes to be confounded
toute la — *quelquefois ** *confondu*
 with each other. White and black are two opposite colours.
l'un avec l'autre blanc noir opposé couleur
 Green hurts the sight less than red.
vert blesser vue f moins que rouge

The wise man seeketh wisdom, but the fool despiseth
*sage ** *chercher sagesse* 4 *fool mépriser*
 understanding. Newton says, that there are seven primitive
raison 4 *dire (ir) qu'il y a*
 colours, called orange colour, red, yellow, green, blue, indigo,
*couleur appelé — ** *rouge, jaune, vert, bleu —*
 and violet.

RULE 7.—*Partitive article du, de la, des ; some.*

☞ The partitive article (*du, m, de la, f, de l'*, before a vowel or an *h* mute, *des*, plural of both genders) is used in French before a substantive, when we want to express an indeterminate number or portion of a thing. This article answers to the English word *some*, expressed or understood. Example :

Give me *some* bread, *some* meat, and *some* eggs.
donnez-moi du pain, de la viande, et des œufs.

It might be said that the nouns preceded by *du, de la, or des* are in the genitive case, and that the word *portion* or *number* is understood.

Give me *some* bread and *some* butter ; *some* beer or *some*
donner il pain beurre m bière ou
wine ; some meat or *some* cheese ; *some* mustard and *some*
vin viande f fromage moutarde f
vinegar ; some apples, *some* oranges, and *some* lemons.
vinaigre m pomme — citron

A good christian considers the world as a place of
chrétien considérer monde m comme lieu
 banishment, where he meets with snares, difficulties, and
*bannissement où trouver *. piège —té*
 dangers. Benefits procure friends, and one (good turn)
— les 9 service —rer ami bienfait

deserves another. Money gives to a woman credit,
en mériter un autre 9 argent donner femme crédit
 friends, birth, and beauty. Spain produces wine, lemons,
ami naissance beauté Espagne produire vin citron
 oranges, and olives. Give me *some* cold water and red
— — froid eau f rouge
 wine.
vin

RULE 8.—*de, instead of du, de la, des.*

☞ If a substantive taken in a partitive sense, as before, is preceded by an adjective, the preposition *de* is used for both genders and numbers, instead of the partitive article *du, de la, des*. Example :

Give me *some* good bread, good meat, and good eggs.
donnez-moi de bon pain, de bonne viande, et de bons œufs, not
donnez-moi du bon pain, de la bonne viande, &c.

History is full of old generals, conquered by young sol-
L'histoire 9 plein vieux général vaincus jeune sol-

diers. Great events happened at the death of Cæsar.
dat événements arriver c à mort Cæsar
 Good cider (is better) than bad wine. We have in our
*bon cidre m vaut mieux que mauvais vin**
 garden fine peaches and apricots. To write² well¹, one
*jardin belles pêche beaux abricot * pour écrire bien il*
 must have good ink, good pens, and good paper. There is
*faut * encre f plume f papier voulu **
 good bread, but bad meat.
pain mauvais viande f.

RULE 9.—Where the Article is required.

✎ Every noun which is the subject or the object of a verb, must have in French one of the three articles, *definite*, *indefinite*, or *partitive*; except proper names and nouns preceded by any pronoun. Example:

Hypocrisy is an homage which vice pays to virtue.
l'hypocrisie est un hommage que le vice rend à la vertu.

as if it were, *the* hypocrisy is an homage which *the* vice pays to *the* virtue.

Honour is due to kings and magistrates. Let us prefer
honneur dû roi 10 —trai préférer n
 virtue to interest. Rare events strike us (with admiration.)
vertu intérêt — événement frapper 48 d'admira-
 Ignorance is the source of errors, scruples, and superstition.
— — f erreur 10 scrupule m
 Glory and infamy are vain, if they do not attend
— Gloire infamie — 50 accompagner
 real goods and evils. Iron and steel are more useful than
réel 27 biens 10 maux fer acier plus utile
 gold and silver. Remedies are often disgusting in proportion
or argent remède souvent dégoûtant en —
 as they are salutary. Gold and silver cannot render
de ce qu' 50 salutaire ne sauraient rendre
 man happy.
heureux

RULE 10.—The Articles must be repeated.

✎ The articles *definite*, *indefinite*, and *partitive*, are repeated in French before every substantive, and agree with them in gender and number. Example:

Fear and ignorance are the sources of superstition.
La crainte et l'ignorance sont les sources de la superstition

They are also repeated before adjectives in French where they are omitted in English.

I read the historians ancient and modern.

Je lis les historiens anciens et les modernes.

Politeness is not always born with us; it is often the offspring of custom, experience, and application. If society is formed of the communication of ideas and sentiments, speech must be the essential tie of it; being at once the pencil of wit, and the interpreter of the heart. Interest, glory and ambition are the great motives of our actions. Besides gold and silver, Europe draws from the new world pepper, sugar, tea, tobacco, and several other things. Vice and virtue have contrary effects.

*Politesse 4 toujours née avec 50 souvent
fruit usage 4 é — si société 4 se
forme — idée 4 — la parole
doit en être essentiel lien * * à la fois pinceau
esprit 4 interprète . . cœur Intérêt 9 gloire
ambition are the great motives of our actions. Besides gold
— grand mobile m . — outre or 4
and silver, Europe draws from the new world pepper,
argent 5 tirer nouveau monde 7 poivre m
sugar, tea, tobacco, and several other things. Vice and
sucre m thé tabac plusieurs autre chose — m 4
virtue have contrary effects.
vertu contraire 7 effet.*

SECTION III.

CASES IN WHICH ARTICLES ARE USED IN ENGLISH, AND NOT IN FRENCH.

RULE 11.—*the*, not *le*, *la*, *les*.

The definite article (*the*) is used in English, and not in French, before the ordinal numbers *first*, *second*, *third*, &c. when they come after the words *book*, *chapter*, &c. or the name of a sovereign. Examples:

Henry <i>the</i> first;	Charles <i>the</i> second;	George <i>the</i> third.
<i>Henri premier</i> ;	<i>Charles second</i> ;	<i>George trois</i> .
Volume <i>the</i> first;	chapter <i>the</i> sixth;	article <i>the</i> ninth.
<i>tome premier</i> ;	<i>chapitre six</i> ;	<i>article neuf</i> .

Observe, that the ordinal numbers used in English after the name of a sovereign are expressed in French by the cardinal *trois*, *quatre*, *cinq*, *six*, &c. the two first excepted; but the cardinal or ordinal are almost indifferently used after the words *livre*, *chapitre*, &c. and we can say *livre six*, or *sixième*; *règle d'huze*, or *douzième*; *chapitre quatre*, or *quatrième*.

Charles *the* second, king of Spain, son of Philip *the* fourth,
roi Espagne fils Philippe
 left his kingdom to Philip *the* fifth. William *the* third, king
laisser c royaume Guillaume
 of England, married the princess Mary, daughter of James
Angleterre épouser c princesse Marie fille Jacques
the second, and grand-daughter of Charles *the* first.

petite-fille
 Book *the* third, chapter *the* sixth, section *the* second, rule
livre m chapitre m — règle f
the tenth, volume *the* fourth, article *the* fifth.
tome m

RULE 12.—*a*, not *un* or *une*.

The indefinite article (*a* or *an*) is used in English, and not in French, before a substantive which expresses the *titles, professions, trades, country, or any other attribute of the noun antecedent.* * Examples :

I am *a* Frenchman; he is *a* physician; he is *a* nobleman.

Je suis Français il est médecin il est noble

Socrates was *a* philosopher; Apelles, *a* painter; Phidias,

a sculptor; Cicero, *a* orator; Livy, *a* historian; and
—leur Cicéron —leur Tit-Live —rien

Virgil *a* poet. Harvey *a* physician of great reputation.

Virgile poète médecin —
 I am *a* Frenchman, but my father was *a* Englishman.

Français — Anglais

The best coffee comes from Mocha, *a* town of Arabia

meilleur café venir Moka ville l'Arabie
 Felix. Was your father *a* nobleman? No, he was *a*

Heureux — 92 noble Non —
 soldier. The canal of Briare, in the Gatinois, *a* province of

soldat — dans m —
 France, joins the Loire to the Seine. The king of Prussia

joindre — f — f Prusse
 was at once *a* king, *a* warrior, and *a* philosopher.

B à la fois guerrier —phe

RULE 13.—*a* not *un* or *une*.

1. The indefinite article (*a* or *an*) is also used in English, and not in French, in the title of a book. Example :

A history of England. *A* French grammar.
histoire d'Angleterre grammaire française

* But when they are modified by an adjective, or determined by a relative pronoun, they admit of the article indefinite. Examples
je suis un Français malheureux.

2. After the word *what*, used to show surprise. Examples :

What a noise you make! What a dreadful account!
quel bruit vous faites ! quelle fâcheuse nouvelle !

3. Before a substantive used in apposition, or to specify or explain the noun preceding. Example :

I come from Caen, a town of Normandy.
Je viens de Caen, ville de Normandie

1. A Roman history, from the foundation of Rome
romain histoire depuis fondation
 to the destruction of the Roman empire.—2. What an
jusqu'à — m quelle
 unhappy situation is that which obliges a father in his own
fâcheuse — celle obliger père dans propre
 defence to expose the failings of his children!—3. The
défense à révéler faute enfant
 triumph was decreed to Cæsar, an honour he well deserved.
triomphe c décerner César honneur qu mériter B bien
 —3. Raphael excelled in expression, a rare talent in
— aël exceller B dans l' — — chez
 painters.
les peintre

SECTION IV.

CASES IN WHICH NO ARTICLE IS USED IN EITHER LANGUAGE.

RULE 14.—No Article before Proper Names.

☞ No article is used in either language before the word *Dieu* in the singular, and taken in a general sense, nor before the proper names of *men, women, towns, days, months, or heathen gods*. Examples :

God is merciful. Peter is dead.
Dieu est miséricordieux. Pierre est mort.

not *le Dieu*, or *le Pierre est mort*; but we say; *le Dieu des Chrétiens, le dieu de la guerre, les dieux et les demi-dieux*.

We must except from this rule, 1. many Italian authors, such as *le Tasse, l'Arioste, &c.*—2. Proper names used to denote an individual distinction, such as *l'Athalie de Racine, la Mérope de Voltaire*. 3. Proper names in the plural, when they are employed as names of a class or common nouns; such as, *les Cicérons sont rares, les Homères, les Virgiles, les Démosthènes*.

Aristotle and *Plato* flourished in the age of *Philip* and
 — *te* *Platon* fleurir c siècle m *Philippe*
Alexander. *London* and *Paris* are the two greatest capitals
 d' —dre —dres plus grand —le f
 in Europe. Come and see me on *Friday* or *Saturday*. *Sep-*
de l' — venir H * me voir * *Vendredi Samedi*
tember and *October* are two fine months in England. *Jupiter*;
 —bre —bre beau mois *Angleterre* —
Mars, and *Venus* were heathen divinities. *Demosthenes* and
 — *Vénus* B païenne divinité ?
Cicero were two great orators; the former flourished at
 B grand orateur premier fleurir c à
Athens, and the latter at *Rome*.
Athènes second —

RULE 15.—*No Article before Pronouns.*

No article is used in either language before a substantive preceded by any pronoun whatever. Examples :

My book.	This watch.	What news ?
<i>Mon livre.</i>	<i>cette montre.</i>	<i>quelle nouvelle ?</i>

The pronoun *quelqu'un*, somebody; *plusieurs*, many; *personne*, nobody; and *rien*, nothing; which are used without a substantive, take no article before them. Example: *plusieurs le disent*, many say so; not *les plusieurs le disent*.

My brother and sister learn geography.
frère 63 *sœur apprendre (ir) géographie* 9

No one becomes debauched or virtuous on a sudden.
personne ne devenir débauché vertueux tout d'un coup
 Nothing can be more intolerable than a fortunate fool.
rien ne pouvoir (ir) plus insupportable qu' heureux sot.
 Whoever spares the bad, does harm to the good. This
quiconque épargner méchants faire (ir) tort bons
 watch is new; give it to your sister.
montre f neuf H la sœur

RULE 16.—*de* after *sorte*, *genre*, &c.

✎ No article (but the preposition *de* or *d'*) is used in French, after the words, *sorte*, *genre*, or any other of the same signification. Example:—

Man is exposed to all sorts of infirmities.
L'homme est sujet à toutes sortes d'infirmités.

N. B. This rule is of very great extent, and requires particular attention.

There are two kinds of curiosity, the one of interest,
il y a sorte f —té l'une intérêt
 which incites us to desire to learn what may
porter 48 à désirer d'apprendre ce qui pouvoir (ir) A
 be useful to us; and the other of pride, which proceeds from
nous être utile l'autre orgueil venir
 the desire of knowing what others are ignorant of. (Old age).
*désir de savoir ce que les autres * ignorer A * . vieillesse f*
 is a sort of tyrant, who forbids, under pain of death, all the
sorte tyran défendre sous peine mort
 pleasures of youth. Politeness is a mixture of discretion, com-
plaisir 4 jeunesse 9 politesse mélange m discrétion com-
 placency, and circumspection. Praises are a kind of tribute
plaisance circonspection louange 9 sorte . tribut
 (that is paid) to true merit. There is in goodness a kind of
qu'on paie 4 vrai mérite m il y a dans 4 bonté sorte
 magnet which attracts all men to itself. The hieroglyphics
aimant attirer 106 soi hiéroglyphes
 of the Egyptians were figures of men, birds, animals, and
Egyptien B —7 oiseau —
 reptiles.

RULE 17.—Transposition of Words.

☞ No article (but the preposition *de* or *d'*) is used in French before the latter of two substantives, when it expresses the nature, matter, species, qualities, or country of the first.

The English often put the genitive first. This transposition of words is not allowed in French, and the order must be reversed. Examples:

Burgundy wine. A gold watch. A chamber-maid.
du vin de Bourgogne. une montre d'or. une femme de chambre.
 as if it were some wine of Burgundy, a watch of gold; and so on for others.


• The galleries of the House of Commons are supported
galerie Chambre f des Commune soutenir
 by slender iron pillars, ornamented with Corinthian capitals.
de petit fer pilier ornés de corinthien chapiteau
 Burgundy wine is very dear in England. The English
Bourgogne vin 9 cher en Angleterre Anglais
 cannot manufacture their superfine cloth without
ne pouvoir (ir) A —re —fin drap sans
 Spanish wool. I always wear silk-stockings in summer.
Espagne laine 172 porter toujours soie bas 7 en été
 On the first day of every parliament, the four representatives
chaque parlement représentant

of the city of London appear in scarlet gowns, and sit
cit  Londr s para tre en  carlate robe s'asseoir (ir)

near the speaker.
aupr s du pr sident

Socrates' wisdom and Achilles' valour ~~are~~ celebrated in
sagesse valeur c l br  dans
the writings of historians. The character of *H sop's fables*
 crit des — rien caract re m des Esop  — f
is simple nature. O happiness! our being's end, for thee
la — — bonheur  tre fin 49
we live, for thee we dare to die.
*vivre (ir) oser * mourir*

RULE 18.— *Preposition de.*

 No article (but the preposition *de*) is used in French after the following adverbs of quantity, scarcity, or exclusion.

<i>assez</i> *,	enough.	<i>pas</i> or <i>point</i> ,	no.
<i>autant</i> ,	as much.	<i>peu</i> ,	little.
<i>beaucoup</i> ,	much.	<i>plus</i> ,	more.
<i>combien</i> ,	how many.	<i>rien</i> ,	nothing.
<i>jamais</i> ,	never.	<i>tant</i> ,	so many.
<i>moins</i> ,	less.	<i>trop</i> ,	too much.

Also after the words *nombre*, number; *quantit *, quantity; *livre*, pound; *mesure*, measure; *aune*, ell; *verge*, yard; *boisseau*, bushel; and after any other words of quantity

Examples :

Much bread and little meat. More prudence.
beaucoup de pain et peu de viande. plus de prudence.

A pound of cheese. A bushel of coals.
une livre de fromage. un boisseau de charbon.

Nevertheless, the article is used after *la plupart*, the most part; and after *bien*, used as a substantive. Thus we say, *il a bien des amis*, with an article; and *il a beaucoup d'amis*, without any article; he has many friends.

Those who govern are like celestial bodies, which have
ceux gouverner comme c leste corps 2
much brightness and no rest. Few people have prudence
beaucoup  clat point repos peu gens —

* *Assez*, enough, is placed after the substantive in English, and always before in French: as, he has riches enough, *il a assez de richesses*.

enough to avoid bad company, and to distrust
assez pour éviter mauvais compagnie 9 *pour se défier*
 themselves. Mothers have often (too much) indulgence
d'eux-mêmes mère 9 *souvent trop* —
 for their children. The few vestiges which remain of the
enfant le peu — *rester*
 brilliant actions of the Greeks and Romans, are found
brillant — *Grec* 21 *Romains se trouvent*
 in Plutarch and several other historians. Authors
dans Plutarque 21 *plusieurs autre historien* *auteur*
 derive more eloquence, force, and grandeur, from the choice
tirer plus é — 21 — — *choix*
 and disposition of words, than from any other cause. Few
 21 — *mot que d'aucune.* — f. *peu*
 things (are necessary) to make a wise man happy. Give me
chose suffire (ir) pour rendre sage heureux H moi
 two hundred pounds of butter, five yards of riband, and a
cent livre beurre verge ruban
 great quantity of coals.
 — *té charbon sing.*

RULE 19.—*de*, after an Adjective.

☞ No article (but the preposition *de* or *d'*) is used before
 a substantive governed in the genitive case by an adjective or
 a participle, followed in English by the preposition *of*, *from*,
by, or *with*. Examples:

Full of charms. Endowed with virtue. Esteemed by all.
plein de charmes. doué de vertu. estimé de tous.

Human life is full of disappointments. (To die) for one's
humain vie 9 *plein* *revers* *Mourir* *son*
 country, is a death full of charms. A noble but confused
pays mort charme — 29 — *se*
 thought is a diamond covered with dust. If fortune has
pensée diamant couvert poussière — f 4
 blessed you with her gifts, if besides you are endowed
favorisé 48 *don* • *outre cela* • *doué*
 with wit and judgment, be not puffed up with pride, and
esprit 21 *jugement ne vous enflez pas** *orgueil*
 do not contemn others. No one is fit for friendship,
mépriser les autres on n'est pas propre à l'amitié
 who is not endowed with virtue. Whoever attacks the
quand on doué vertu *Quiconque attaquer*
 sacred person of a king, is guilty of high treason.
sacré personne f roi coupable haut trahison

RULE 20.—*The Article in several other Cases.*

1. No article is used in either language, before a noun which forms but one idea with the verb antecedent; which is known when they are or could be both expressed by one word in English. Examples:

To envy.	To visit.	To pity.	and so on.
<i>porter envie.</i>	<i>rendre visite.</i>	<i>avoir pitié.</i>	

2. Before a noun which forms a kind of adverb with the preposition antecedent: such are *avec ardeur*, for *ardement*, with eagerness; *sans considération*, without consideration.

3. Before the cardinal numbers, *one, two, three, four, five, six, &c.* Examples:

Lend me twenty pounds.	have six oranges.
<i>prêtez-moi vingt livres.</i>	<i>J'ai six oranges.</i>

The article must be used before the cardinal numbers, if the noun to which they are joined have a fixed number; such as, *les quatre saisons*, the four seasons; *les neuf muses*, the nine muses; and also if it be specified: as, *les deux lettres que j'ai écrites*, the two letters which I have written; *le dix de Janvier*, the tenth of January.—These exceptions are not difficult, because they are the same in both languages.

1. Those who speak *without* reflection are exposed to many errors.—2. We often do *by* self-love what we think we do *through* (good nature).—3. Bibliographers arrange books in *five* principal classes; divinity, jurisprudence, history, polite letters, and arts.—3. The mouth of the Danube has *five* large canals in the (Euxine sea).—3. The temple of Solomon was begun *four hundred* and *eighty* years after the departure of the Israelites from Egypt.—1. I have *pity* (on the) poor

ceux parler sans réflexion exposés
bien 18 erreur 172 faire (ir) amour-propre ce que
*croire (ir) * par bienveillance —phe*
—ger livre en — — théologie —
histoire belle lettre f — embouchure
— m grand — Pont-Euxin
*— m Sa— c commence * quatre-*
vingts départ Israélites Egypte
—1. I have pitié des pauvre pl

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the ARTICLES.

Secrecy is the key of prudence, and the sanctuary of
secret 9 *clef* 4 — — *aire* in
wisdom. Cares and infelicities are often the attendants of
sagesse 4 *soin* 9 *malheur* 10 *souvent* *compagnon* •
greatness. Lewis the fourteenth was the protector of sci-
grandeur 4 *Louis* 11 *c* — *teur* 4
ences. The English language abounds with writings ad-
— *anglais* *langue* f *abonder* en *écrit* a-
dressed to the imagination and feelings; the inventive
dressé • — 21 *sentiment* *créateur*
powers of Shakspeare, the sublime conceptions of Milton,
esprit sing. 14 — *pensée*
the strength and harmony of Pope, the delicacy of Addison,
force f — *nie* *délicatesse*
and the pathetic simplicity of Sterne, render them comparable
pathétique — *té* *rendre* 48 —
with the best authors among the ancients.
dat. • *meilleur* *auteur* *parmi* *ancien*

Some thieves having broken into a gentleman's house,
7 *voleurs* *étant* *entrés* *dans* *la* *particulier* 17
went to the footman's bed, and told him, that if he
aller (ir) c *domestique* *lit* 17 *lui* *dire* (ir) c
moved, he was a dead man. I am sure, replied he, that if
remuer B B *mort* *sûr* *répliqua-t-il*
I move, I am alive.

A *en* *vie*
Envy judges of actions by the persons who perform them;
envie 9 *juger* — 4 *par* *personne* *faire* (ir) 48
but equity judges of persons by their actions. When God
équité 4 *quand* 14
deprives us of any thing that is dear to us, such as wife,
priver 48 *quelque* *chose* *cher* 47 *tel* *que* *femme*
children, friends, or fortune, we must submit without
enfant *ami* — f *devoir* A *nous* *y* *soumettre* *sans*
murmur or complaint. Mutual benevolence is the bond of
murmure *et* *sans* *plainte* *mutuel* *bienveillance* 9 *lien* 4
society; without it, life is grievous, full of fear, and void
société f *sans* *elle* *vie* 9 *à* *charge* *pleine* 19 *craindre* *sans*
of comfort. Few people deny the truth of the gospel, and
* *consolation* *peu* 18 *gens* *nier* *vérité* *évangile* m
yet many live as if it was not true. The
cependant *plusieurs* *vivre* (ir) *comme* *s'il* B *vrai*
Portuguese send every year a fleet to Brazil, to
— *gais* *envoyer* (ir) *tous* *les* *ans* *flotte* f *au* *Brésil* *pour*

bring cotton, amber, saltpetre, and many other articles
apporter coton 7 ambre salpêtre m plusieurs chose
 Caesar's first attempt on Britain took place fifty-five years
 17 *attaque Bretagne f eut lieu cinquante-cinq an*
 before the birth of Jesus Christ. Possession without right
avant naissance — 9 droit 4
 is in many cases of property a better title than right without
plusieurs cas propriété meilleur titre m sans
 possession; but it is not the same in cases of respect
 4 *mais ce la même chose en fait —*
 and consideration. The sins particularly forbidden in the
 21 *péché — lièrement défendus*
 gospel, are sensual lusts, covetousness, anger, envy,
évangile les plaisirs des sens, avarice 10 colère f envie
 hatred, pride, vanity, theft, and falsehood. The action of the
haine f orgueil — té vol fausseté
 great Scipio, when he added to the fortune of a young prin-
général Scipion quand ajouter c — f jeune prin-
 cess he had taken prisoner, all the money which her friends
cesse qu'il B faite prisonnière argent ami
 brought him to ransom her, has done him no less
lui apporter c pour sa rançon ne lui a pas fait moins 18
 honour than his famous conquests.
honneur fameux conquête f
 Geography gives a true description of the terrestrial
géographie donner vrai — terrestre
 globe; the globe has an imaginary axis, and is surrounded
— m — nuire axe m • • • environné
 with imaginary circles; the axis is a line passing through the
 19 *cercles ligne f qui passe par*
 centre of the earth, upon which the whole earth turns like
— m sur lequel toute la tourne comme
 a wheel upon the axle-tree. Machiavel (lays down) for
rone f essieu établir
 maxims in the art of governing, artifice, stratagem,
— me dans. — gouverner — 9 10 — gème
 (despotic power,) injustice, and irreligion. Christopher
despotisme — — — phe
 Columbus, who discovered America in 1492, was a Genoese.
Colomb découvrir c en B 12 Génois
 a great seaman, and the best geographer of his age.
marin géographe siècle m.

CHAPTER II.

OF SUBSTANTIVES.

• RULE 21.—Two Substantives in the same Case.

☞ When there is a *conjunction* between two nouns, they must be put in the same case; and if there be a *preposition* before the first, it must be repeated before all others. Examples:

You are in a state of doubt, fear, and distrust;
vous êtes dans un état de doute, de crainte, et de défiance.
 as if it were of doubt, of fear, and of distrust.

Criticism examines the merit of literary productions
critique f —ner mérite m littéraire — 2
 under the three general heads of thought, arrangement, and
sous point de pensée 4 ordre
 expression. One day spent in the practice of virtue and
— un jour passé dans pratique f vertu 4
 religion, is better than a whole life spent in impiety and
— vaut mieux que entier vie passée impiété 4
 wickedness. Justice is obedience to written laws and
méchanceté 9 — f obéissance 4 écrit loi 2
 constitutions. Corrupted men and of ill lives easily
— corrompu 9 mauvaise vie aisément
 believe that there is no more virtue, probity, and sin-
 172 *croire (ir) A il n'y a pas plus 18 —té*
 cerity in others than in themselves. The rules of civility
—té dans les autres eux-mêmes règle 4 honnêteté
 are those of decency and good manners.
celles bienséance 4 2 mœurs f

RULE 22.—Genitive Case.

☞ The latter of two substantives is generally put in the genitive case in French, whether it be in the genitive or dative in English. Example:

The impious are enemies to virtue.
les impies sont les ennemis de la vertu — not à la vertu.

Our consciousness of good and evil shows us what
connaissance bien 4 21 mal montre 47 quelle
 ought to be the rule to govern our actions. Pleasure is
*doit * règle f pour diriger — plaisir 9*
 often an enemy to reason and virtue. The corruption
souvent l' raison 4 21

- of the heart is often the cause of the corruption of the mind.
cœur — *f* *esprit*
 Peru has rich mines of gold, silver, and diamonds.
Pérou m 5 — 8 or, *argent*, 21 *diamant*.

RULE 23. — Nouns in the Dative.

1. When two substantives are joined together, so as to make a compound word, that which is the first in English is put the second in French, and is usually preceded by the preposition *à*, when it expresses the use of the first. Examples :

Silk-worms. A wind-mill. A patch-box.
des vers à soie. *un moulin à vent.* *une boîte à mouches.*
 as if it were, worms to silk, a mill to wind, a box to patch.

2. Such a noun is preceded by *au*, *à la*, or *aux*, when it is the name of something good to eat or drink. Examples :

The hay-market. The rabbit-man.
le marché au foin. *l'homme aux lapins.*

1. Many pretend that battles are not so bloody since
Plusieurs prétendre bataille 9 si sanglant depuis
 the invention of fire-arms.—2. Where is the cream-pot?
 — *feu armes où crème f*—

1. There are a (great many) silk-worms in Italy.
*il y a * beaucoup 18 soie ver en Italie.*

1. Go into the dining-room, the company is there.
aller (ir) n dans manger salle f compagnie y est

- 2. I have been to the fish-market, however I have bought
poisson marché cependant acheter
 no fish, because it was too dear.—2. The oyster-woman is
 18 *parce qu'il n trop cher huitres femme*

- at the door.—2. I have broken the milk-pot.—1. I always
porte f casser lait — 172

- keep fire-arms in my bed-room for my safety during
garder feu armes 7 coucher chambre f sureté pendant
 the night; I have no gunpowder at present; thus my
nuit n'ai point de canon poudre à ainsi

fire-arms are useless.
inutile.

RULE 24. — Collective General.

A noun collective general (such as *peuple*, *nation*, *flotte*, *armée*, &c.) requires that the verb, the adjective or pronouns which have reference to it, be always put in the singular in French. Example :

The army of the confederates is very numerous.

L'armée des confédérés est très-nombreuse.

Is it necessary that (the whole universe) (should arm
nécessaire tout l'univers s'armer
 itself) to destroy one man? A drop of water (is enough)
pour détruire goutte eau suffire (ir)
 to kill him. The society of men would soon be overturned,
pour le tuer société 4 bientôt 172 détruite
 if (every one) could (with impunity) take from
chacun pouvoir (ir) 13 impunément ôter à un
 another what he should think proper. The people wish
autre ce qu' juger à propos peuple m désirer
 for peace; but the parliament, who know best the in-
** 4 paix parlement connaître mieux* • in-
 terests of the nation, have voted for the continuation of the
lérêt voter —
 war. The grand fleet set sail yesterday. The
guerre flotte mettre (ir) c à la voile hier
 enemy presented themselves before the gates of our town,
sing. présenter c se devant porte ville
 and began the attack on Tuesday: our garrison made a
*commencer c attaque * Mardi garnison faire (ir) c*
 sally on Thursday, and obliged them to raise the siege.
*sortie * Jeudi obliger c 48 à lever* —

RULE 25.—Collective Partitive.

The verbs, the adjectives, and pronouns, which have reference to a collective partitive (such as *nombre, joule, beaucoup, &c.*) agree in gender and number with the noun following. Example:

A great number of friends remained attached to me.
un grand nombre d'amis me restèrent attachés.

If, however, the collective partitive were preceded by a demonstrative pronoun or the definite article, *le, la, les*, it should govern the adjective, the pronoun, and the verb in the singular number. Example:

The number of the inhabitants amounts to 1000 men.
*le nombre des habitants monte à 1000 hommes.**

* Unless *la plupart* be followed by a noun singular, the verb which comes after it is always put in the plural. Example: *la plupart du monde le croit; la plupart le croient, la plupart des jeunes gens le croient.*

The *crowd* of soldiers who came obliged us to retire.
foule f soldats venir c obliger c 48 à nous retirer
 A *multitude* of inhabitants abandoned their country. A
— f habitant abandonner c pays
crowd of children ran after him.
troupe enfans courir (ir) c après 49
 A *crowd* of nymphs crowned with flowers swam behind
foule nymphe couronnées 19 fleur nager B derrière
 the car of the goddess. When the unbelievers invaded
char déesse quand infidèle envahir c
 Spain, an innumerable *multitude* of inhabitants retired
Espagne 5 innombrable — f se retirer c
 into the Asturias, where they proclaimed Pelagius for
*les —ies où proclamer c Pélage **
 their king.

CHAPTER III.

OF ADJECTIVES.—Page 14.

This chapter is divided into four sections. The first treats of the concord of adjectives; the second of their government; the third of the adjectives of dimension; and the fourth of comparatives and superlatives.

SECTION I.

OF THE CONCORD AND PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE 26.—*Adjectives are declinable.*

☞ All adjectives are declinable in French, and agree in gender and number with the substantive or pronoun to which they are joined or relative. Example :

Good bread, meat, and apples.
de bon pain, de bonne viande, et de bonnes pommes.

N.B. It may be seen by this example, that whenever the adjective is placed before several substantives in English, it must be repeated before every one in French, and agree with each of them.

Marriage is the most perfect state of friendship; it
9 mariage 44 plus parfait état 4 amitié

lessens our cares by dividing them, and doubles our pleasures
diminuer *soin* *en* *divisant* 48 *doubler* *plaisir*
 by mutual participation. Our minister has profound judg-
par *mutuel* 2 — *—tre* *un* *profond* *juge-*
 ment, invariable industry, and a very extensive know-
ment 10 — *—trie* *très-étendu* *con-*
 ledge of the interests of foreign courts. The victory
naissance *intérêt* *étranger* *cour* 2 *victoire* f
 which Cæsar obtained in the plains of Pharsalia, was baneful
César *gagner* c *plaine* f *Pharsale* c *funeste*
 to his country, pernicious to the Romans, and dismal
pays *—cieux* *Romains* *désastreux*
 to human nature
pour 2 *humain* *genre* in

RULE 27.— *The Adjective agrees with the last Noun.*

If an adjective or a participle come in English immediately before several substantives, it is put after them in French, and usually agrees with the last only. Example :

Lewis XIV. had in France an absolute power and authority.
Louis XIV. avait en France un pouvoir et une autorité absolue.
 or *Louis XIV. avait en France une autorité et un pouvoir absolu.*

Though when two substantives of the same gender are followed in French by an adjective that is meant to apply to both, it may be of that gender, and in the plural number. Examples :

We saw only furniture of massive gold and silver.
On n'y voyait que meubles d'or et d'argent massifs.
 The sweetness and virtue depicted in your face.
La douceur et la vertu peintes sur votre visage.

If the adjective were any of those mentioned in rule 30, it should be repeated before each substantive. Example :

Louis XIV. avait un grand pouvoir et une grande autorité.

Garrick played with charming taste and nobleness.
représenter 11 *avec* *un* *charmant* *goût* 10 *noblesse*
 Sylla acquired in Rome an absolute power and authority.
acquérir (ir) c à *absolu* *pouvoir* 10 *autorité*
 The English fight at sea with wonderful courage
combattre (ir) *sur* *mer* *un* *surprenant* —
 and intrepidity. In most courtiers we find
10 *intrépidité* *dans* *la* *plupart* *des* *courtisan* *on* *ne* *trouve*
 nothing but an affected politeness and sincerity. She has her
** qu' affecté politesse sincérité la*
 mouth and eyes shut.
bouche f *yeux* *fermé*

RULE 28.—*Adjectives relating to several Nouns.*

1. If there be a verb between them, the adjectives or participles which have reference to several substantives are always put in the plural, though the nouns be in the singular. Examples :

His father and brother are very learned.
son père et son frère sont très-savans — pl. m.
 His mother and sister are handsome.
sa mère et sa sœur sont belles — pl. f.

2. If the substantives be of different genders, the adjectives and participles which come after the verb, and have reference to them, are always put in the plural masculine. Example :

Your brother and sister are prudent and wise.
votre frère et votre sœur sont prudents et sages — pl. m.

2. Modesty and disinterestedness deserve to be praised
 9 — *tie* 10 *désintéressement mériter d' louer*
 and admired.— 2. The room and the closet were open,
 — *rer* *chambre f* *cabinet B ouvert*
 but the window and the drawer were shut.— 2. Men and
fenêtre f *tiroir B fermer*
 women are mortal.— 1. My mother and sister are dead.— 2
femme mortel *mère 63 sœur mort*
 His son and daughter are happy.— 2. Your courage and
fil 63 fille heureux —
 boldness seem astonishing to me.— 2. Pride and misery are
 63 *hardiesse paraître étonnant* 47 9 *orgueil* 10 *misère f ne*
 but too often united.— 2. Health, favour, and power are
sont que trop souvent unir 9 *santé* 10 *faveur pouvoir*
 common to the good and wicked, and can be taken from
commun 6 *bons* 10 *méchant peuvent nous être ôté*
 us ; — 1. but glory and virtue are solid, sure, and lasting.— 2
 9 *gloire* 10 *solide* — *durable*
 (There are) some persons whose courage and virtue need
il y a 7 personne 80 9 — 10 *ont besoin*
 not be sustained.
d'être soutenir

RULE 29.—*Place of Adjectives.*

When two or more adjectives refer to the same substantive, they are usually placed after it, and a conjunction is put before the last, whether there is one or not in English. Examples :

A just and bountiful God. A long tedious book.
un Dieu juste et bienfaisant. un livre long et ennuyeux.

Great and extensive projects joined to a wise execution.
vaste projet joindre sage —
 constitute the great minister. A shallow argument has
faire (ir) —tre faible —
 often persuaded persons who had not been convinced
souvent persuader 7 personnes f n convaincu
 by palpable and evident proofs. Courtiers often (flatter
— é — 7 preuve f courtisan souvent 172 se
 themselves) that under a young liberal prince, they
flatter sous jeune — —
 (shall be able) to attain to a power which they never could
*pouvoir (ir) * arriver poste m 120*
 hope for (in the) service of an old frugal prince. Brave and
*n'espérer * au — m âgé économe — —*
 trusty men are generally humane and merciful; while
constant généralement humain miséricordieux pende.
 men of base and low mind are usually insolent
que un bas rampant esprit ordinairement —
 and tyrannical, when they have power. A plain, simple, and
— que quand autorité 7 uni —
 natural style is the only one (to be recommended).
*—rel — m seul * recommandable*

RULE 30. — *Adjective put before the Substantive.*

☞ The following adjectives, *beau, bon, grand, gros, jeune, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, moindre, petit, saint, vieux*; also the adjectives of numbers, and the *possessive, demonstrative, and indeterminate* pronouns, precede in French, as in English, the substantive to which they are joined. Example :

A good boy. A good girl.
un bon garçon, une bonne fille.
 not *un garçon bon, une fille bonne.*

A good king often loses, by the ill-conduct of
roi souvent 172 perdre mauvais conduite f
 his ministers, the affection of his subjects. Socrates and
—tre — sujet —
 Plato were two great philosophers. Young men hope that
*Platon n —phe les jeunes gens espérer **
 they shall live long, but no one is sure he shall live
** * vivre longtemps personne n' sûr * de*
 till to-morrow. Little geniuses are dazzled with (every thing)
jusqu'à demain 2 Petit génie éblouir de tout
 that sparkles, because (every thing) is new to them; great
ce qui briller parce que tout nouveau pour eux 2

geniuses, (on the) contrary, admire but few things, because
au contraire n'admirer que peu 18 f *parce que*
 few things appear new to them. (How many) books have
peu . *paraître nouveau* 47 *combien* 18 *livre*
 you got? I have *two* grammars and *one* exercise book. Is
 * *grammaire* *livre de thèmes*
 your father at home? No, sir; but my mother is, and she
 . 92 *à la maison non* *y est*
 will be glad to see you.
bien aise de vous voir

RULE 31.—*Adjective put after the Substantive.*

☞ The adjectives not mentioned in the preceding rule are usually placed in French after the substantive which they qualify. Examples:

Cold weather. A round table. The public good.
Le temps froid. une table ronde. le bien public.
 not *un froid temps, une ronde table, le public bien.*

Humility is the basis of christian virtues. A prejudiced
 9 —*té* *base* f *chrétien* 2 *prévenu*
 mind is the source of innumerable errors. The public good
esprit — f 16 *innombrable erreur* *bien*
 is preferable to private interest. Satirical minds are like
 — *particulier intérêt* 2 9 —*que esprit comme*
 'small insects, whose existence is manifested only by the efforts
petits insecte 2 *dont* — *ne se manifeste que* —
 which they make to corrupt things. Geography is the
faire (ir) pour corrompre 9 9 *Géographie*
 description of the terrestrial globe. A silent awe, a doubtful
 — —*tre* — m *silencieux respect timide*
 eye, and a hesitating voice, are the natural indications of a
œil *tremblant voix* —*rel marque* f
 true and respectful love. The central fire is the physical
vrai 29 —*tureux amour* — *feu* —*que*
 cause of the heat of the subterraneous springs.
 — f *chaleur* *souterrain* *source* f

SECTION II.

OF THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE 32.—*Adjectives which govern the Genitive.*

☞ The adjectives and participles which signify *plenty* or *scarcity*, as well as those followed in English by the preposi-

tion *of, from, with, or by*, are generally followed in French by the preposition *de* without any article. Examples:

Life is full of miseries. I am satisfied *with* you.
la vie est pleine de misères. • *Je suis content de vous.*
 not • *est pleine des misères, nor* • *Je suis content avec vous.*

Nature is content *with* little. I am fatigued *with* running.
 — *se contente peu* *fatigué* • *courir*
 He is accused *of* robbery. You are loaded *with* honours.
 • — *sé vol* *comblé* *honneur*

They are worthy *of* praise. Human life is never free *from* troubles.
digne louange humain 31 *vie* 120 *exempt*
peine la plupart des *mécontent* — •

We are in vain endued *with* reason, if we are not endued
en — doué *raison* •

with virtue. Xerxes being loaded *with* all the advantages of
 • — *ès* *comblé* *avantages*

body and of fortune, and yet not being satisfied *with* them,
corps † 10 † *cependant n'en étant pas satisfait*

proposed a reward to him who should invent new
 — *ser c récompense celui qui inventer E nouveau*
 pleasures for him.
plaisir 8 49

RULE 33. — Adjectives which govern the Dative.

The adjectives which denote *aptness, fitness, inclination, ease, or readiness*; govern the noun in the dative with *à, au, à la, or aux*, according to its gender and number; and the verb in the present of the infinitive with the preposition *à* before it, whatever case or preposition they govern in English. Examples:

He is fit *for* any thing. Are you ready *to* go out?
 • *il est propre à tout.* *êtes-vous prêt à sortir?*

Most children are inclined *to* idleness. A disturbed
la plupart des enfants enclin *paresse* † *troublé* 31
 mind is not fit *to* discharge its duty. A christian
esprit propre remplir 68 *devoir* *chrétien*
 ought to be ready *to* die, rather than deny his faith.
devoir A * *prêt mourir plutôt que de renier* *foi*
 It is ridiculous to put one's-self in a passion against objects
il — le de mettre se 48 *en* * *colère contre objet* 7
 which are insensible *of* * our anger. I am sensible *of* your
colère

* Sensible and insensible govern the dative in French, and the genitive in English.

kindness. That is easy to say. Marshy places are
bonté cela • facile dire marécageux 31, lieu 9
 liable to heavy fogs.
sujet épais 31 brouillard 7

RULE 34.— *Adjectives followed by à and envers.*

Some adjectives are followed in French by the preposition *à*, and in English by the preposition *in*; such are *curieux à*, curious *in*; *exact à*, precise *in*; *habile à*, skilful *in*; *zélé à*, zealous *in*, &c. Some others take the preposition *envers*; such are, *affable, civil, cruel*, and all those which signify behaviour towards others. Example:

Young people should be civil to every body;
les jeunes gens doivent être honnêtes envers tout le monde

Merchants should be precise in fulfilling their engagements,
le marchand doit être exact remplir —
 and christians patient in suffering injuries. Your brother is
chrétien — souffrir 9 — re
 skilful in (doing every thing). Scipio Africanus was
habile tout faire Scipion l'Africain B
 respectful to his mother, liberal to his sisters, good to his
—toux mère libéral sœurs bon
 servants, just and affable to every body. I do not like
domestique juste — tout le monde aimer
 people who are cruel to animals.
personnes f — —

SECTION III.

ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSION.

RULE 35.— *How to express the Adjectives of Dimension.*

The adjectives of dimension can be rendered in French by an adjective or a substantive. Thus, *high* can be expressed by *haut de* or *de hauteur*; *long*, by *long de* or *de longueur*; *wide* by *large de*, or *de largeur*; but *deep* must be expressed by *de profondeur*. Example:

A house eighty feet long and forty high;
une maison de 80 pieds de longueur et de 40 de hauteur.
or une maison longue de 80 pieds et haute de 40:—
 not *une maison quatre-vingts pieds longue et quarante haute.*

Observe to put *de* before the numbers, *un, deux, trois, quatre, &c.* when they are not preceded by a verb, and also before the words of dimension, *hauteur, profondeur, &c.*

The monument of London is a round pillar of the
 Doric order, two hundred feet high; it stands on a
 pedestal twenty feet high. The room of the Tower (in
 which) is the royal train of artillery, is an apartment three
 hundred and eighty feet long, fifty wide, and twenty
 high; it has a passage (in the) middle sixteen feet wide, on
 each side of which the artillery is placed.

chaque côté duquel placé

RULE 36. — *Adjectives of Dimension take avoir.*

The English make use of the verb *to be*, when they want to express the height, depth, or breadth of an object; and the French of the verb *avoir*. In this case, *de* is left out before the word of number. Example:

That house is fifty feet long.

cette maison a cinquante pieds de longueur, not est 50, &c.

London-bridge is nine hundred and twenty feet long,
 fifty-five high, and fifty-six wide. Westminster-bridge is
 forty-four feet broad; the (free way) under the arches
 of this bridge is eight hundred and seventy feet; it
 consists of fourteen piers, thirteen large arches, and
 two small ones; the two middle piers are each seventeen
 feet wide, and contain two hundred tons of solid
 stones; all the others decrease in breadth by a foot on
 each side. The (coffee-trees) are commonly forty feet
 high; they yield twice a year an abundant crop. The

famous mine of Potosi in Peru, is more than fifteen hundred feet deep. — f — dans le Pérou 39 quinze

SECTION IV.

OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

The comparative of equality is made by putting *aussi*, or *autant* before the adjective ; that of superiority, by putting *plus* ; and that of inferiority, by putting *moins*, *si*, or by a negation of equality, and this form requires *si* to be substituted for *aussi* : when there are two or more adjectives, the sign of comparison is repeated before every one.

RULE 37.—*as* expressed by *que*.

The word *as*, used in English after a comparative of equality or inferiority, is always expressed in French by *que*, and never by *comme*. Examples :

He is as learned as you. I am not so old as he.
il est aussi savant que vous. Je ne suis pas si âgé que lui.

N. B. When *as* is followed by *as*, the first is expressed by *à* *ssi*, as in the example above.

The love of our neighbour is as necessary in society for the happiness of life, as in christianity for eternal salvation. Great talents are of every condition ; and if they do not shine so commonly in low people as in

others, it is for want of care and cultivation. The man truly great, preserves his judgment (in the) midst of dangers with (as much) presence of mind, as if he (was

not in) any danger. It is as easy to do good as to do evil. Nothing delights (so much) as the works of nature. The Thames is not so rapid as the Rhine. Paris is not so populous as London.

Tamise f rapide Rhin — 14
peuplé — des

RULE 38. — by *expressed* by *de*.

The word *by*, which is often used in English after a comparative, to denote how much a thing exceeds another, is expressed in French by *de*, and never by *par*. Example :

Your father is richer than mine *by* much.
votre père est de beaucoup plus riche que le mien.

The condor is a bird of Peru, bigger than the ostrich
 — oiseau du Pérou plus grand autruche
by much. The goddess Calypso was taller than all her
beaucoup *décasse* — B *plus grand que*
 nymphs *by* (the whole head). I am older than you *by* two
nymphes *toute la tête* *plus âgé que*
 years; however, you are taller than I *by* two inches. Your
ans *cependant* *plus grand* *moi* *pouce*
 son is more learned than mine *by* much.
filz plus savant 69 *beaucoup*

RULE 39.—than *expressed* by *que*, or *by* *de*.

☞ The word *than*, which comes in English after a comparative, is expressed in French by *que* before a noun or a pronoun, and by *de* before the cardinal numbers and fractional parts, *one, two, three, half, &c.* Examples :

He is more *than* half ruined. He is taller *than* you.
Il est plus d'à moitié ruiné. Il est plus grand que vous.

He is more *than* twenty years of age.
Il a plus de vingt ans.

Augustus was not perhaps a greater man *than* Antony,
Auguste 14 B *peut-être* * *Antoine*
 but he was more fortunate. Nothing is more pleasing to the
 B *heureux* 118 *agréable*
 mind *than* the light of truth. *The simplicity of nature is
esprit *lumière + vérité* — *té* 4 —
 more amiable *than* all the embellishments of art. Is there
aimable — *lisement* • 4 — *y a-t-il*
 (any thing) more natural *than* to love those who do us
rien de — *rel* • *d'aimer ceux faire (ir)* 47
 good? The consumption of wheat in London is more *than*
bien 7 *consommation* f *de blé* à — *dres* *de plus*
 five millions and • ninety thousand bushels a year;
cinq — * *quatre-vingt-dix mille boisseau par an*
 that of oxen and cows more *than* one hundred and twenty
celle *bœuf* 21 *vache* *cent* *vingt*

thousand, and that of sheep and lambs more *than* nine hun-
celle mouton 21 agneau
 dred thousand. Virtue is more precious *than* riches. Lewis
4 vertu précieux 4 richesses Louis
 the fourteenth, in 1681, had sixty thousand sailors, and more
11 en 60 soixante matelots
than a hundred men of war.
vaisseau guerre

RULE 40.—*than* expressed by *que de*, and *que ne*.

✎ The word *than*, which comes after a comparative, is expressed by *que de*, when the next verb is in the present of the infinitive; and usually by *que ne*, when the next verb is in any tense of the indicative mood. Examples:

It is more noble to forgive *than* to revenge.

plus noble de pardonner que de se venger.

Your son is more learned and wise *than* I thought.

votre fils est plus savant et plus sage que je ne pensais

It is greater to overcome one's passions, *than* to conquer
il grand de vaincre ses — conquérir
 whole nations. There are some authors who write better
entiers 31 — 7 il y a 7 auteur écrire mieux
than they speak, and (some others) who speak better *than*
parler d'autres

they write. You make greater progress *than* I should have
faire (ir) 8 progrès
 thought; and you behave better *than* when you were young.

penser se conduire mieux B jeune
 We flatter ourselves more *than* we should. It is harder to
*se flatter * plus devoir E difficile*

avoid censure *than* to gain applause; for the
d'éviter censure gagner des applaudissemens

latter may (be obtained) by one great action; but
dermier m pl pouvoir (ir) A s'obtenir mais
 to avoid the former, (a man) must never do wrong.

pour éviter premier f on ne devoir A jamais mal
 Religion teaches us to suffer injuries patiently,

9— *apprendre (ir) à 47 souffrir 9—re patiemment*
rather than to revenge.
plutôt nous venger

* Ne is left out, when there is a conjunction between *que* and the verb. Example: *je me porte mieux que quand j'étais en France; not que quand je n'étais en France.*

• RULE 41.—*the more expressed by plus.*

☞ The English make use of the definite article before the comparatives of proportion, and the French never. Thus, *the more* is expressed by *plus*, and *the less* by *moins*, not by *le plus*, or *le moins*, which are used only in superlatives. Example :

The more I study French, the more I like it.

plus j'étudie le Français, plus je l'aime.

not, *le plus j'étudie le Français, le plus je l'aime.*

The more I know mankind, the more I love them.

connaître les hommes aimer

The more a man is adorned with moderation, temperance,

doué 32. é— 21 é—

and justice, *the more* valuable is he. *The more* one drop-

— il est estimable

sical drinks, *the more* thirsty he is. ~~the less~~ ^{hy-}

dropique boire (ir) il est altéré

you study, *the less* you will improve. *The more* I

étudier p profiter

examine that question, *the more* difficult I find it. *The*

—ner — je la trouve difficile

more we want people to serve us, *the less* happy

avoir besoin de gens pour nous servir nous

are we.

sommes heureux

RULE 42.—*Precedency of plus and moins.*

☞ If the comparatives of proportion are made with two substantives, or two adjectives, the words of the sentence are put in the following order. 1. *Plus* or *moins*. 2. The nominative of the verb. 3. The verb. 4. The substantive, adjective, or adverb. The rest as in English. Example :

The richer people are, the more covetous they are.

1 2 3 4. 1 2 3 4

plus on est riche, plus on est avare.

not *le plus riche on est, le plus avare on est.*

as if it were : more one is rich, more one is covetous ; and so on for all the sentences of the same kind.

The more elevated in dignity one is, the less pride one

élevé en —té on d'orgueil on

ought to have. *The more* difficult a thing is, *the more*

devoir A * difficile chose f

honourable. When a man possesses nothing great

elle est honorable ne posséder rien 18

but his birth, *the higher* that birth is, *the more* insignificant it must appear. *The shorter* the day is, *the longer* the night. *The less* money he gets, *the less* expense he (is at).
que naissance grand —
fainte devoir à paraître court jour long
nuît d'argent gagner de dépense
faire (ir)

RULE 43.—*The Superlative governs the Subjunctive and Genitive.*

✍ The superlative always governs the noun in the genitive case in French, and most commonly the verb in the subjunctive mood. Examples :

China is the greatest empire in the world.
la Chine est le plus grand empire du monde—genit.
 You are the happiest man I know.
vous êtes l'homme le plus heureux que je connaisse—subj.
 not, empire dans le monde ; nor, que je connais.

Probity is one of the greatest qualities a man can possess. Of all the amusements and pleasures of life, conversation has always been looked upon as the most reasonable method of unbending the mind. In the rich crown which His Majesty wears in parliament, is a large emerald seven inches round, the finest in the world. The best quality a man can have, is to be civil and obliging toward the most uncivil and disobliging people. The city of Troy was formerly the most famous in Asia Minor. The reign of Lewis the Fourteenth was one of the longest, and altogether one of the most glorious which is recorded in history.

—té 9 une —té qu'
 can posséder tous — les plaisir
 4 vie 9— toujours, considérée * comme
 31 moyen 44 139 délasser esprit
 31 —té f porter au parlement il y
 f 35 ponce de tour
 m meilleur qu' pouvoir (ir) d'être
 31 désobligeant 44
 f pl ville Troie 8 autrefois fameux
 11 c
 4 histoire

RULE 44.—*The Superlative takes an Article.*

If the substantive precedes the superlative, both take the definite article *le, la, les*, before them; but the substantive takes no article, if the superlative goes first. Examples:

The greatest man in the French army.
le plus grand homme de l'armée française.
 You are the most obliging man in the town.
vous êtes l'homme le plus obligeant de la ville.

N. B. The superlatives precede the substantive when they are formed from the adjectives mentioned in rule 30, and usually go after when they are formed from any other.

The most learned men are not often the most virtuous.
savant 31 souvent vertueux
 Sobriety renders the most common way of living agree-
sobriété 9 rendre commun 31 genre m vu. agré-
 able; it gives the most vigorous health, which is the most
able elle donner vigoureux 31 santé qui
 constant of all pleasures. Pride shuts the mind against the
106 plaisir orgueil fermer esprit à
 plainest conviction. The Emperor Antoninus is considered as
évident 31 — reur Antonin considérer
 one of the greatest princes who ever reigned. The
un 30 — aient jamais régné
 canal of Languedoc is one of the most memorable monuments
— du — un mé— 31 —
 which have been made in the age of Lewis the Fourteenth.
qui 43 faits dans siècle m Louis 11
 The most ancient and general idolatry, was the worship ren-
29 idolâtrie B culte m ren-
 dered to the sun
du soleil

**RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon ADJECTIVES,
 COMPARATIVES, and SUPERLATIVES.**

The first wing of the noble and superb edifice of Greenwich
30 aile f 29 — be bâtiment —
 was erected by Charles the Second. The epic poem,
c élevé — 11. épique 31 poème m
 whether it appear in the majestic simplicity of Homer,
soit qu'il paraitre f dans — tueux 31 — té Homère
 or in the finished elegance of Virgil, presents an endless
finie 31 élé— Virgile présenter sans fin 31

variety of grand and beautiful objects, which it is impossible
variété 29 — *beau objet qu'* —
 to contemplate without a perpetual succession of agreeable
de — *pler sans perpétuel* 31 — *agréable* 31
 emotions. It may be said that a magistrate is a
émotions on pouvoir (ir) A * *dire* — *trist*
 speaking law, and the law a dumb magistrate.,
parlant 31 *loi* *muet* 31

The great wall (on the) north of China is about
muraille au nord la Chine 36 *environ*
 fifteen hundred miles long, and the royal canal of that em-
quinze 35 — 31 —
 pire is about eighteen hundred miles long. The walls of
 — *dix-huit* 35 *mur*
 Babylon were two hundred feet high, and fifty broad.
Babylone B 36 *piéd* 35

The fewer desires, the more peace. The more we
 * *moins* 18 *désir* * 18 *pair* 41 *on*
 abstain from sensual pleasures, the easier we (can do
s'abstenir sensuel 31 *plaisir plus aisément* 42 *pouvoir* A
 without them); and the more we indulge them, the
s'en passer 41 *satisfaire* 48 41
 more (desirous we are) to gratify them. An angry man
on désire * *satisfaire* 48 *en colère* 31
 who suppresses his passion, thinks worse than he speaks;
étouffer — *penser plus mal* 40 *parler*
 an angry man who will chide speaks worse than he
vouloir (ir) A *gronder* 40
 thinks. One of the greatest defects of the Pharsalia, is that
un défaut Pharsale f *cette*
 fury of imagination which Lucan did not know how to
fougue f — *que Lucain savoir (ir)* B * *
 repress, and which made him rather an enthusiast
réprimer en faire (ir) * *plutôt enthousiaste* m
 than a poet
poète

I have no pity on the misery of those who, being young
n' pas pitié de misère f ceux jeune
 and strong, choose rather to beg than to work; but I
fort aimer mieux * *mendier* 40 *de travailler mais j'ai*
 pity the old who cannot get their livelihood.
pitié des vieillards pouvoir (ir) A *gagner* *vie*
 Westminster Abbey, within its walls, is three hundred
 17 *Abbaye f en dedans des mur* 36 *cent*
 and sixty feet long; at the nave it is seventy feet broad,
 * *soixante piéd* 35 *à nef* 36 *soixante-dix* 35
 and at the cross one hundred and ninety. The front
croix * *quatre-vingt-dix façade*

of Somerset House towards the Strand is about one hundred
 17 vers — p 36 environ *
 feet long, and the front towards the principal court is two
 35 vers 31 — cour 36
 hundred feet and more.

The most learned men make sometimes the grossest
 • savant 31 faire (ir) quelquefois grossier 44
 mistakes. Obedience is the surest means of pleasing
 faute f obéissance 44 moyen sing. plaire 139 à
 our superiors.
 supérieur

CHAPTER IV.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.—See p. 17.

THIS chapter is divided into three sections. The first shows when the personal pronouns are conjunctive or disjunctive. The second treats of the pronouns used with reference to animals and things. The third explains the right placing of personal pronouns, &c.

SECTION I.

WHEN THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS ARE CONJUNCTIVE OR DISJUNCTIVE.

RULE 45.—Personal Pronouns in the Nominative.

1. The personal pronouns, *I, thou, he, she, we, you, they*, are usually *conjunctive*, and expressed in French by *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, when they are the subject or the nominative case of a verb. Examples:

I play; thou singest; he dances; we speak;
je joue; tu chantes; il danse; nous parlons.

2. They are *disjunctive*, and expressed by *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles*; first, when divided by a conjunction: as, *lui et moi nous y irons*, not *il et je*, he and I shall go there. Secondly, when they are used in answer to a question: as, *qui a fait cela?* — *moi*, not *je*; who has done that? — *I*. Thirdly, when they come after a comparative: as, *il est plus savant qu'eux*, not *qu'ils*; he is more learned than *they*. Fourthly, when they come before the word *qui* or *seul*: as,

c'est moi qui le dis, not c'est je; it is I who say so: lui seul peut le faire, not il seul; he alone can do it.

1. The eagle has a very piercing eye; he looks at
 aigle m la très-perçant 31 v're regarder *
 the sun without lowering his eye-lids; he inhabits the
 soleil sans 139 baisser les paupière habiter
 cold countries, he builds his nest on the summit of the
 froid 31 pays bâtir nid sur sommet
 highest trees. I am not so learned as your brother, but he
 31 arbre m si savant que frère
 is older than I.—1. You speak too fast.—2. He and your
 âgé trop vite
 brother were of the same opinion.

c même —
 2. They and my brother are come.—2. They alone have
 venir 143 seul
 fought the enemy; and consequently they alone deserve
 combattre (ir) ennemi conséquemment seul mériter
 to be rewarded for that brilliant action which ensures our
 d' récompensés brillant 31 — qui assurer
 victory.—2. Telemachus, speaking of his father Ulysses to
 victoire f Télémaque Ulysse
 the goddess Calypso, said to her: Penelope his wife, and I
 déesse — d're (ir) c 47 Pénélope femme
 who am his son, have lost all hope (of seeing him
 nous perdu 106 espérance de le revoir
 again).

Sir, some one has written a book against you.—Who?
 monsieur * on écrire livre m contre qui
 Scopas.—He? I forgive him; what he writes is read (by
 lui pardonne ce qu' n'est lu de
 no one); he hurts no one but himself. You like the town,
 personne ne nuire * qu'à lui-même ville f
 and I the country.
 campagne f

RULE 46.—Personal Pronouns in the Genitive.

The personal pronouns, of me, of him, of her, of us, of you, of them, are most frequently disjunctive in the genitive case, and expressed by *de moi, de lui, d'elle, de nous, de vous, d'eux* or *d'elles*. Example:

They often speak of me, but I never speak of them.*
 ils parlent souvent de moi, mais je ne parle jamais d'eux.

* They are sometimes expressed by *en*, in answer to a question: as, *parlez-vous de moi?*—oui, j'en parlais; *parlez-vous d'eux?*—oui, j'en parlais, &c.

When one advised Philip to expel from his
comme on conseiller B à Philippe de chasser
 dominions a man who had spoken ill of him; I will take
état B mal 172 se garder
 care not to do it, replied Philip; he would go (every
D. bien de le faire répliquer C aller (ir) E partout
 where), and speak ill of me. In the education of youth,
** dans é— des jeunes gens*
 we ought to instruct them in the religious worship which
*on devoir A * instruire 48 religieux 31 culte m*
 God requires of them. I speak well of you, Damon; you
Dieu demander dire (ir) du bien
 speak ill of me. What a misfortune is ours! Neither
*dire du mal quel * malheur le nôtre on ne nous*
 of us is believed. If you do not behave better, I will
croit ni l'un ni l'autre se conduire mieux
 complain of you to your father.
se plaindre

RULE 47.—Personal Pronouns in the Dative.

1. The personal pronouns, *to me, to thee, to him, to her, to us, to you, to them*, are conjunctive, and expressed in French by *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, before the verb or its auxiliary. Examples:

She speaks to him. She has spoken to them.
elle lui parle. elle leur a parlé.
 as if it were, she to him speaks; she to them has spoken.

2. They are disjunctive, and expressed by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, or à elles*, when several nouns or pronouns in the dative case are governed by the same verb: as, *je parle à vous et à lui*, I speak to you and to him;—when they are governed by a reflected verb: as, *il s'adressa à moi*, he applied to me; *je me fiais à lui*, I trusted to him;—when they are governed by any of the following verbs: *aller*, to go; *courir*, to run; *boire*, to drink; *penser*, to think; and *venir*, to come. Examples:

I think of you. Go to him. He comes to me.
Je pense à vous. Allez à lui. Il vient à moi.

N. B. The pronouns *him* and *her* are expressed by *lui*, and *them* by *leur*, when the preposition *to* can be prefixed to them. They are usually expressed by *le, la, or les*, when it cannot.

1. The forgiveness of our enemies does not consist
*pardon des * ennemi * consister*
 solely, in not hurting them in their reputation or fortune;
seulement à nuire dat. dans ré— 63—

we must besides love them and do *them* good. — 1. A
on devoir A *en outre aimer* 48 *faire* dat. *du bien* *
 good heart is as grateful to *you* (for the) advantages
cœur *sait aussi bon gré* *du bien* *que*
 you wish *him* as (for the) presents *you* make *him*. — 2.
souhaiter dat. 37 *des* *présent que faire* dat. *
 I forgive both *you* and *him*, because I hope you will
pardonner et à *à* *parce que espérer* 83
 behave better (for the future). — 2. When your brother
se conduire mieux *à l'avenir*
 came to us, we were not thinking of *him*. You have be-
venir c *penser* B *à*
 ceived me; I will not trust *you* any more. — 2. The
tromper *ne se fier plus à* * *
 minister is your enemy; if you apply to *him* you never will
—tre *si s'adresser* A 172
 succeed. — 1. A young man who follows the good advice
réussir 4, *jeune* *suivre* (ir) *conseil* pl
 which is given *him*, will be a man of merit.
qu'on * *donne* dat. *mérite*.

RULE 48.—*Personal Pronouns in the Accusative.*

☞ When the personal pronouns, *me, thee, him, her, us, you, them*, are in the accusative, they are usually conjunctive, and expressed by *me, te, se, le, la, nous, vous, les*, before the verb which governs them, or before its auxiliary. Examples:

I see <i>them</i> .	I know <i>you</i> .	He loves <i>us</i> .
<i>je les vois</i>	<i>je vous connais</i>	<i>il nous aime</i>
I have seen <i>them</i> .	I have known <i>you</i> .	He has loved <i>us</i> .
<i>je les ai vus</i>	<i>je vous ai connu</i>	<i>il nous a aimés</i>
as if it were, <i>I them see, I you know, he us loves, &c.</i>		

Observe, that *le, la, les*, are called pronouns before a verb, and articles before a noun.

God is a father to those who love *him*, and a protector
Dieu le de ceux aimer le —teur
 to those who fear *him*. Vice often deceives *us* under the
de craindre 4m 172 *tromper* *sous*
 shape of virtue. If you would get a friend,
masque m *+* *vouloir* (ir) A *avoir* *ami*
 you must prove *him* first, and not be hasty to credit *him*.
il faut éprouver auparavant *prompt à vous fier à*
 A great source of error, is the common practice of
—t *erreur c'est* *commun* 31 *pratique* f *de*
 judging what men will appear in a condition (in, which)
juger de ce que paraître — *où*

we have not seen *them*, from what they appear in another
vous d'après ce que une autre
 (in which) we see *them*.
où voir (ir)

RULE 49. — *Pronouns after a Preposition.*

When the personal pronouns are governed by a preposition, they are always disjunctive, and expressed by *moi, toi, lui, elle; nous, vous, eux, or elles*. Examples:

Do that for *me*. Do not speak against *them*.
faites cela pour moi. ne parlez pas contre eux.
 not, *faites cela pour me; ne parlez pas contre les.*

May these children be to you what they have been
puissent enfant envers ce qu'
 to me! O God! do for *them* what I cannot
envers H ce que pouvoir (ir) A
 myself! repay them thirty years of happiness, which
moi-même rendez-leur trente ans. bonheur
 owe to their tenderness and virtue. Pisistratus said
devoir tendresse 63 vertu —te dire (ir) c
 of a drunken man, who had spoken against him: I am no
ivre 31 B contre
 more angry with him, than if a blind man had run
*fâché contre aveugle * s'était jeté*
 against me. The love of enemies consists in desiring their
amour ennemi consister à leur désirer
 welfare, in praying for them, and in speaking well of
du bien à prier à parler en bien
 them, when occasion requires it.
quand 9 demander le 50

SECTION II.

PRONOUNS USED WITH REFERENCE TO ANIMALS AND THINGS.

Of the Personal Pronouns, it, they, or them.

RULE 50. — *The Pronouns, it, they, them.*

When the pronouns *it* and *they*, which the English use with reference to animals and inanimate objects, are in the nominative case, they are expressed, *it* by *il* or *elle*; and *they*

by *ils* or *elles*. When *it* and *them* are in the accusative, they are expressed, *it* by *le* or *la*, and *them* by *les* before the verb, as the personal pronouns, of which before. Thus, speaking of a house, we say,

It is new; I will not sell *it*; but I will let *it*;
elle est neuve; *je ne la vendrai pas*; *mais je la louerai*.

Observe to make these pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they have reference.

Ambition is a noble passion, but *it* often occasions
9 — — 31 — — *mais souvent* 172 — *sionner*
many mischiefs. Neglect the pleasures of life; the pains
bien des mal négliger 11 *plaisir* 4 *vie* *peine*
which follow *them* prove how vain *they* are.
suivre (ir) *prouver* *combien* —

The pleasures of a temperate man are durable, because *they*
en *tempéré* 31 — — *parce qu'*
are regular; and his life is calm, because *it* is innocent.
régulier *vie* *calme* —

The public approbation is the object which makes us
31 — — *objet* *faire (ir)* 48
undertake heroic actions, and it is by such actions,
entreprendre héroïque 31 7 — *c'est de telles* —
that we deserve *it*. (This is) a fine apple-tree, *it* blossoms
mériter f *voilà* *pommier* *fleurir*

every spring; yet *it* seldom produces any fruit. I
tous les printemps *rarement* 172 *produire aucun* —
will cut *it* down, if *it* yield no apples this year.
abattre (ir) * *donner* 18 *pomme* *année*

RULE 51.—*en*, for *it* or *them*.

1. The pronouns *it* and *them* are expressed by *en* before a verb which governs the genitive case. Examples:

Do not speak of *it*. I remember *it* very well.
n'en parlez pas. *je m'en souviens très-bien*.

2. When the words *some*, *any*, come after a verb, and have reference to a noun antecedent, they are also expressed in French by *en* before the verb. Example:

If he has any pears, he will give you *some*.
s'il a des poires, il vous en donnera.

2. You have bought fine lace; give me *some*; buy *some*,
acheter 8 *dentelle* 11 *m'* 56 *H*
if you will have *any*.—1. What avail riches to a
vouloir (ir) A* *à quoi servent* 4 *richesses*

miser? he does not make any use of *them*.—2. I have
avoir faire (ir) aucun usage
 many oranges, will you have any? I shall be obliged
*plusieurs — vouloir (ir) A 55 * obligé*
 to you, if you will give me some.—1. Life is a gift of
 47 • *vouloir A donner 9 vie don*
 God; to destroy it is a crime.—1. Honour is an inaccessible
*Dieu * disposer en crime 9 honneur .31*
 island: when you have once gone out of it, you cannot
*île f aussitôt que être * sortir * pouvoir (ir)*
 (come into it again).
A y rentrer

RULE 52.—*lui, leur, y, it, them.**

1. When the pronouns *it* and *them* are in the dative case, and have reference to animals, they are expressed by *lui* and *leur*, as the personal pronouns. Example:

Your dog is dry; give it something to drink.
Votre chien a soif; donnez-lui à boire.

2. They are both expressed by *y*, when they refer to inanimate objects. Example:

This picture is very good; put a frame to it.
Ce tableau est très-bon; mettez-y une bordure.

1. Your horses are hungry, give *them* some hay.—
cheval avoir faim donner II dat. 7 foin
2. Before you tell a story, it is proper to give the
*avant de * conter histoire à propos de donner dat.*
 company a true idea of the persons who are con-
compagnie vrai idée personne f inté-
 cerned in it. When truth appears in all its brightness,
ressé dat. 4 vérité paraître éclat
 nobody can resist it. My house is in good air; I
 116 *pouvoir (ir) A résister dat. maison en —*
 am indebted to it (for the) recovery of my health.—2. Pearls
redevable du rétablissement santé 9 perle f
 would not (be worth) (so much) money, if luxury did
valoir (ir) E tant 18 argent luxe m
 not give value to *them*.—2. (How many) people would
donner B 7 prix . combien 18 gens

* When to it or to them are preceded by the verbs to owe or to be indebted, they are always expressed by *lui* or *leur*, even with reference to an inanimate object, and also when they relate to an inanimate object personified.

not be known in society, if gaming did not introduce them
connu 4 jeu —duire B 60
 into it.
 dat.

RULE 53.—*Pronouns it and them left out.*

When the impersonal pronouns *it* and *them* come after a preposition, and have reference to inanimate objects, they are usually left out, and the preposition becomes an adverb. Examples :

Come near the fire : I am quite near it :
Approchez-vous du feu : je suis tout auprès :
 not *je suis tout auprès de lui.*

The falling of the water of the Nile makes (so much)
chute f eau Nil faire (ir) tant 18
 noise that it deafens those who dwell near it. Labour
bruit elle rendre sourd ceux demeurer auprès travail 9
 is fruitless when nature is against it. Do you know where
*inutile 4 — contre * savoir (ir) où est*
 the treasury of London is ?—Yes, Sir, I do; well then,
*trésorerie —dres * où le sais ch-bien*
 you will easily find your way; near it is York-house,
aisément 172 trouver chemin auprès 17
 just by is the Horse-Guards, and (over against) it, is the
tout auprès garde à cheval f vis-à-vis
 royal chapel, where you want to go.
*31 chapelle où vouloir (ir) * aller*

RULE 54.—*Supplying Pronouns, le, la, les.*

One of these three supplying pronouns, *le, la, les*, is usually put in French before the verb *être* used in answer to a question; they are also used every time the words *it* and *so* are or could be expressed in English.

1. *Le*, indeclinable, is always used with reference to adjectives of both genders and numbers, and to any antecedent clause. Examples :

We have been sick, and are so still.
nous avons été malades, et nous le sommes encore.
 Are you satisfied, madam? no, I am not.
êtes-vous contente, madame? non, je ne le suis pas.
 I have not yet bought these books; but I shall do so to-morrow.

Je n'ai pas encore acheté ces livres; mais je le ferai demain.

2. When these supplying pronouns have reference to a substantive, they agree with it in gender and number: thus we use *le* with reference to a noun masculine, *la* to a noun femi-

ning, and *les* to a noun plural, when they particularize individual objects. Examples :

Are you Peter's son ? . Yes, . *sir*, I am.
êtes-vous le fils de Pierre ? Oui, monsieur, je le suis — m
 Are you the daughter of Mr. A ? — Yes, I am.
êtes-vous la fille de Monsieur A ? Oui, je la suis — f
 Are these your horses ? yes, they are.
sont-ce là vos chevaux ? Oui, ce les sont — pi.*

1. I thought that Miss B. was married, but she is
croire (r) B mademoiselle B marié
 not.—My aunts are sick, and I think they will be so for a long
tante malade penser 83
 time.—2. Are you the sisters of Mr. Taylor ? Yes, we are.
temps sœur
 1. Are they learned ? No, they are not.—2. Are you the
savant Non
 brothers of admiral Nelson ? Yes, we are. Are you
l'amiral
 the sister of colonel Jenkinson ? No, sir, I am not.
du —
 —1. Are your brothers learned ? Yes, they are. Are
92 savant 92
 your sisters married ? No, they are not.—Is your mother
marié ? non 92
 sick ? No, she is not.—Is your father rich ? No, he is
malade 92 riche
 not.—2. Is that your house ? Yes, it is. Are these your
est-ce là sont-ce là
 gardens ? No, they are not. Is that your hat ? Yes, it is.
jardin est-ce là chapeau
 Are these your pens ? Yes, they are.—1. Your sisters are
sont-ce là plume f sœur
 happy, and we are not so.—1. They have been rich, but are
heureux elles riche 59
 not so at present.
à présent

* *Ce is used in the answer, before le, la, les, when the question is asked by est-ce là, or sont-ce là. Example : est-ce là votre livre ? oui ce l'est : we also answer by oui or non, without repeating the verb by which the question is asked.*

SECTION III.

THE RIGHT PLACING OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

RULE 55.— *Place of the Pronouns je, tu, il, &c.*

The personal pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, &c.* are placed after the verb, when the sentence is interrogative, and before when it is not. Examples :

I speak ; do you speak ? it rains ; does it rain ?
je parle ; parlez-vous ? il pleut ; pleut-il ?

We often (pass judgment) upon men's actions, according
 172 *juger des — selon*
 to our love or hatred of the persons who have done
 * 63 *haine f pour. personne suites*
 them. Do you learn French ? have you learnt it
 48 *apprendre (ir) 57*
 long ? do you speak it fluently ? Things do not
longtemps couramment 9 chose f
 always strike us in proportion as they are obvious ; (on the)
 172 *frapper 48 à — qu' claire au*
 contrary. some do not strike us at all, because they
contraire quelques-unes 48 du tout parce qu'
 are obvious (in the) highest degree. Is he young ? are they
au haut degré jeune
 rich ? is she handsome ?
riche beau

RULE 56.— *Pronouns after the Verb.*

1. The personal pronouns are put in French as in English, immediately after the verb they are governed by, when it is in the second person singular, or in the first or second person plural of the imperative affirmative, and then instead of *me, te*, we make use of *moi, toi*, for the dative and accusative. Examples :

give it me ; sell it him ; send them some.
donnez-le-moi ; vendez-le-lui ; envoyez-leur-en

2. If, however, there were several imperatives affirmative, the governed pronouns should go, in French, after the first verbs and before the last, if this be joined to the others by a conjunction. Examples :

Sell it me ; or give it me ; take it and eat it.
vendez-moi ; ou me le donnez ; prenez-la et la mangez.

3. If the verb were in the imperative negative, the governed pronouns should go before it, as they go, in all other tenses. Examples :

Do not sell *it* him. Do not give it them.
ne le lui vendez pas. *ne le leur donnez pas.*

1. Answer *me*; write *to him*; forgive *them*; speak *to us*. — 2. Love your enemies, and do *them* good, when you can. — 2. Obey your parents, love and respect *them* (as long as) you live. — 1. Consider, O parents! the importance of your obligations towards your children; it depends on you, (whether or not they will be) useful members of society; teach *them* obedience, and they will bless you; teach *them* modesty, and they will be reserved; teach *them* charity, and they will be loved; teach *them* temperance, and they will enjoy good health. — 3. Do not forgive *him*, but punish *him* directly.

répondre écrire pardonner dat. parler
aimer ennemi faire dat. bien
le pouvoir (tr) A obéir à respecter
tant que vivre D considérer
— — envers enfant
dépendre de qu'ils soient ou non utile
7 — bre 4 société enseigner dat. obéissance
benir 48 inspirer dat. 9 — tie réservé
inspirer dat. — le porter acc.
dat. 4 — jouir d'une santé
pardonner dat punir sur-le-champ

• RULE 57 — Pronouns before the Verb.

☞ The personal pronouns are always put in French before the verb they are governed by, or before its auxiliary, when it is not in the imperative affirmative. Examples :

I know *him*. I have seen *them*. I have spoken to *her*.
je le connais. *je les ai vus.* *je . lui ai parlé.*

The second Brutus would have re-established the Romans in their ancient liberty, if he had found *them* as well disposed as they were in the time of the first.

— — E rétablir Romain
ancien — le B trouver aussi
— se qu'ils 54 D temps.

Jupiter, vexed that Saturn laid snares for *him*, armed against *him*, drove *him* out of his kingdom, and conquered *him*.

*irrité • 14 — e tendre G 7 piège * lui C*
*contre 49 chasser C * royaume m ob-*

strained *him* to quit heaven. Prosperity gets *us*
liger c *de quitter 9 ciel* *9--té faire (ir)*
 friends, and adversity tries *them*. Do you know the
ami 7 *9--té éprouver* *connaître*
 Prince of Wales? I have seen *him* several times, but
 — *Galles* *voir (ir)* *plusieurs fois mais*
 have never spoken to *him*. We flatter ourselves in vain
120 *se flatter ** *en —*
 that we quit our passions, when it is they which quit
quitter — *ce sont elles*
us. I believe *him*. Do you believe *them*? He will not
croire (ir)
 punish *me*. Do you not know *her*?
punir *connaître*

RULE 58.— *Order of the Pronouns before the Verb.*

☞ When a verb which is not in the imperative affirmative governs two or more pronouns, they are always placed immediately before it, or before its auxiliary, in the following order :

Me, te, se, nous, vous,	go before every other.
le, la, les, - - -	go before lui, leur, y, or en.
lui, leur, - - -	go before y or en.
y, - - - - -	goes before en.

N. B. When two pronouns are governed by a verb, that which has reference to persons is put in the dative in French, if the preposition *to* could be prefixed to it in English. Examples :

He gives *it me* ; he gives *it him* ; he gives *it to them*.
il me le donne ; il le lui donne ; il le leur donne.
 He has sold *it to him* ; he has given *me some* this morning.
il le lui a vendu ; il m'en a donné ce matin.
 as if it were, *he to me it gives ; he it to him has sold.*

I dare not tell *it them*. Pray, brother, tell it to my
oser 123 dire (ir) *je vous prie 64* *56*
 mother ; she knows it, I told *it to her* yesterday. If you
savoir (ir) 57 c *l'éc*
 still have your orange, give *it me*. I am sorry
encore 172 *f* *56* *fiché*
 I cannot give *it you* ; but your sister has been a good
*de ne pouvoir **
 girl, and I have given *it her* ; I will give *you some* to-morrow,
filles *f* *51* *demain*
 if your exercise be well done.
thème A

Do not, say to a friend who asks something of
dire (ir) *demande quelque chose m*
 you, Go, and come again to-morrow; I will give it *you*,
aller (ir) *revenir ** *demain*
 when you can give *him* (at the time). The duke of
pouvoir (ir) *sur-le-champ* *duc*
 Bouillon was obliged to give the town of Sedan to
c • obliger • de *ville*
 Henry the Fourth; but this prince, satisfied with his sub-
Henri *II* — *content de sou-*
 mission, gave it *him* back soon. He gives it to me; he has
 — *rendre c* ** bientôt*
 lent it *you*; he has sent *them* to *us*. He gives it *them*; he
prêter *envoyés*
 will lend it to *them*; he has sent *them* to *him*. You have
prêter *envoyés*
 told it *me*; I pray you, (never to speak to *me* any more
dire (ir) *prier* *de ne m'en plus parler*
 about it). Epaminondas refused the presents of Darius,
 — *ser c* *pré—*
 and told those who offered *them* to *him* from that
dire à ceux *offrir B* *de la part de*
 king: If he desires nothing of me but (what is) just, (there
roi *demande 118 * me que de juste il*
 is no occasion) for presents; and if he has other de-
n • faut pas *de* *si* *d'autres des-*
 signs, let him know that he is not rich enough to
seins *savoir (ir) il* *assez riche pour*
 bribe me.
 corrompre 57

WHEN PERSONAL PRONOUNS ARE OR ARE NOT TO BE
 REPEATED.

RULE 59.—Pronouns *je, tu, il, &c.* repeated.

1. The pronouns of the first and second persons, such as, *je, tu, nous, vous*, are usually repeated in French before every verb of which they are the nominative case. Example:

I say, and will always say, that she was in the wrong.
je dis et je dirai toujours qu'elle avait tort.

2. The pronouns of the third person, such as *il* or *elle, ils* or *elles*, need not be repeated, unless the verb be in different tenses, or separated from the preceding by many words, or one be affirmative and the other negative. Examples:

Cæsar conquered provinces, and subdued whole nations.
César conquît des provinces et soumit des nations entières.

They have seen him, but they have not spoken to him.
ils l'ont vu mais ils ne lui ont pas parlé.

I maintain, and will always maintain, that we cannot be
soutenir 172 pouvoir A
happy without practising virtue. * Man rises and un-
sans 139 pratiquer 9 s'élever 4
folds his faculties by degrees; he advances slowly to
ployer —té degré avancer lentement 4
maturity, and afterwards declines gradually, till
—té ensuite décliner graduellement jusqu'à ce qu'
he sinks into the grave. Beware of drunkenness; it
descendre 1 tombeau éviter H * 9 ivrognerie
impairs the understanding, tarnishes reputation, and con-
abrutir entendement ternir ré —
sumes the body. He says so, but he does not believe
—mer corps dire (ir) le croire (ir)
it. We have spoken, and will speak again in your favour.
parler encore en faveur

RULE 60.—*Pronouns me, te, se, &c. repeated.*

The personal pronouns must be repeated in French before every verb they are governed by, though they are not repeated in English. Examples :

I honour and respect him. I say and repeat it.
je l'honore et je le respecte. je le dis et je le répète.
as if it were, I him honour and him respect.

The most beautiful flowers last but a short time,
beau fleur ne durer que * peu 18 temps
the least rain tarnishes them, the wind withers them, the
moudre pluie ternir vent flétrir
sun scorches them; not to mention an infinite num-
soleil brûler pour ne pas parler d'un infini 31 nom-
ber of insects, that spoil and hurt them. A
bre 18 —te gâter les faire du mal leur
passionate temper renders a man unfit for business, de-
31 —né caractère rendre. inapte 4 affaire pl pri-
prives him of his reason, robs him of all that is great
rer raison ôter lui * tout ce qu'il y a de
in his nature, and makes him unfit for society. The Holy
— fait qu'il n'est plus propre société 4
Scriptures teach us what we ought to be; let us
écriture apprendre (ir) ce que devoir A * * *
therefore read them, meditate upon them, and make
par conséquent lire (ir) 11 méditer * faire (ir)
them the rule of our conduct. A well-educated son never
en règle f conduite bien élevé 31 120

rebels against his father; he loves, honours, and
se révolter contre *aimer honorer*
 respects him.
 —ter

RULE 61.—Pronouns, himself, herself, &c.

1. The pronouns, *himself*, *herself*, *themselves*, are expressed, in French, by *se*, with a reflected verb; and, most frequently, by *lui-même*, or *elle-même*, &c. in other cases. Examples:

He is too proud; he does not know *himself*.

il est trop fier; il ne se connaît pas.

He blames in others the faults he commits *himself*.

il blâme dans les autres les fautes qu'il fait lui-même.

2. *Soi* is used for *one's self*, or *himself*, in speaking of persons in general; that is to say, in a vague sense, and without any specification. Example:

One ought not to speak of *one's self*, unless with modesty.

on ne doit parler de soi qu'avec modestie.

2. (Every body) acts for *himself*. — 2. When a man does
chacun agir *quand * on*
 not mind any body but *himself*, he does not deserve to live.
*penser * * qu'à * on mériter de vivre*

1. It is not the part of a courageous man to expose
*il n'est pas * * —geux 31 de —ser*
himself to danger without necessity. — 1. They are easily

— *sans nécessité* *on pardonne aisément*
 pardoned who endeavour to withdraw *themselves* from their
à ceux chercher à retirer

errors. — 2. When a man loves nobody but *himself*, he is
*erreur quand * on n'aime * que on*
 not fit for society. — 2. To excuse in *one's self* the faults

*propre 4 * —ser en faute*
 which one cannot bear in others, is to like
*on ne pouvoir (ir) à souffrir dans les autres c'est * aimer*

better to be foolish *one's self* than to see others so. — 1.
*mieux * fou soi-même 40 de voir tels*

Your brother knows *himself*; he often makes reflections
connaître souvent 172 faire ré—x—7

upon *himself*, and I hope he will soon correct *himself*
sur espérer bientôt 172 corriger

of his bad habits.
mauvais habitude

RULE 62.—*itself expressed by lui or soi.*

The pronoun *itself*, preceded by a preposition, is expressed by *lui-même* or *elle-même*, with reference to an animate object, or even inanimate, considered as a person; but it is usually expressed by *soi* with reference to a pronoun, or to an inanimate object taken in a general sense. Examples:

That is good in *itself*. Vice is odious of *itself*.
cela est bon en soi. le vice est odieux de soi.

The remedy which you propose is harmless of *itself*.
remède m proposer innocent en
 Men often reject truth, though evident in *itself*,
souvent 172 rejeter vérité quoique é—
 because the sight (of it) displeases them. Self-love
parce que vue en 58 déplaire leur 58 amour propre
 directs (every thing) to *itself*. Virtue is amiable of *itself*.
diriger tout aimable en
 Whatever is good in *itself*, is not always approved. The
tout ce qui bon toujours approuver
 palm-tree incessantly rises of *itself*, whatever efforts
palmer sans cesse 173 se relever quelques effort
 are made to depress it.
qu'on fasse pour courber 48

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the „PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

To forget one's birth by doing bad actions, or
** oublier sa naissance 142 8 mauvais —*
 to remember it only (out of) vanity, is to dishonour
*se souvenir en 58 seulement par c'est * déshonorer*
 it equally. God requires your heart; you cannot
la 48 également demander cœur ne pouvoir (ir) A
 refuse it him. A flatterer has not a good opinion of himself
*—ser 58 flatteur * — 61*
 nor of others. A gross mistake is not only that
ni des autres grossier 31 faute f seulement celle
 which every reader perceives, but it is moreover that
79 tout lecteur apercevoir c'est encore celle
 which we find gross, after another has made us per-
79 trouver après qu'un autre faire 58 aper-
 ceive it. If you have promised any thing to an
cevoir 58 promettre (ir) quelque chose

enemy, you ought not to break the promise you have
*ennemi devoir A * manquer à promesse 83*
 made him.
faite 47

We confess small failings, only to persuade others
n'avouer 8 petit défaut que pour —der aux autres
 that we have no great ones. There is no age
*nous n'en avons 18 * il n'y a point 18 siècle*
 or condition but can reap great benefits
n 21 — qu ne pouvoir (ir) F recueillir 8 avantage
 from history; when properly taught, it proves a
histoire elle est bien enseignée elle devenir
 school of morality for all men; cries down vices,
*école f morale pour tous les 59 décrier * 9*
 unmasks false virtues, dispels vulgar errors, and
démasquer fausses 31 . dissiper vulgaire 31 erreur
 demonstrates, by a thousand instances, that there is nothing
*prouver * exemple qu'il n'y a rien de*
 great but honour and probity. You will find it impos-
*que honneur 4 —te trouver * —*
 sible, said Mentor to the king of Salentum, to bring
dire (ir) c Salente de ramener
 men back to the principles of virtue, after you have
*9 * —pe la après que D*
 taught them to despise it.
appris leur 47 à mépriser 48

You have promised me a watch; when will you give
promis 57 montre f quand donner
 it me? If we did not flatter ourselves, flattery would not
58 se flatter B nous-mêmes —rie
 (be hurtful) to us. The law of nature forbids us to hurt
nuire E 47 loi — défend de nuire à
 (any body). I have bought some new pamphlets; I
personne acheter S nouveau —
 will send them to you, if you will return
envoyer (ir) 58 vouloir (ir) A rendre
 them to me next week. You have many
58 la prochaine 31 semaine beaucoup 18
 oranges; pray give me some. The merit of our
— je vous prie de 51 . mérite m .
 actions comes from the motives which produce them, and
venir motif —duire 48
 from their conformity to the laws of God.
—té loi

Posterity renders to men of merit the justice which
9 —térité rendre 2 mérite — 79

their contemporaries often refuse them. Lend me your
 —rai 172 —ser leur 47 prêter 56
 grammar; I will return it to you to-morrow; if you
 —maire f rendre 58 demain
 refuse it me, I cannot do my exercise, nor learn
 —ser 58 ne pouvoir (ir) A thème apprendre
 my lesson; because I have lost mine. I tell you the
 leçon parce que perdre la mienne 57
 truth, and you will not believe me. Do you know
 vouloir (ir) A croire 57 connaître
 the Princess of Wales? I have seen her, and had the ho-
 —cesse Galles vuc 57 j'ai eu
 nour to speak to her several times. You said you
 de 47 plusieurs fois dire (ir) B que
 would give me a watch when I could
 donner E me 57 montre f pouvoir (ir) E
 write French; my exercise is without fault; when will you
 écrire en sans faute quand
 give it me? Have patience; you shall have it soon.
 38 H — bientôt

CHAPTER V.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.—See p. 19.

RULE 63.—*Possessive Pronouns are repeated.*

1. The possessive pronouns *mon, ma, mes, &c.* are repeated in French before every substantive, and agree with each in gender and number. Example:

My father, mother, and sisters are in the country.
mon père, ma mère, et mes sœurs sont à la campagne.
not, mon père, mère, et sœurs sont à la campagne.

2. We use the pronouns masculine *mon, ton, son*, before a noun feminine, when it begins with a vowel or an *h* mute; thus we say, *mon âme*, f. *son honnêteté*, f. not *ma âme*, *sa honnêteté*, which would have a bad sound.

3. The possessive pronouns *son, sa, ses*, do not refer to the gender of the noun antecedent, like the English *his, her, its*; but agree in gender with the noun they are joined to: thus we say, speaking of a woman,

Her son is learned;
son fils est savant;

her brother is young;
son frère est jeune

and of a man,

His mother is old ;

sa mère est âgée .

his sister is married ;

sa sœur est mariée.

1. Such are men ; *their* ingratitude is often the price of
tels 4 — prix
 our favours.—2. A good king does not (so much) consult
bienfait tant 172 —
 his own dignity and elevation, as the advantage and
propre —lé élé— 37 avantage
 happiness of *his* subjects.—1. The laborious man shuts
bonheur sujet laborieux 31 bannir
 out idleness from *his* house ; he considers it as *his*
** 9 paresse maison —dérer 57*
 greatest enemy ; he (rises up) early, he exercises *his*
ennemie f se lever de bon matin —cer
 mind with contemplation, and *his* body with labour :
esprit dans 4 — corps en travaillant
 the slothful man, (on the) contrary, is a burden to him-
*paresseur * au contraire à charge 61*
 self ; *his* body is diseased for want of exercise, *his* mind is
*corps malade * faute —ce esprit*
 in darkness, *his* thoughts are confused, *his* house is in
dans 4 ténèbres pl pensée —se maison en
 disorder, he deplores *his* fate, but he has no resolution
désordre m déplorer sort mais le courage
 to remedy it. —3. *His* mother is dead ; *her* father is
d'y apporter remède mère mort père
 dead ; *his* wife is handsome, *her* husband is young.—2.
femme beau mari jeune
His ambition is great ; *her* soul is elevated ; *my* history is
— âme f élevé histoire
 short.—*His* shame is great.—2. *Her* hope is ill-grounded.
court honte f espérance mal fondé

RULE 64.—*Possessive Pronouns used in French and not in English.*

☞ When we speak to our relations or friends, we use the possessive pronouns *mon, ma, mes*, before the words *père, mère, frère, sœur, &c.* Example :

• Where are you, daughter ? here I am, mother.

Où êtes-vous, ma fille ? me voici, ma mère.

These pronouns are left out in English.

(At last) the girl being come near the house, mother,
enfin fille venue près de mère

mother, cried she, (come out), mother, come out, (here is)
s'écrier C sortir H voici
 a gentleman who has brought us a letter from my father :
monsieur apporter 57 lettre père
 at that summons (out came the mother); (what is the
appel la mère sortit qu'avez-
 matter), child? said she, seeing her daughter with a
vous , enfant C en voir (ir) fille
 messenger, &c. Lend me your knife, brother. I can-
messager prêter H 56 couteau ne sa-
 not, sister, I want it. Where are you, daughter?
voir (ir) E j'en ai besoin où fille
 (Here I am), father. Come, friends, let us fly to glory.
me voici allons voler H 4 gloire

RULE 65.—Monsieur, &c. before *votre* or *vos*.

We prefix in French the qualifications of *monsieur*, *madame*, *mademoiselle*, &c. to the possessive pronouns *votre* or *vos*, when we speak to persons of their relations or friends, unless they are our inferiors or intimate friends. These qualifications are not used in English. Examples :

How does your mother do ?

comment se porte Madame votre mère?

Is your cousin in town ?

Monsieur votre cousin est-il en ville ?

I have invited your sisters and your cousin to dine with

—ter

cousine f à dîner

us, I hope they will come. Is your father at home ?

espérer 83

venir

92

la maison

How does your wife do ? Do your sisters learn

se porter

*épouse **

92

apprendre (ir)

geography ? Is your brother in France ? Is your aunt

géographie 92

180

tante

well ? Is not your mother returned from the country ?

bien 92

revenue

campagne f

I saw yesterday your father and mother, but I did not see

voir (ir) c hier

c

your sister ; is she sick ?

malade

RULE 66.—Possessive Pronouns by the Personal.

When the possessive pronouns are joined to a verb which denotes an action over any part of the body, they are rendered in French by the personal pronouns : thus, *my* is expressed by *me* ; *his* or *her* by *se* or *lui* ; *our* by *nous* ; *your* by

rons; and *their* by *se* or *leur*, before the verb; the definite article (*le, la, les*) is put in the same place in which the possessive pronouns are in English. Examples:

He has cut *his* hand; you have cut *his* hand.

Il s'est coupé la main; vous lui avez coupé la main.

as if it were, he to himself has cut the hand; you to him have cut the hand; and so on for others.

When the possessive pronoun in English refers to the person performing the action, in French the verb becomes reflected with *se* in the dative case.

My brother died last year in Germany; it was I
mourir (ir) c l'an passé en Allemagne c 45
who closed *his* eyes. I will pare *your* nails, if you
fermer c yeux rogner ongles
will cut *my* hair. My brother broke *his* leg
vouloir A couper chercher pl • casser c jambe f
yesterday morning. Our carriage ran unfortunately
matin voiture passer c malheureusement
over *his* body, broke *his* leg, and bruised *his* left
sur corps c meurtrir c gauche 31
shoulder. Do not speak so loud, you split *my* head. If you
épaule f il si haut fendre tête f
do not take care, you will cut *your* fingers. A
prendre (ir) A garde couper doigt
cannon ball (shot off) *my* arm. Do not tread upon
boulet de canon emporter c bras marcher H sur
my foot. Wash *your* hands. Warm *your* feet.
pied laver H main chauffer il

RULE 67.—Possessive Pronouns left out.

1. When the verb does not express an action, as before, the possessive pronouns, *my, his, her, &c.* which come before the words *hand, leg, head, or any other part of the body*, are usually left out in French, and the definite article (*le, la, les*) is used instead of them. Example:

I have a pain in *my* leg, in *my* hand, in *my* eyes.

j'ai mal à la jambe, à la main, aux yeux.

2. If, however, there were an equivocation to be feared, that is to say, if the sentence did not sufficiently explain whose *leg, feet, or arm, &c.* we are speaking of, the possessive pronouns should be used in French as in English. Example:

I see that *my* leg swells.

je vois que ma jambe enfle.

1. In the last battle our general lost his leg, my
dernière bataille f perdre c
 brother was wounded in his shoulder, and I, who stood
c blesser à épau 45 être B
 by him, had my thigh (taken off).—He (tells a false-
auprès de lui f c cuisse f emportée mentir
 hood) as often as he opens his mouth.—2. I see that my
toutes les fois que ouvrir bouche f voir (ir)
 arm swells.—2. Do you think my foot will ever (be cured)?
*bras enfler croire 83 pied * 172 guérir r*
 —1. It (would be better) for a man of probity to lose his
*valoir (ir) E mieux —té * perdre*
 life than his honour by a criminal action.—1. Cæsar had a
vie honneur criminel 31 — César B la
 bald head, but he covered this defect with a crown of
chaue 3 tête f cacher u défaut couronne
 laurels.
laurier sing.

RULE 68.—Its expressed by *son* or *en*.

When the possessive pronouns *its* and *their* relate to inanimate things, they are expressed by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leur*, or *leurs*.—1. When they relate to the nominative of the preceding verb as personified. 2. When they are in the genitive or dative, or are preceded by any preposition whatever. 3. When, being in the nominative, they are joined to a substantive qualified by an adjective, or specified by some other words. 4. When, being in the nominative, the next verb is or may be followed by the preposition *de*. Example :

1. London has *its* beauties.
Londres a ses beautés.
2. I admire the size of *its* streets.
j'admire la grandeur de ses rues.
3. *Its* regular buildings please at the first sight.
ses bâtimens réguliers plaisent au premier coup-d'œil.
4. *Its* ships bring the riches of all countries.
ses vaisseaux apportent les richesses de tous les pays
Its trade produces immense resources.
son commerce produit d'immenses ressources.

5. On any other occasion, *its* and *their* are expressed by *en* before the verb, and the articles *le*, *la*, *les*, before the substantive. So we should say, still speaking of London :

Its situation is very convenient.
la situation en est très-convenue

Its squares appear to me beautiful.
les places m'en paraissent superbes.
I particularly admire its rich warehouses.
J'en admire surtout les riches magasins.

5. This illness is dangerous, I know *its* origin and effects.
maladie — reux connaître origine effet
 — 2. Jealousy has love for *its* father, and fear for *its*
jealousie amour crainte f
 mother. — 5. (This is) a fine tree, *its* fruit is delicious. —
voici arbre m — pl délicieux
 1. Nobles, remember that an illustrious birth receives
— se ressouvenir H — tre 31 naissance
 from virtue *its* most shining lustre. — 2. Flattery has great
beau lustre m — rie une
 sweetness in *its* voice; it is difficult not to listen to it.
douceur voir — cile de n'y pas prêter l'oreille
 — 5. This water is not good for you, I know all *its* qualities,
eau connaître — té
 and I would never recommend it in such cases. — 1. Every
120 recommander en pareil cas chaque
 science has *its* principles.
— — pe

5. Paris is a fine city; but *its* streets are too narrow, and
ville mais rue f trop étroit
its houses too high. — 1. War has *its* theory like other
maison haut — guerre théorie comme
 sciences. — 5. To paint the passions with accuracy, it is
— pour peindre passion vérité
 necessary to have studied the heart of man, and to know
nécessaire 135 étudier cœur connaître
 all *its* springs.
ressort

RULE 69. — Mine, expressed by *le mien*, &c.

The pronouns *mine*, *thine*, *his*, *hers*, &c. always take in French the definitive article *le*, *la*, *les*, before them, and agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they have reference. Example :

Your garden is larger than *mine*, but my house is
votre jardin est plus grand que le mien, mais ma maison est
 larger than *yours*.
plus grande que la vôtre.

Your book is better than *mine*, but my gloves
valoir (ir) mieux mais gant

are better than *yours*. His action is blamable, *yours* (on the)
 — *blâmable* au
 contrary, is praiseworthy. I have learnt my lesson,
contraire digne de louange apprendre (ir) leçon
 but my sister has not learnt *hers*. Your country is larger
 — *plus grand*
 • than *ours*, however our king is more powerful than *yours*
cependant • *roi* *puissant*
 Is that your book? Yes, it is *mine*. Is that your house?
est-ce là *ce* *est-ce là*
 No, it is not *ours*

RULE 70.—*Mine, expressed by mes, &c.*

☞ When the disjunctive pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers, &c.* preceded by the preposition *of*, are placed after a substantive to which they relate, they are expressed in French by *mes, tes, ses, &c.* before the substantive, which is put in the plural. Examples :

A friend of *mine* ; a book of *yours*, &c.
un *de mes* amis ; un *de vos* livres.

as if it were, one of my friends, one of your books ; and so on for all other sentences of the same kind.

I have found a book of *yours* among mine. A book of *mine*,
trouver *parmi* 69
you say, show it me; no, it is not mine, I am sure,
dites-vous montrer H 56 *71 en sûr*
because I have sold it. Do you know that gentleman?
parce que *vendre* *connaître* *monsieur*
yes, madam, he is a relation of *mine*. A friend of *ours*
madame ce *parent* *ami*
came yesterday to see us, who spoke to us about you.
*venir c hier * voir* *parler* 57 *de*
(This is) a trick of *yours*. I think that it is yet some
voula tour *croire (ir)* *c'est encore quelqu'une*
contrivance of *his* own. I have been witness to several ma-
invention *** *témoin c : plusieurs*
chinations of *yours*. * If you see any friend of *mine*, do
— *voir (ir)* *quelqu'un*
not forget to mention my return.
oublier H de parler de *retour*

RULE 71.—Mine, expressed by à moi.

✎ When the disjunctive pronouns come after the verb *to be*, signifying *to belong*, they are expressed :

<i>mine</i> by à moi	<i>ours</i> by à nous
<i>thine</i> by à toi	<i>yours</i> by à vous
<i>his</i> by à lui	<i>theirs</i> by à eux m
<i>hers</i> by à elle	<i>theirs</i> by à elles f.

Examples :

This book is *mine* ; that house is *ours* ;
ce livre est à moi ; cette maison est à nous.

When the verb *to be* signifies *to belong*, the substantive which comes after it is put in the genitive case in English, and in the dative in French. Example :

This horse is *my father's*, and that, *my brother's*.
ce cheval-ci est à mon père, et celui-là, à mon frère.

Is that your house ? No, it is not *mine*, I have sold it. I
est-ce là maison vendue
thought it was *yours*.—Whose horse is this?—*Mine*.
croire (ir) B à qui est ce cheval-ci
And that?—*My father's*. Whose gardens are these?—*Mine*.
celui-là à qui sont ces jardins

Take up) . that watch and carry it to your brother. I
ndre (ir) H montre f porter 56
think it is *his*. No, certainly, it is not *his*, he has
croire (ir) qu' certainement
no watch. Whose is it then ? I do not know, unless
18 à qui donc savoir (ir) à moins que
it be my *uncle's*, who was here yesterday evening.
ne f tante B ici hier au soir

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

As a lame person^a would in vain praise the
de même qu'un boîteur en vain 172 louer
beauty of his legs, since he cannot (make use of them)
jambe f puisque pouvoir (ir) se servir en 58
without showing that they are bad ; so, a fool would in
sans 139 montrer mauvais ainsi sot

130 EXERCISE UPON THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

vain boast of his learning, since he cannot speak without
se vanter scienoe puisque parler sans 139
 showing his extravagance.

63 —

The depravity of human nature is so great, that we
dépravation humain 31 — f " si
 oftener please with our failings, than with our good
souvent 172 *par défaut par*
 qualities. It is a great comfort to have a friend to
—té c'est consolation qu' d' au
 whom you may communicate your thoughts, and who
81 pouvoir (ir) r —quer pensée
 participates in your pleasures and pains.
*partager r * 63 plaisir peine*

Cæsar, determined to pass over into Britain,
*étant déterminé passer * en Bretagne*
 despatched Volsenius, a lieutenant of his, to cruise on the
*envoyer c —é— — 70 * croiser sur*
 coast of that island.
côte f île f

If you will lend me your horse to-day, I will
vouloir (ir) prêter 47 aujourd'hui
 lend you mine, when you want it. England
prête 69 *aurez besoin en 57 Angleterre 5*
 was (at first) called Albion, signifying rich and happy,
c d'abord appeler — qui signifie heur
 in regard to its fertility, temperature, and riches.
par rapport 68 —té 63 — richesse

Sir, here is one of your books among mine. A book of
voici livre parmi 69 livre
 mine, you say, let me see it; no, it is not mine, it is
70 dites-vous montrez-le-moi non 71
 my brother's. You hurt my arm. The dog has bit
frère 71 blesser 66 bras chien mordre
 my leg. You will cut your finger. Every language
66 jambe f couper 66 doigt chaque langue
 has its peculiar phrases and beauties. Hercules made
68 particulier 31 — f —té — faire (ir) c
 a present to Philoctetes, his companion and friend, of his
** — — êtes * 63 —gnon*
 arrows, dyed in the blood of the Hydra. Men often reap
flèche f teindre sang Hydre 172 tirer
 more fruit from their errors, than from their most glorious
18 erreur 44 glorieux 31
 actions.

CHAPTER VI.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.—See p. 20.

RULE 72.—*Ce, cette, ces.*

The demonstrative pronouns *this* and *that* are expressed by *ce* or *cet* before a noun masculine, and by *cette* before a noun feminine; *these* and *those* are both expressed by *ces*, before a noun plural of both genders. Examples:

This carpet; *that* tree; *that* house; *these* books, &c.
ce tapis; *cet arbre*; *cette maison*; *ces livres*, &c.

N. B. *Ce* is used before a noun masculine when it begins with a consonant, and *cet* when it begins with a vowel or an *h* mute.

2. The demonstrative pronouns are repeated in French before every substantive, though they are not in English. Example:

I speak to *that* man and woman.
Je parle à cet homme et à cette femme.

This picture is fine. *That* man is learned. *These* oranges
tableau *savant* — f
are not ripe. *This* cake is for you; *that* bird is mine; *these*
mâ *gâteau* *oiseau* 71
houses are new. If you do not alter your conduct, and
neuf *changer de * conduite et si*
(make amends for) your former injustice, *this* widow
59 *ne réparer premier* — f *veuve*
whom you have oppressed, *this* poor woman whom you have
79 *opprimée pauvre*
forsaken, *these* unfortunate beings whom you have despised,
*abandonnée malheureux * méprisés*
will accuse you (in the) day of judgment. *That* woman is
accuser 57 *au du jugement*
whimsical, she changes her resolution every day.
*capricieux —ger de * ré— tous les jours*

RULE 73.—*ceci, cela.*

The demonstrative pronouns are expressed, *this* by *ceci*, and *that* by *cela*, when they are used to point out some object without naming it. Example:

This is for me, and *that* for you.
ceci est pour moi, et cela est pour vous.

Do not do *that*, I will do it myself. If you refuse me *that*,
 you will repent it? *This* is good, *that* is bad; *this* is for
 me, and *that* for you. Why did you do *that*? You
 should not speak of *that* before (any body). *That* is good to
 eat. You are very curious; you always ask why *this*
 and why *that*.

RULE 74.—*ce qui, ce que.*

1. The pronouns *that which*, and *what*, signifying *that thing which*, are usually expressed by *ce qui* for the nominative case, *ce dont* for the genitive, *ce à quoi* for the dative, and *ce que* for the accusative. Example:

What gratifies the senses, softens the heart.
ce qui flatte les sens, amolli le cœur.

2. When *ce qui* or *ce que* begin a sentence of two parts, *ce* is usually repeated before the auxiliary *être*, if it be followed by a pronoun, a verb, or a substantive; but not if it be followed by an adjective without any substantive. Examples:

What renders men miserable is cupidity.
ce qui rend les hommes misérables, c'est la cupidité.

What you say is true.
ce que vous dites est vrai — not c'est vrai.

1. Consider, O man! *what* the law of God commands,
 and *what* society requires of you.—2. *What* I ask from
 you, is a reciprocal friendship, as it existed between
 your father and mine.—1. Tragedy excites terror: it is
that which renders it tragical: the epic poem excites ad-
 miration; it is *that which* renders it heroical.

1. Education is to the mind *what* cleanliness is to the
 body.—2. *What* I fear most is treason.—1. I know
 and why *that*.

what you speak of. What you expected has not taken
 place.—2. What you fear is to be discovered.—1. What
 shines outwardly, is sometimes far from being substantial
 inwardly.—1. What costs little, is too dear, when it is of no
 use.
usage

RULE 75.—*celui-ci, celui-là, &c.*

When the demonstrative pronouns refer to several substantives antecedent, they are expressed, *this*, by *celui-ci* or *celle-ci*; *these*, by *ceux-ci* or *celles-ci*; *that*, by *celui-là* or *celle-là*; *those*, by *ceux-là* or *celles-là*. *Celui-ci, &c.* mark the nearest object; *celui-là, &c.* the most distant. Example:.

There are two snuff-boxes: this is a gold one, that is only gilt.
Voilà deux tabatières: celle-ci est d'or, celle-là n'est que dorée.

The state of the brute is very different from that of man:
état — f très-différent 76 4
that is clothed and armed by nature; *this* is not; *that*
vêtu armé 4 — ne l'est pas
 soon attains its vigour and perfection, *this* continues
bientôt 172 arriver à 63 vigueur — rester
 long in infancy. Which of these houses do you advise
longtemps l'enfance laquelle conseiller
 me to buy? *This* will cost me six hundred pounds, and
57 d'acheter coûter 57 livre sterling
that seven. I do not like either of them; if, however,
aimer ni l'une ni l'autre cependant
 you take one, I would advise you to buy *this*
en prendre (ir) à une conseiller 57 d'
 rather than *that*.
plutôt

RULE 76.—*celui, celle, that.*

When the demonstrative pronouns are followed by a noun in the genitive case, or by a relative pronoun, they are always expressed, *that* by *celui* or *celle*, and *those* by *ceux* or *celles*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which they have reference. Examples:

He has changed his own name for *that* of his cousin.
Il a changé son nom, et pris celui de son cousin.

131 EXERCISE UPON THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

These books are better than *those* which I have sold.

Ces livres valent mieux que ceux que j'ai vendus.

The system of Copernicus, which asserts that the earth
système Copernic 14 assurer que terre
turns round the sun, is more probable than *that* of Ptolemy,
tourner autour du soleil — Ptolémée

who is of a contrary opinion. The sight of the mind is more

contraire 31 — vue f esprit
extensive than *that* of the body. The goods of fortune are

étendu corps bien 4 — f

not to be compared with *those* of the mind. The disorders

comparables à maladie

of the mind are more dangerous than *those* of the body. The

—reux
term of life is short; *that* of beauty still more so.

temps 4 vie court 4 encore davantage 54

Eternal happiness is infinitely superior to *that* which a man
31 éternel bonheur —ment au-dessus de

can possess in this world. The injuries which we re-

pouvoir posséder monde m outrage 79

ceive from a man in a passion, are not so great as *those* which

en * colère si 37

the same man commits in cool blood.

commettre (ir) de sang-froid

Al! men hate *those* who are unmindful of a benefit.

haïr ne sont pas reconnaissant bienfait

We ought to encourage *those* who apply themselves

devoir à * —rager s'appliquer 61

to arts and sciences. This play will do you more honour

4 — — comédie 57 plus 18 honneur

than all *those* you have composed before.

83 faites auparavant

RULE 77.—*celui qui*, he who.

☞ When the personal pronouns are the antecedents of *who*,
that, or *which*, they are expressed in French, *he who*, by *celui*
qui; *she who*, by *celle qui*, *they who*, by *ceux qui*, m. and by
celles qui, f. Example:

They who despise learning know not the value of it.

Ceux qui méprisent les sciences n'en connaissent pas le prix.

He who cannot keep a secret is incapable of governing.

ne pouvoir garder — — 139 gouverner

Nobody is more speedily oppressed, than *he who*

personne ne promptement opprimer

fears nothing; because security is often the beginning⁴
craindre 118 4 *sécurité* commencement
of calamity. *They who* are not satisfied with what they
malheurs pl *content* de 74
possess at present, will probably never be pleased with what
posséder à présent 172 120 le 54 de 74
they may possess in future. *He who* never was acquainted
pouvoir à l'avenir 120 a éprouvé
with adversity, says Seneca, has seen the world but on one
* 9 — *—t'é* *Sénèque n'a vu* que d'
side, and is ignorant of half the scenes of nature. *They who*
côté * *il ignore* * *la moitié des* — 4
overcome their passions, conquer their greatest enemies.
surmonter — *terrasser* ennemi.

RULE 78.—*celui* and *qu'* must be joined.

☞ When the relative pronouns *who*, *that*, or *which*, are separated in English from their antecedents, *he*, *she*, or *they*, they must be joined in French, and then the second part of the sentence is put the first. Example:

He is contemptible, *who* supports idleness*.
Celui qui encourage la paresse, est méprisable.
not, celui est méprisable, qui encourage la paresse.

They do not know the human heart, *who* trust to the
77 connaître humain 31 cœur se fier
vain promises of men. *They* do not always succeed, *who*
promesse 172 réussir
take their measures best. *He* is happy *who*
prendre (ir) mesure le mieux 172 heureux
wants nothing. *They* are unworthy the glory of heaven,
ne manque de rien indigne de gloire ciel
who give themselves up to the pleasures of this world. *They*
se livrer 61 * plaisir monde m
are happy *who* content themselves with little.
se contenter 61 de peu

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

We cannot sufficiently esteem those judges, *who*
98 *ne pouvoir (ir)* assez estimer juge

* *Turn*, he who supports idleness is contemptible; and so on, for all other sentences of the same kind.

always directed by equity, never do any thing* through
toujours dirigés 4 *équité* 120 *faire* * *rien* *par*
 favour or solicitations. We naturally expect from
faveur 21 *souli—* — *rellement* 172 *attendre*
 others what we have done to them before. They who
autres 74 *faire* 47 *aspirant* 77
 oppress the poor to increase their riches, shall be
opprimer le pauvre pl pour augmenter *richesse pl*
 punished by God.
punis de

A philosopher shuns both riches and dignities: he
—phe éviter * *richesse* 9 10 *—té*
 fears these, and despises the former. They (are
craindre 75 *mépriser celles-là* 78 *se*
 mistaken) who think that kings are the happiest of all
tromper croire (ir) roi 9
 men. Cyrus began the Persian monarchy, and Ninus
commencer c de Perse 17 *—che* —
 that of Assyria. Alexander, though ambitious, was sensible
 76 *—rie* *—dre quoique* *—tieux* B *persuadé*
 that he who coveted nothing was more happy than he who
 77 *désirer* A 118 A 77
 aimed at the possession of the whole world.
aspirer A à — *entier* 31 *monde* m

Cæsar said after the battle of Pharsalia, he is
César dire (ir) c *bataille* — *sala* 78
 a great general, who can expose himself like a
pouvoir (ir) — *ser se* 61 *comme*
 private soldier, during the battle; but he is still greater
simple soldat pendant *mais* 78 *encore*
 who can rejoice like a private man after the victory.
se réjouir comme simple particulier après *victoire*
 Wisdom (is content) with what is present, and expects
le sage se contenter de 74 *pré—* *attendre*
 patiently what is to come. Those who speak without
patiemment 74 *à venir* 77 *sans*
 reflection, are liable to say many (foolish things).
réflexion exposé à bien 18 *sottise* f

Virtue is nothing else but an entire conformity to the
 9 *n'est autre chose qu'* *entier* 31 *—té*
 eternal rule of things; Vice is the infringement of that
eternel 31 *règle* f ‡ 9—r *infraction*
 rule: this causes the misery of men, that makes them
 75 *faire (ir)* * *malheur* ‡ 75 *rendre* 57
 happy; let us, therefore, love that, and detest this.
 * *donc* 172 H 75 *avoir* H *en horreur*

He is truly a good man, who has a natural abhorrence
 78 *vraiment* * *homme de bien* 31 — *rel horreur*
 of vice and love for virtue.
 † — *m l'amour de* ‡

CHAPTER VII.

OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.—See p. 21.

RULE 79.—*qui, que, who, &c.*

1. The relative pronouns *who, that, and which* are expressed by *qui*, when they are in the nominative case; *whom, that, and which* are expressed by *que* when they are in the accusative. Examples:

The man *who* speaks; the book *which* is on the table.

l'homme qui parle; le livre qui est sur la table.

The woman *whom* I see; the watch *which* I have.

la femme que je vois; la montre que j'ai.

Cicero was one of those *who* were sacrificed to the
Cicéron c c sacrifier
 vengeance of the triumvirs. The woman *whom* God formed

— — — — — *former c*
 with one of Adam's ribs was the cause of his sin. The
d' une 17 côte c — péché
 books *which* you read are good, but difficult to (be
livre m lire (ir) difficile à

understood). Synonymous terms are words *which* signify
comprendre 9 — me 31 terme • mot 7 — fier

the same thing. Marcus Aurelius used to say, that he
même chose f Marc-Aurèle avoir B coutume de dire

would not part with what he had learned for all the
*vouloir (ir) E donner * 74. B apprendre (ir)*

gold (in the) world; and that he had more glory from
or du monde • tirer B plus 18 de

what he had read of written, than from all the king-
74 B lire (ir) écrire que

doms he had conquered. Titus spent eighty millions
83 B • conquérir (ir) • dépenser c —

in the public games *which* he once gave to the Roman
31 jeux une fois 172 donner c 31

people.

RULE 80. — *dont, de qui, duquel.*

1. The relative pronouns *whose, of whom, or of which*, are usually expressed in French by *dont* for all sorts of objects. Examples :

I know the man *of whom* your brother complains.
je connais l'homme dont votre frère se plaint.
 I have seen the house *of which* you speak.
j'ai vu la maison dont vous parlez.

2. If the pronouns *whose, of whom, and of which* were joined to a noun preceded by any preposition, we should use *de qui* instead of *dont*, with reference to persons; and *duquel, de laquelle, desquels, or desquelles* with reference to animals and things, and they must be placed after the substantive governed by the preposition. Examples :

He is a man to *whose* discretion I dare not trust.
c'est un homme à la discrétion de qui je n'ose me fier.
 Providence, without the assistance *of which* we cannot succeed.
la providence, sans le secours de laquelle nous ne pouvons réussir.

1. All the advantages *which* we enjoy on earth come from God.—1. The same pride which makes us blame faults from *which* we think ourselves free, induces us to condemn the good qualities which we have not.—2. Many affect to condemn those honours (with the) desire *of which* they are inflamed.—1. The young man *of whom* I have spoken to you, deserves (to be) encouraged.—2. Alexander, to *whose* courage they give (so many) praises, died at thirty-three years of age.—1. The clemency *of which* men make a virtue is often practised (out of) vanity.—2. The daughter of Minos gave a thread to Theseus, by means *of which* he (went out) of the labyrinth.

avantage dont jouir sur 4 terre venir
orgueil 79 faire 48 blâmer
croire (ir) nous 48 exempt porter 48 à
condamner —té 79 plusieurs
affecter de mépriser les honneur du désir
enflammé homme
parler 47 mériter d'être encourager Alexandre
— 98 donner tant 18 louange mourir c à
âge de trente-trois ans clemence
faire pratiqué par
filles — donner c fil Thésée au moyen
sortir c —the m

RULE 81.—*qui*, or *lequel*, &c.

☞ When the relative pronouns *whom* or *which* are in the dative, or after a preposition, they are usually expressed by *qui*, in speaking of persons, and always by *lequel* or *laquelle*, *lesquels* or *lesquelles*, in speaking of animals and things. Examples :

The man *to whom* I write is very learned.

L'homme à qui j'écris est très-savant.

The reasons upon *which* I rely, are without answer.

Les raisons sur lesquelles je me fonde sont sans réplique.

N. B. *Lequel*, *laquelle*, &c. must be also employed instead of *qui* in the nominative, when the relative is separated from its antecedent by another substantive to which it might seem to relate.

The glory to *which* heroes sacrifice, is often a false glory.
4 héros — fier — fausse
 It is evident that there is a God, by *whom* all things are
*il — il y a tout * est*
 governed. Idleness is a vice to *which* young people are
gouverner paresse 9 — m jeunes gens
 much inclined. He who gets riches knows not for *whom*
très-enclin 77 amasser 7 savoir (ir)
 he gets them, nor for *whose* sake he is concerned. Ulysses
*48 qui * * s'intéresse*
 (carried away) the palladium in *which* the Trojans had
emporter c — dans Troyens B une
 particular confidence; it was a statue of Minerva, on *which*
— her 31 confiance ce B — f Minerve de
 depended all the success of the war. Lying is a vice
dépendre B succès guerre mensonge m — m
 for *which* we cannot have (too much) horror. The
98 ne pouvoir (ir) trop 18 horreur
 canal of Languedoc runs across a river over *which* a
— du — passer sur rivière sur
 bridge is built in the form of an aqueduct, under *which* the
*pont en * forme aqueduc sous*
 river continues its course.
continuer cours

RULE 82.—*où* or *lequel*, &c.

When a relative pronoun comes after a preposition, and refers to an inanimate object, it is almost indifferently ex-

pressed by *où* or by *lequel, laquelle*, &c. provided the verb denote motion or rest, at least figuratively. Example :

Avoid the faults into *which* I have fallen.

Évitez les fautes où (or dans lesquelles) j'e suis tombé.

Many (learned people) do not adopt the principles
bien des savant —ter —pes m
 from *which* the system of Descartes is derived. If I had
système — dériver B
 known before the déplorable condition to *which* you
connaître auparavant dé— 31 état
 are reduced, I would certainly have sent you some
réduire certainement 172 envoyer 57 7
 money. The allies of Rome, ashamed to acknowledge as
argent allés — honteux de reconnaître pour
 their head a city from *which* liberty seemed banished,
maîtresse ville f — té paraître B bannie
 shook off a yoke which they bore with pain,
*secouer c * joug porter B peine*

RULE 83.—*Relative Pronouns never suppressed.*

The relative pronouns *whom, which, that*, and the conjunction *that*, are often understood in English, but *qui* and *que* are never omitted in French, and particular care must be had to use them every time they could be used in English. Examples :

I think he will come. It is to you I speak.
je crois qu'il viendra. C'est à vous que je parle.

The exercise you have given me to write, is too long
thème donner 57 à écrire trop —
 and too difficult. The company I keep is very honest.
difficile —gnie fréquenter honnête
 The wine we drank yesterday was very good. The man
vin boire (ir) c hier B
 I have spoken to, is just come from France. The reasons
parler 174 vient d'arriver — raison
 I rely upon are solid. We must not keep the promises
se fonder 174 solide il faut garder promesse
 which are hurtful to those to whom they were made. I
79 nuisible ceux on les a faites
 think you are in the right. I believe they will make peace
*penser avoir * * raison 98 faire paix*
 this year. I will never forget the favour you have done me.
année 120 oublier grâce faite 57

RULE 84.—Place of these Pronouns.

The relative pronouns *qui*, *que*, *dont*, *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c. are always put immediately after the nouns to which they have reference, and agree with them in gender, number, and person. Example :

It is you *who* have told me so.
c'est vous qui me l'avez dit.

Remember, O man, that thy station on earth is appointed by the wisdom of the Eternal, *who* knows thy heart, *who* sees the vanity of thy wishes, and *who* often rejects thy prayer. The world is a stage upon which men, always masked, play upon one another. Let our appetites obey reason, to *which* they are subjected by the law of nature. Grandeur of air, accompanied with freedom of manners, are qualifications *which* attract general approbation.

se ressouvenir H *état* 4 *terre*
fiéré *sagesse* *Eternel* 78 *connaître*
cœur *voir (ir)* • *—té* *désir* *souvent*
rejeter *prière* *monde* m *théâtre* m • 81
toujours masqué se jouer les uns des autres . *que* .
appétit *obéir* H *à la raison* 81 *soumettre (ir)*
loi 9 — *un air de grandeur accompagné de*
manière f pl *aisé* *est une qualité* *gagner*
31 9 — •

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Choose a man whom you esteem, who is able and willing to serve you in need. The thing of which a miser thinks the least, is to relieve the poor. The christian yoke is safer than full liberty; it is a yoke that makes the practice of virtue pleasant, that secures us from the violence of passions, and that prevents us from ruining ourselves. We should always re-

Choisir H 79 *estimer* F *avoir* F *le pouvoir*
la volonté de servir 57 *au besoin* *à* 81
avare penser *moins c'est à soulager les pauvres*
joug du christianisme *sûr* *une* *—té* 170
79 *rendre* *pratique* f 4 *agréable*
garantir 57 • — 4 — *empêcher*
57 139 *perdre* *nous* 57 *devoir* A • *nous res-*

member the cares of those by whom we have been brought
souvenir des soins ceux 81 élevé
 up.

Death is an evil for which there is no remedy.
Mort mal dat. 81 *il n'y a point* 18 *remède*
 Philip said to his son Alexander, on giving him Aristotle
Philippe dire (ir) c — *dre en donner lui* 57 — *te*
 for his preceptor, Learn, under so good a master, to
 * *précepteur apprendre H* un si * *maître à*
 avoid the faults into which I have fallen. Prudence and
éviter faute f 82 *je suis tomber* — 9
 moderation gain us the esteem of those with whom we
modé— *gagner* 57 *estime* 81
 converse. Men do not reflect enough on all the dangers
 — *ser* *réfléchir assez* sur —
 to which they are exposed. Let us consider the effects of
 81 — *ser* — *dérèr H* *effet*
 prosperity and adversity, and then we shall easily
prospérité 9 21 — *té* *alors* *aisément* 171
 perceive which is the most desirable. Let us
apercevoir laquelle dé—
 endeavour to render ourselves able to fulfil the duties
tâcher H *de rendre nous* 57 *capables de remplir devoir*
 of the situation to which God destines us. Choose well
 • *état* 81 — *ner* 57 *choisir H*
 the friend to whom you intend to give your confidence.
 81 *rouloir (ir) ** *confiance*
 After the existence of God (there is nothing of which I
après — *il n'y a rien* 80
 doubt less than of the immortality of the soul. Ulysses
douter moins — *té* *âme* — *e*
 crossing the sea, commanded his soldiers to stop their
traverser mer — *der c à* *soldat de boucher* 66
 ears with wax, and caused himself to (be tied) to the
oreilles 7 *cire f* *faire (ir) c se* 57 * *attacher*
 mast of the ship to keep himself from the charms of
mât *vaisseau pour défendre se* 57 *charmes*
 the Sirens.

Sirènes

Ignorance is a dishonour to human kind, and in
 — *deshonneur pour* 4 *genre humain en*
 a manner reduces men below the beasts, whose
quelque manière 59 *réduire au-dessous de* 80
 ignorance is the consequence of their nature, and not the
 • *consé—* —
 effect of neglect or indifference.
effet 4 *négligence* 10 *indifférence*

CHAPTER VIII.

OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS. — See p. 21.

RULE 85.—*qui?* who?

☞ The interrogative pronouns *who*, *whose*, *to whom*, &c. are expressed by *qui* or *qui est-ce qui* for the nominative, and by *qui* in all other cases; but never by *que* or *dont*, as are the relative pronouns before mentioned. Examples :

Who is there? of whom do you speak? whom will you consult?
Qui est là? de qui parlez-vous? qui consulterez-vous? &c.

Who doubts that a young man who loves virtue and science,
douter jeune 9
 enjoys more solid happiness, than he who spends his
ne jour r d'un solide 31 bonheur 77 passer
 life in dissipation and pleasure? Who goes there? to whom
dans 4 — plaisir là
 do you speak? whom can one trust to (now-a-days)?
** 91 parler pouvoir (ir) 98 se fier 174 aujourd'hui*
 For whom does a miser get riches? whom shall I apply
** avare amasser 92 7 s'adresser*
 to? who is the man who can be certain of constant happiness?
174 pouvoir r d'un — 31 bonheur
 whom shall I believe henceforth?
heur croire (ir) désormais

RULE 86.—*lequel, laquelle*, which?

☞ When the word *which* is interrogatively used, it is always expressed by *lequel* or *laquelle* for the singular, and by *lesquels* or *lesquelles* for the plural. Examples :

Which of your brothers is married? Which of your sisters
lequel de vos frères est marié? laquelle de vos sœurs
 learns French?
apprend le Français?

Of all these pictures, which should you like best,
tableau aimer le mieux
 and which do you think (is worth) most money? I
croire (ir) valoir le plus 18 argent
 have heard that one of your brothers is dead; pray
apprendre (ir) mort je vous prie
 tell me which? Which of your sisters learns geography?
dire (ir) H 56 apprendre 9 géo-

graphy? Which of the maritime powers has the best
graphic — 31 *puissance* *meilleur*
 navy? England. Which of these horses will you buy?
marine f *cheval vouloir* (ir) A
 You have read Telemachus and Jerusalem Delivered;
lire (ir) — *que* *la* *Jé* — *délivrée*
 which of these two poems do you prefer?
poèmes 91 *préférer*

RULE 87.—*quel?* what?

☞ When the pronoun *what* is used in an interrogative sentence, it is always expressed by *quel* or *quelle* before a substantive singular, and by *quels* or *quelles* before a substantive plural. Examples:

What book do you read? *What* lesson have you learnt?
quel *livre* *lisez-vous?* *quelle* *leçon* *avez-vous apprise?*

What are your reasons? *What* are her motives? *What*
raison *motif*
 passion is he inclined to? *What* dreadful news! *What*
passion *enclin* 174 *fâcheux* *nouvelle*
 crime has this man committed (that he should be
crime m 92 *commettre* (ir) *pour* *le*
 punished) so severely? *What* is the opinion of your father
père *si* *sévèrement* —
 on that affair? *What* news have you learnt in town to-
sur *affaire* f *nouvelle* pl *appprises* *en*
 day? *What* misfortune can we fear after we have lost
malheur *pouvoir* *après* *que* *perdre*
 every thing?

105

RULE 88.—*que?* what?

When the interrogative pronoun *what* signifies *what thing*, and is not governed by a preposition, it is usually expressed by *que* or *qu'est-ce que*. Example:

What do you ask?
què *demandez-vous?* or *qu'est-ce que* *vous demandez?*

What are men before God? *What* avail riches without
devant *dat.* *servir* *richesse* *sans*
 health? *What* does he want? *What* have you done with
la santé *demande* *faire* *de*
 your books? *What* were you doing in the garden? *What*
jardin *qu'est-ce*

did the master tell you? *What do you say of the French*
que maître dire B 57 31
 revolution?
ré—

RULE 89.—*quoi?* what?

When the word *what* is in the genitive, dative, or after a preposition, and signifies *what thing*, it is always expressed by *quoi*, whether the sentence is interrogative or not. Example:

What are you thinking of?
à quoi pensez-vous?

If you be idle when young, you will not know
à paresseux vous êtes jeune savoir (ir)
what to apply yourself to in your (old age). What are you
appliquer vous 57 174 vieillesse
 speaking of? On *what* will you interrogate him? In
parler A 174 sur vouloir (ir) A —ger 57
what am I guilty? Of what do you accuse me? In what
culpable accuser 57
 pray have I neglected to fulfil my duty? *What*
je vous prie négliger de remplir devoir
 are they complaining of? *What* do you aim at? *What* does
 * *se plaindre A 174 viser 174*
 your brother apply himself to?
 92 *s'appliquer 174*

CHAPTER IX.
 OF INTERROGATIONS.

RULE 90.—*où, d'où, comment, &c.*

Besides the interrogations of which we have treated above, a question is often asked with the adverbs *combien, comment, pourquoi, où, d'où*, and some others. Examples:

Where are you going? whence do you come? &c.
cù allez-vous? d'où venez-vous?

How (comes it to pass) that scarcely (any body) lives
arrive-t-il presque personne n'est
 content with his condition? (*How long*) have you lived in
 — de — combien de temps demeurer

France? *How* can the members of the same body deceive
pouvoir membre 92 corps se tromper
 and hate one another? *why* do you do that? *where* have
se haïr les uns les autres? pourquoi faire cela?
 you been? *how many* shillings in the pear? *!*
schelling à livre f

RULE 91.—Pronouns after the Verb.

☞ 1. The personal pronouns are put after the verb or its auxiliary, when it is used interrogatively. Examples:

Will you come? Will they speak?
viendrez-vous? parleront-ils?

2. When the verb ends with a vowel, and the pronoun begins with another, we put a (-t-) with two hyphens between them. Examples:

Does she sing well? Will he come?
chante-t-elle bien? viendra-t-il?

1. Who art thou, O man! who presumest on thy own
être présumer de
 wisdom?—1. Have you seen my father?—2. Has he
sagesse voir (ir)
 given you any money for me?—2. Will he come to-morrow
donner 57 de l'argent 49 venir demain
 to see me? Are you in good health? Are you going soon
** voir 57 santé aller bientôt*
 into the country? Is there (any thing) greater than to
à campagne f y a-t-il rien 18 40 de
 (make use) of one's talents to procure the public happiness?
*employer * ses — à —rer 31 bonheur*

RULE 92.—Substantive before the Verb.

☞ 1. When a substantive is the nominative case of a verb interrogatively used, the substantive is placed in French before the verb; but one of these pronouns *il* or *elle*, *ils* or *elles*, must be put after the verb, as if there were no substantive before. Examples:

Is your father at home? are your sisters learned?
votre père est-il à la maison? vos sœurs sont-elles savantes?
 as if it were: your father is he at home? your sisters are they
 learned? and so on for all others.

2. However when the sentence begins with an interroga-

tive expression, as, who, *qui*, what, *que* or *quoi*, how much, *combien*, where, *où*, when, *quand*, &c. the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, may be omitted, and the substantive should be placed after the verb, and even after the participle, in the compound tenses. Examples :

What does your son do? Where is my uncle gone?
quo fait votre fils? où est allé mon oncle?

N. B. In the preceding sentences the interrogative expression is the accusative or object-case of the verbs; otherwise the first rule should be applied.

1. Was ever (any body) more faithful to his country
c jamais personne in fidèle pays
 than Regulus, who would rather expose himself to certain
aimer c mieux se 57 une 31
 death, than not fulfil his engagements? Alas! said
mort 40 ne pas remplir — Hélas dire c
 Telemachus, I am but too certain that my father is dead;
Télémaque je ne suis que trop —
 I will go even to hell to seek his ghost: did
aller (ir) même enfer pl pour chercher ombre
 not Theseus descend thither? yet the profane Theseus
Thésée —dre c y 57 cependant —
 wanted to insult the infernal deities, and it is piety which
vouloir B outrager 31 — divinité c'est 4 pitié*
 is my motive; did not Hercules descend thither? I am
motif — c c y 57
 not Hercules, but (an attempt to imitate him is noble);
mais il est beau d'oser l'imiter
 did not Orpheus, by the recital of his misfortunes
avoir A Orphée récit malheur
 move the heart of Pluto? I am more worthy of com-
touché cœur Pluton digne 19
 passion than Orpheus, for my loss is greater. Has my
car perte f
 sister written to her husband? Is that good to eat? Has
écrire mari cela à manger
 (any body) asked for me? Is the French master come? Is
*quelqu'un demander * 57 17 venir*
 your book lost? Is your lesson learnt?
perdre leçon apprendre (ir)

2. Who is that tall, pale man? What does your sister
qui 30 31
 apply to? How much does that coat cost to you? What
s'appliquer 174 habit coûter 47
 was the master saying to you? At what o'clock will your
dire (ir) B à 87 heure f

brother (set off)? What have those *children* done? When
partir *enfant faire* (fr)
 did your friend return?
est *revenir*

RULE 93.—*est-ce là? n'est-ce pas là?*

The English prefix the words *this* or *that* for the singular, and *these* or *those* for the plural, to the possessive pronouns *his, our, your, their, &c.* when they ask whose is such or such a thing: these questions are expressed in French, is that, by *est-ce là?* are these, by *sont-ce là?* is not that, by *n'est-ce pas là?* Examples:

Is that your son? are these your sons?

est-ce là votre fils? sont-ce là vos fils?

Is not that your house? are not these your houses?

n'est-ce pas là votre maison? ne sont-ce pas là vos maisons?

Is that your house? Are these your gardens? Is not that my book? Are not these your pens? Is this your muff?

Are these your gloves? Is not that my hat? Are not these
manchon

your apples? Is that your daughter? Are these your bro-
gant *chapeau*
thers? Are not these your sisters? Are these your horses?
pomme

Is not that your dog? Are not these your gardens?

RULE 94.—*est-ce que? n'est-ce pas?*

1. The English often ask a question, less to be informed if such a thing be or be not, than to have the assent of others to what they say: questions of this sort are expressed in French by *est-ce que*, without negation, if the first part of the sentence be negative in English. Example:

He is not dead, is he? *est-ce qu'il est mort?*

2. They are rendered by *n'est-ce pas* at the end of the sentence, when the first part is affirmative, and the second negative. Example:

He is dead, is he not? *Il est mort, n'est-ce pas?*

1. It does not rain, *does it?*—2. We have seen the
pleuvoir (ir) *voir* (ir).
 king, have we not, brother?—1. It is not cold, is it?—2. You
 64 *il fait froid*

learn French, do you not? — 1. Your father is not dead,
apprendr. (ir) le Français
 is he? — 2. It is dinner-time, is it not? — 2. It is fine weather,
temps de dîner *il fait temps*
 is it not? — 2. You have received a letter from your father.
recevoir (ir) lettre
 have you not?

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the INTER-
 ROGATIVE PRONOUNS, &c.

When was Rome built? what were the achievements
quand c 92 f bâtir 87 exploit
 of king Romulus? how long did he reign? what is the
 — *combien de temps 91 régner c 87*
 history of Tarquinius Superbus? when, and (for what)
histoire Tarquin le Superbe quand pourquoi
 was he expelled from Rome? what efforts did he
c chasser 87 efforts m
 make (in order to) be restored? what was the number of
faire c pour rétablir 87 c nombre m
 the Roman kings, and how long did the regal
*de Rome 31 combien de temps * royal 31*
 authority subsist? what kind of government suc-
autorité 92 subsister c 87 sorte f gouvernement suc-
 ceeded at Rome? who were the first consuls? how
céder c c premier — comment
 did Brutus show his zeal for liberty? when were the
92 montrer c zèle m 4 liberté c
 decemvirs created? why were they deposed? what
décemvir 92 créer pourquoi c déposer 87
 kind of government followed? when were the mili-
suire (ir) c c —
 tary tribunes created with consular authority at
taire 31 tribun 92 créer — laire 31
 Rome? who were the first plebeian consuls? how
c plébéien 31
 was the first triumvirate formed? what provinces were
c — rat 92 formé 87 — f c
 assigned to the triumvirs? what were the conquests
— gner — 87 c conquête
 of Julius Cæsar in Great Britain? what (account
Jules-César dans la Bretagne f 88 rapporte-
 have we) of Cæsar after the civil wars? when and by whom
t-on 14 après
 was he slain?
c tuer

How long, Catiline, wilt thou abuse our patience?
Jusqu'à quand Catilina abuser de ? —
 How long shall thy frantic rage baffle the efforts of
frénétique — f 92 se jouer des —
 justice? (To what height) meanest thou to carry thy in-
4 — f jusqu'où . avoir dessein de porter
 solence? Seest thou not that the senators are apprised of
— voir (ir) que sénateur informer
 thy conspiracy? Wast thou not last night in the house of
— ration B hier au soir
 Lucca, with many other associates in guilt and madness?
plusieurs complices de ton crime 63 folie
 Darest thou deny this? Why art thou silent? Oh, im-
oser . nier le garder le silence
 mortal gods! what country do we inhabit? what city do we
— tel 31 87 pays habiter 87 ville f
 belong to? what government do we live under? Hast
appartenir 174 87 vivre (ir) 174 être
 thou not rendered thyself infamous by every vice that can
rendre te 57 infâme tout 106 m pl pouvoir
 brand a private life? What guilt has not stained thy
déshonorer privé 31 87 crime m souiller
 hands? What pollution has not defiled thy whole body? &c.
87 infamie souiller corps
— Cicero against Catiline.

(How many) years from the creation to the deluge? in
combien 18 années 176 création — m
 how many days did God create the world? who were the
combien 18 92 créer c monde c
 first man and woman? who were their sons? what was
premier 30 27 c c
 their occupation? when did Enoch flourish? what became
— 92 fleurir c que devint-il
 of him? who was his son? (how long) did he live?
** * qui c combien de temps vivre (ir) c*
 what was the usual length of life at that time? by
B ordinaire 31 longueur t époque f
 whom was the tower of Babel founded? on what design, and—
c 92 tour f bâtir à dessein
 when? why was the building (laid aside)? when was
quand c 92 bâties abandonné c 92
 Abraham called by God? what is the history of his life?
appeler de 87

(How many) years from the vocation of Abraham to the
combien 18 176 —
 departure of the Israelites from Egypt? whose son was
départ Israélites Egypte de qui B 92

Isaac? when was he born? who was his wife? who were
 — * *naître (ir) c femme c*
 his sons? when did Jacob live? (how many) sons had
 92 — *vivre (ir) c combien 18 c.*
 he? what is the history of Joseph? when and upon whose
 87 — *à l'invitation de qui** 92 *famille aller c en*
 invitation did Jacob and his family (go down) to Egypt?
 when was Moses born? how was he educated? by whose
 92 *Moïse c c élevé par le secours*
 assistance, and when did he bring the Israelites out of
de qui quand emmener c hors
 Egypt? what miracles attended the Israelites at their
 87 — *accompagner c*
 departure from Egypt and through the deserts? who was
sortie l' dans déserts c
 their high priest? when was the law given to Moses? who.
grand-prêtre c 92 lui donnée
 was Moses' successor?
 c 17 *le —seur*

What is the history of Joshua, and what are his wars?
 87 *Josué guerre*
 when did he and the Israelites come to the possession of
 45 92 *entrer c en ** —
 Canaan? when came Saul to the throne? by what means,
 — *monter c 92 Saül sur trône m moyen*
 and when, did David obtain the kingdom? how long
 92 *David obtenir c royaume combien de temps*
 did he reign? who were his sons? how long reigned Solomon?
régner c c c Sa— 92
 when did he dedicate the temple? what was his character?
dédier c — m . 87 c caractère
 what (is recorded) of Judith? what was the fate of Jo-
que rapporte-t-on — c sort Jo-
 siah? how long did he reign? when and by whom was Je-
sias c c
 rusalem burned? what is said of Daniel? what is the his-
 92 f . *brûler 88 98 dire 87*
 tory of his life? how long did he live? when was Jesus
vivre (ir) c 92
 born? what was his mission? by whom and when was he
naître c 87 B qui c
 crucified?
 —*fier*

CHAPTER X.

OF THE DIFFERENT USES OF QUE.*

RULE 95.—*que, admirative.*

The *que* admirative answers to the English words *how, how much, how many, what*. The adjective, if there be any, is always put after the verb in French, and before in English. Examples:

How pretty you are! how unhappy I am!
que vous êtes jolie! que je suis malheureuse!

as if it were, how you are pretty! how I am unhappy! and so on for others.

How small is the part of the world which is com-
mitted to our eyes! How late it is to begin to live
well when death is (at hand)! What (a piece of work is
man)! how noble is his reason, how extensive† his
faculties, and how admirable his form! how (much trouble)
you take for me! What misfortunes you have
undergone!

petite partie monde in con-
fiée yeux que tard de commencer à vivre
mort proche l'homme est un be-
ouvrage raison étendu
—té — forme de peine
prendre (ir) 49 de malheurs
éprouvés

RULE 96.—*que, conditional.*

The conditional *que* is used in the beginning of a sentence for the word *whether*, and in the middle, to avoid the repetition of *si*: in both cases, it governs the next verb in the subjunctive mood. Example:

Whether it rain or not, I must go out directly.
qu'il pleuve ou non, il faut que je sorte sur-le-champ.

* There are five particular sorts of *que*, called *relative, interrogative, admirative, conditional, and conjunctive*. As we have spoken at large of the two first, we will treat here only of the three others.

† The verb *être* must be repeated before every adjective.

If I were rich, and *had* children, I would give them
à riche . que G enfant 7 donner 47
 a good education. *Whether* he come or not, I do not care.

é— venir non je ne m'en soucie
 If the French master come, and I am not at home,
pas 17 maître venir A que à la maison,
 tell him. I have been obliged to (go out) on business.
dire (ir) 47 83 —ger de sortir pour affaire
Whether you be rich or poor, you should be a man of probity.
riche pauvre devoir A probité

RULE 97.—*que, conjunctive.*

The *que* conjunctive is used particularly for the following conjunctions: *afin que, à moins que, avant que, cependant, de peur que, depuis que, jusqu'à ce que, parce que, quand, and pourquoi.* Example:

Wait till the rain is over.

Attendez qu'il ne pleuve plus

que in that sentence stands for *jusqu'à ce que*. *

Epaminondas, having been wounded at the battle of
14 avoir blesser bataille
 Mantinea, would not allow the physicians to draw
—née vouloir (ir) C permettre aux médecins de tirer
 the arrow out of his wound, *before* he received the news
*flèche f * blessure ne recevoir G nouvelle*
 of the victory. A miser would have all the gold (in the)
victoire avare or du
 world, yet he would not be satisfied. When you have
monde in content D
 acknowledged your faults, and you have repaired them, I
reconnaître faute f que D réparées 48
 will forgive you. *Why* did you not tell it?
pardonner 57 dire (ir) B

Our companions please us less by the charms . we
compagnons plaire 47 moins charme m 83
 find in their conversation, than by those they find in
trouver — que par 76 83
 ours. The moment we die our fate is determined
au moment 83 mourir (ir) sort déterminer

* See, for more examples, the same rule in the grammar: *que* governs the same mood as the conjunction for which it is used. * This rule is not difficult, because the conjunction may be used as well as *que*.

154 EXERCISE UPON THE INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

for ever. How long is it *since* your father went into the
toujours combien y a-t-il est allé à
country? You shall not (go out) *before* it is light.
campagne f sortir ne F jour
Wait *till* the rain is over. Come here *that* I may speak to
attendre pluie F passée venir ici parler
you.
57

CHAPTER XI.

OF THE INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

RULE 98.— *Use of the Particle on.*

⚙ **ALL** vague and general expressions of reports, such as *one says, people say, it is said, it is reported, &c.* are rendered in French by the particle *on*, with the verb in the third person singular of the active voice. Example:

They speak of peace.

On parle de la paix.

N. B. When the passive verb is not followed by a substantive and the preposition *by*, it is generally expressed in French by the active verb, and the pronoun *on*—as:

Astonishing news are reported.
on rapporte des nouvelles surprenantes.

When *one* has deviated from the paths of virtue, *one*
s'est écarté sentier 4
ought to endeavour to get (into them) again. It (has been)
*devoir A * chercher rentrer y 52 * on a*
often lamented that the origin of almost every nation is
souvent regretter origine f presque 108 — F
either lost in fables, or buried in obscurity.
ou perdre dans 7 f ensevelir 4 —lé

People attribute the invention of gunpowder to
attribuer — canon poudre 23 f
Berthold Schwartz of Friburg. *It is reported* that Pytha-
Fribourg rapporter —
goras required a silence of five years from those he in-
gone exiger B — ans ceux 83 in-
structed in philosophy.
struire B 4 —phie

RULE 99.—l'on for on.

1. *On* takes elegantly an *l'* after the words *et, si, ou*; and also after *que*, if the next word begins with *c* or *qu*. Example:

You have been or will soon be rewarded.
on vous a récompensé, ou l'on vous récompensera bientôt.

2. *On* never takes an *l'* in the beginning of a sentence, nor when it is followed by *le, la, les*. Examples:

They say so. Put here your letter, it will be read.
on le dit. mettez-là votre lettre, on la lira
 not, *l'on le dit*; nor, *mettez-là votre lettre, l'on la lira*; which would have a very bad sound.

1. Death arrives (in the) moment one thinks the least of it, and one passes in an instant from pleasure to the grave.—1. As, when a picture is finished, one runs a risk of spoiling it, if one adds new touches to it; so * likewise you will spoil a period, if you unseasonably add to it synonymous words, which neither contribute to the clearness of expression, nor to the embellishment of speech. We learn better what we understand, than *discours on apprendre (ir) mieux 74 comprendre* what we do not.—2. They say that he is dead.
 74 *comprendre*

RULE 100.—*Le même*, the same.

The word *the same*, is expressed by *le même* or *la même* for the singular, and by *les mêmes* for the plural of both genders. Examples:

Is that *the same* book which I have lent you?—Yes,
Est-ce là le même livre que je vous ai prêté?—Oui,
it is the same.
c'est le même.

The same manners which (are becoming) when natural, are ridiculous when affected. It is rare to
manière • • • • • siéent quand elles sont
—rel —le elles sont —ter • il — de

see two persons of the same temper, and of the same
 voir personnes caractère in
 opinion. Whatever misfortunes happen to a philosopher,
 — quelque 110 malheur qui arriver — phe
 he is always the same. The same thing does not please at
 toujours
 all times.
 temps

RULE 101.—*plusieurs*, many, several.

The words *many* and *several* are usually expressed by *plusieurs*, always plural, of both genders. Example :

I have several books for you.
J'ai plusieurs livres pour vous.

Many poems of the first merit appear obscure because
 poème in mérite in paraître obscur parce que
 the reader is not sufficiently acquainted with the ancient
 lecteur * assez 172 connaître 31
 fables, historical facts, or natural objects, to which the
 — f 10 — que 31 fait — rel 31 objet 81
 poet alludes. Many had rather suffer the loss of life
 poète fait allusion aimer à mieux souffrir perte f 4
 than of a good name. When we apply ourselves to
 celle réputation quand 98 s'appliquer
 several sciences, we seldom succeed in any.
 — 98 rarement réussir dans aucun

RULE 102.—*un autre*, another.

The pronoun *another* is usually expressed by *un autre*, and *others* by *les autres*, unless it be in the genitive, or dative ; in which cases they are expressed by *autrui*, when speaking of persons not named before. Examples :

I have lost my knife, I must buy another.
J'ai perdu mon couteau, il faut que j'en achète un autre.

Do not take others' goods.
Ne prenez pas le bien d'autrui.

Another would not have forgiven you so easily as
 pardonner 57 si facilement 31

* However, the word *several* is expressed by *différent* or *différente*, when it is preceded in *English* by *the*, or a possessive pronoun.

I did. *Another's* disgrace often deters a tender mind
je l'ai fait 17 . — 172 *détourner* 31 *cœur*
 from many vices. Do not speak ill of *others*, if you wish
bien 18 *mal* *autres* *vouloir* (*ir*)
 not that *others* should speak ill of you. Charity rejoices
que *F* *mal* 9 — *se réjouir*
 (in the) happiness of *others*, and is contented that *others* be
du bonheur . *content* . *F*
 preferred. Bear the imperfections of *others* without
préférer *souffrir* H — *sans vous*
 vexation.
troubler

RULE 103.—*chacun*, every one

1. The pronouns *every one* and *every body* are both expressed by *chacun*, always masculine, unless *every one* relate to a feminine expressed before. Example :

Every one thinks of himself.
chacun *pense à soi.*

2. The word *every* is always an adjective, and is expressed by *chaque* Example :

Every science has its principles.
chaque science a ses principes.

3. The word *each* is an adjective, which being substantively used, is expressed by *chacun* always singular. Example :

They have *each* a good place.
Ils ont chacun une bonne place.

1. *Every one* lives after his own way.—1. *Every body*,
vivre (*ir*) à * *manière*
 has his own faults.—1. We must give *every body* his own.—1.
 * *défaux* *il faut donner à* 69 m *
 After the ladies had danced all night, *every one* of them
après que dame c danser la nuit d'elles s'en
 went home.—2. *Every* country has its customs and laws.
aller c chez elle pays cout me 63 *loi*
 —3. Your brothers have *each* a good place.—1. *Every one*

must take care of himself — 3. The epic poem of Voltaire
devoir a prendre garde à soi 31 *poème m* —
 and that of Milton have *each* their merit.—2. There is, in *every*
 76 — *avoir* *mérite* 69

plant, a certain quality which renders it wholesome or hurtful.
plante f — rendre 48 salutaire nuisible

— 1. Every one has his own manner of thinking and acting.
manière penser 139 177 agir

RULE 104.—*quelqu'un*, somebody.

1. The pronouns *somebody* and *any body* are both expressed in French by *quelqu'un*, always singular and masculine. Example :

Somebody has told it me.
Quelqu'un me l'a dit.

2. The word *some* or *any* is usually expressed by *quelque* before a substantive, and by *quelqu'un* or *quelqu'une*, singular, *quelques-uns* or *quelques-unes*, plural, when they are not immediately followed by a substantive. Examples :

There are *some* defects in your book.
il y a quelques défauts dans votre ouvrage.

Those pears are fine, I will take *some*.
ces poires sont belles, j'en prendrai quelques-unes.

1. When we are in town, we have almost every day
en ville presque tous les jours
somebody to dine with us. — Has ever *any body* seriously
à dîner 92 sérieusement
doubted of the immortality of the soul? — 2. Of the ma-
douter —té âme parmi
gistrates, *some* voted the death of the admiral, and *some* for
*—trat voter c amiral **
his banishment; but the majority was for setting him
bannissement —té c pour mettre 139 57
at liberty. The vestal virgins were obliged to preserve
en vestale 31 vierge B obliger de conserver
their virginity while they waited on the goddess Ves-
*—té pendant que servir B * déesse*
ta; if *any* sinned against that law, she was buried alive.
pécher B contre B enterré vif
I have *some* books for you, and *some* also for your bro-
aussi

ther Gather *some* of those flowers.
cueillir (ir) H fleur

RULE 105.—*le tout*, the whole.

1. The *whole*, not followed by a substantive, is expressed by *le tout*, always singular and masculine. Example :

I will take the whole.
Je prendrai le tout.

2. *Every thing*, *all*, *all things*, are expressed by *tout*, without any article, and it is placed between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses, when in the accusative. Examples :

All is mutable in this world. He has lost *every thing*.
tout est variable en ce monde. *il a tout perdu.*

1. The whole is greater than a part. — 1. (How much) *le partie* *combien*
do you ask for the whole? — 1. I will not sell
demandeur *vouloir (ir)* *vendre*
the whole; I must keep a part for myself. — 2. The
il faut que j'en garde *moi*
Pyrrhonians were philosophers who doubted of every thing.
— *men* *B* — *phie* *7* *douter* *B*
— Every thing is vanity in this world. — 2. Every thing dis-
— *té dans* *monde* *m* *dé-*
pleases you. — 2. He takes every thing. — 2. She has taken
plaire *57* *prendre*
every thing for herself. — Piety refers all things to God;
elle *piété rapporter*
self-love, (on the) contrary, applies every thing to
amour-propre *au* — *traire rapporter* *à*
itself.
soi

RULE 106.—*tout le*, all, the whole.

1. When the words *all* and *the whole* come before a substantive, they are both adjectives, and expressed by *tout le*, or *tout la*, for the singular, and by *tous les*, or *toutes les*, for the plural, and they are both repeated before every substantive. Example :

I have eaten all the apples.
J'ai mangé toutes les pommes.

2. When *tout* stands for *every*, it takes an article in the plural, but not in the singular, except with the word *monde* taken in the sense of *persons*. Example :

Every man is mortal.
Tout homme est mortel, Tous les hommes sont mortels.

1. *All* the grandeur, wealth, and power of the earth, cannot satisfy an ambitious mind. — 2. The passions of youth are pliant to every impression. — 2. Come and see us every day. — 2. We naturally ascribe to God every kind of perfection, as wisdom, power, and goodness without bounds, existing through all ages, pervading all space, providing for all mankind in general, and for every creature in particular. — 1. *The whole* fleet is at sea.

richesse *pouvoir*
faire 31 — *lieux* *esprit*
jeunesse * *cèdent* — pl *venir* H
 * *voir* 57 pl *naturellement* 172 *attribuer*
sorte f 16 4 *sagesse* 10 *pouvoir*
bonté sans fin *exister* dans siècles m
remplir espace *pourvoir* (ir) à genre humain
 à pl — *lier*
flotte f *ex* m

RULE 107.— *tout ce qui*, all that.

☞ The words *all that*, *every thing that*, and also *whatever* signifying *all that*, are expressed in French by *tout ce qui*, or *tout ce que*, always masculine and singular. Examples :

All that you say is true. *All* is not gold *that* glitters.
 Tout ce que vous dites est vrai. Tout ce qui brille n'est pas or.

All that does not tend to the glory of God, or to the good of society, is mere vanity. *Every thing that* is lofty, vast, or profound, expands the imagination, and dilates the heart. *Whatever* is good in itself, is not always approved. *Whatever* tends to enlighten the understanding, or to impress the heart with right feelings, may be pronounced useful.

tendre *gloire*
bien n'est que *élevé*
vaste *profond* *tendre* — *dilater*
cœur *soi* *approuver*
tendre à éclairer *entendement* *à imprimer*
dans *de* bon sentiment *pouvoir* (ir) A *appeler*
utile

RULE 108.—*tout*, quite.

☞ The word *tout* is frequently used to express the adverbs *quite*, *entirely*, *although*, or the first *as** of a sentence where two are used. In this case it is always indeclinable, except (which is worthy of notice) before an adjective or a participle feminine which begins with a consonant. Examples :

She was *quite* surprised.

Elle fut tout étonnée—indeclinable.

She is *quite* altered since her illness.

Elle est toute changée depuis sa maladie—declinable.

Philosophers, as learned as they are, are sometimes mistaken. Your mother was *quite* cast down at that news; however, as sorry as she was, she received me kindly, and desired me to dine with her. This fashion is *quite* new.

philosophe *savant* . • * *quelquefois* 172
se tromper C *abattre* * *nouvelle*
cependant *affligé* B *recevoir* C 57 *avec bonté* .
prier • 57 *de dîner* *elle* *mode* f *nouveau*

Your sister is *quite* altered by her illness. Hope as deceitful as it is, serves at least to lead us to the end of life through a pleasant way. The wife, mother, and daughter of Darius, as afflicted as they were, when Alexander took them prisoners, could not forbear admiring his generosity.

sœur *changer* *maladie* *espérance*
trompeuse *servir* *au moins* *à conduire* 57
fin 4 *par* *agréable* 31 *chemin* *femme* *mère* 10
filles 14— *affligé* B *quand*
faire C 57 *prisonnières* *pouvoir* C *s'empêcher*
d'admirer *générosité*

RULE 109.—*quelque* indeclinable.

When the words *however*, *howsoever*, *though ever so*, *so much*, or *so little*, come before one or several adjectives or participles, they are expressed by *quelque* indeclinable, which is repeated before every adjective. • The words are placed

* The first *as* should be expressed by *aussi*, if there be a comparison of objects, as we have seen before, Rule 37. The second *as* is always expressed by *que*, and never by *comme*.

thus : 1. *Quelque*. 2. The adjective. 3. *Que*. 4. The verb in the subjunctive mood. 5. The substantive; the rest as in English. Example :

Though your faults be *ever* so great,
 1. *Quelque* 2. *grandes* 3. *que* 4. *soient* 5. *vos fautes*,
 they will forgive you.
on vous pardonnera.

As if it were, however great your faults may be, they will forgive you.

Philosophers, *however* extolled their sentiments may be,
 — *phé* 9 . *élevés* —
 are exposed to some practical frailties as well as other
exposer quelque pratique 31 *faute aussi-bien que*
 mortals. *Though* men be *ever* so incredulous during their life,
mortel incrédule pendant
 they often change their disposition when death approaches.
 172 *changer* * *de* — *approcher*
 All the nations of the earth worship a Supreme Being, *how-*
adorer 31 — *Être* m
ever different they may be in their temper, manners, and
 m pl * * 63. *caractère mœurs* .
 inclinations. *Though* fashions be *ever* so foolish, people
 — *mode* f *folles* on
 always follow them. *However* skilful and learned
toujours 172 *suivre* (ir) 57 *habile* *savant*
 we may be, let us not make a vain show of our
faire (ir) — *étalage*
 knowledge.
science

RULE 110.—*quelque* declinable.

The word *whatever*, followed by a substantive, and any other verb than *to be*, is expressed by *quelque* or *quelques*, adjective and declinable. We put, 1. *Quelque*. 2. The substantive. 3. *Que*. 4. The verb in the subjunctive; the rest as in English. Example :

Whatever faults you have committed, they will forgive you.
Quelques fautes que vous ayez commises, on vous pardonnera.

He who possesses virtue will be loved by all good men, in
 77 *posséder* 9 *aimer* de 106 *gens de bien*
whatever country he lives. *Whatever* mental accomplish-
vivre (ir) *talent* de
 ments a man may have received from nature, he may
l'esprit *reçus* † *pouvoir* A

improve them by art and study. Charity does not
perfectionner 57 *étude*
 rejoice in iniquity, whatever advantage she may reap
se réjouir de 4 — *le* *avantage* *recueillir* (ir)
 from it. Whatever services you have done me, I have
en 57 — *m* *rendus* 57
 been thankful (for them).
reconnaissant en 57

RULE III.—*quel que*, in two words.

The word *whatever*, followed by a substantive and the verb *to be*, is expressed by *quel que*, or *quelle que*, for the singular, and by *quels que*, or *quelles que*, for the plural. We put, 1. *Quel*, or *quelle*. 2. *Que*. 3. The verb *être*, in the subjunctive mood. 4. The substantive: the rest as in English. Example:

Whatever your faults may be, they will forgive you*.

Quelles que soient vos fautes, on vous pardonnera.

as if it were, whatever may be your faults; putting always the verb in French before the substantive.

Whatever your birth may be, whatever your elevation
*plf naissance pl ** 63 *élévation*
 and glory, you ought to despise nobody. Whatever may
gloire devoir A mépriser 116
 be the power of a king, he cannot hope to increase nor
pouvoir espérer de augmenter
 even to preserve it, if he be not (particularly attentive)
même de conserver 60 *A très-attentif*
 to gain the affection of his subjects. Whatever your
à gagner — *sujet*
 motives may be, your conduct will be condemned.
motif conduite f condamné

RULE III2.—*quelque chose que*, whatever.

1. The word *whatever*, meaning *all things soever*, is usually expressed by *quelque chose qui* or *que*, or by *quoi que*, with the next verb in the subjunctive. Example:

Whatever he does, do not punish him.

Quelque chose qu'il fasse (or quoi qu'il fasse), n. le punissez pas.

*. I have repeated the same sentence in these three rules, to render more sensible the application of *quelque*, *quelques*, and *quelles que*.

2. *Nothing whatever* is expressed by *ne* before the verb, and *quoi que ce soit* after it. Example :

I have found nothing whatever.
Je n'ai trouvé *quoi que ce soit*.

1. *Whatever* happens to a virtuous man, he never murmurs against the Divine Providence.—2. Those who apply to nothing whatever, are very contemptible.—1. *Whatever* may happen in our family, give (me notice of it).—2. I complain of nothing whatever.—1. *Whatever* you undertake, you will never succeed in it, if you do not take your measures better.
il arriver vertueux 120 mur-
murer contre — — 77 s'ap-
pliquer très-méprisable
famille n'en avis
se plaindre entreprendre (ir)
120 réussir y 57 mesure
mieux 172

RULE 113.—*quiconque*, whoever.

1. The pronouns *whoever* and *whosoever* are usually expressed by *quiconque* for the nominative case. Example :

Whoever spares the bad, does harm to the good.
Quiconque épargne les méchants, fait tort aux bons.

2. When *whomsoever* is preceded by *of*, *to*, or any other preposition, it is expressed by *qui que ce soit que*, with the next verb in the subjunctive mood. Example :

Of whomsoever he speaks, I do not believe him.
De qui que ce soit qu'il parle, je ne le crois pas.

1. *Whoever* is prudent, will avoid talking much of any particular science in which he is not (remarkably skilled), because he has nothing to get, and much to lose.—2. *Of whomsoever* you speak, avoid calumny.—2. To *whomsoever* you apply, they will tell you the same thing.—1. *Whoever* (is not ashamed) of his faults (is deserving) of
prudent éviter de parler un
—lier — dans 81 très-versé
parce qu' 118 à gagner à perdre
parler éviter 9 calomnie
s'adresser on dire 57 chose f
n'a pas honte faute mériter

punishment.—1. *Whoever* is modest, seldom fails
punition • • • • • *modeste* *rarement* 172 *manquer*
to gain the good will of those he converses with.
de gagner * *estime* 83 —*scr* 174

RULE 114.—*l'un l'autre*, one another.

The pronouns *one another*, and *each other*, are expressed by *l'un l'autre*, or *l'une l'autre*, when speaking only of two; and by *les uns les autres*, *les unes les autres*, for the plural. The first of these pronouns is always in the nominative: hence, if there be any preposition in English, it must be put between them in French. Example:

They speak ill of one another.
ils parlent mal l'un de l'autre, not *ils parlent mal de l'un l'autre*.

The faculty of interchanging our thoughts with one another has always been considered as one of the greatest privileges of reason, and as what more particularly raises mankind above the brute. We are guilty of great injustice towards one another, when we are prejudiced by the features of those whom we do not know. The happiness of the people makes that of the prince; their true interests are connected with one another.

—*lége* 4 *raison* 74 172 *élever*
l'homme au-dessus de — *f* *coupable*
— *f* *envers* *pl* • • • • • *nous nous laissons*
prévenir *trait* *ceux que* *connaître*
bonheur *peuple* *m faire* 76
intérêt *liés* *dat.* *pl*

RULE 115.—*l'un et l'autre*, both.

The word *both* is expressed by *l'un et l'autre*; *either* is expressed by *l'un ou l'autre*; and *neither* by *ni l'un ni l'autre*. If there be any preposition in English, it must be repeated in French before *l'un* and before *l'autre*. Example:

I speak of neither of them.
je ne parle ni de l'un ni de l'autre.

I love my father and mother; I would do every
faire (ir)

* *Ni l'un ni l'autre* requires *ne* before the Verb.

thing to please them *both*. The slothful and the
 105 *pour leur plaisir à paresseux*
 diligent are (upon a level) if neither of them knows what
 — *de niveau* * * *savoir (ir) quoi*
 to do. Your brother and mine have great abilities; but
 * *faire* 69 8 *talent mais*
 they *both* make very bad use of them. *Both* suspect
 * *faire mauvais usage en* 57 *soupçonner*
 him, but *neither* will say why. Either of you
vouloir (ir) pourquoi vous pouvez
 can do me a great favour.
l'un ou l'autre plaisir

RULE 116.—*ne* and *personne*, nobody.

☞ 1. *Nobody* is expressed by *personne*, and by *ne* which is put before the verb. Examples:

Nobody loves mischief as mischief. He thinks of
Personne n'aime le mal pour le mal. Il ne pense à
nobody.
personne.

2. Observe that *personne* is masculine as a pronoun, and feminine as a substantive.

1. I know *nobody* so learned as you.—2. I know a *person*
connaître si savant 37 *connaître*
 more learned than you.—1. *Nobody* more impatiently
savant 39 *—ticinement* 172
suffers injuries, than he who is (most forward) in doing them.
souffrir 9 77 *le premier à faire en* 57
 He who pleases *nobody*, is less unhappy than he whom *nobody*
 77 *plaire à malheureux* 77 *à qui*
 pleases. *Nobody* becomes debauched or virtuous on a sudden.
plaire devenir débauché vertueux tout-à-coup.

RULE 117.—*pas un, aucun* and *ne*, none.

☞ The pronouns *none, not one*, are expressed by *aucun, pas un*: both require the particle *ne* before the verb. Examples:

None of the judges were against you.
Aucun des juges n'était contre vous.
 All the soldiers have been taken prisoners, *not one* has
Tous les soldats ont été faits prisonniers, pas un n'a
 escaped.
échappé.

Of all the nations of the earth, there is none but has an idea of God. Of the great number of friends who surround us in prosperity, there often remains not one in adversity. Fortune exempts many (bad men) from punishment but none from fear. I had many friends, yet not one has relieved me.

il n'y en a qui n'ait
idée nombre m ami envi-
ronner 57 dans 4 —périté il n'en 172 rester
4 —té 9 — f sauver bien 18 méchant 4 • puni-
tion mais 4 crainte f B 101 cependant
secourir (ir) me 57.

RULE 118.—*ne* and *rien*, nothing.

The word *nothing* is expressed by *rien* and by *ne* before the verb. Example:

Nothing should hinder a Christian from telling truth.
Rien ne doit empêcher un Chrétien de dire la vérité.

God requires *nothing* from us, but what is for our advantage. *Nothing* is more common than the word friendship, and *nothing* more rare than a true friend. *Nothing* is more dangerous for a young man than bad company. Charity does *nothing* without consideration and order.

*demande * 57 que 74 avan-*
tage. tage commun 39 mot amitié
n'est — véritable
—reux 4 —guie
—té 9 faire (ir) sans — ni sans ordre

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES upon the INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

Idleness is the mother of all vices. Charity is the first of all virtues. Though true love be ever so uncommon, yet it is less so than true friendship. With you, every road is easy, every river fordable, every country fertile. Whatever may be the happiness of the grandees of the earth, a

paresse 9 — m —té 9
109 véritable amour rare
cependant • 54 • f 106
chemin facile rivière guéable pays —
11 • bonheur • grand •

168 EXERCISE UPON THE INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

true Christian should propose to himself something more solid
Chrétien devoir A proposer se 57, quelque chose de solide
 and lasting.
de plus durable

One is truly amiable, when one is modest and learned
98 vraiment aimable modeste savant
 at the same time. Your sisters, handsome and amia-
*en * temps 108 belle amia-*
 ble as they are, do not marry. Whoever cannot
ble se marier 113 pouvoir (ir)
 bear suffering, has not a great soul. Alexander used
souffrir âme f —dre avoir B
 to say, I am (as much) indebted to Aristotle, as to
coutume de aussi redevable —te
 my father; for, if I am indebted for life to the one, I am in-
'de " l'un
 debted for virtue to the other. You should not distrust
devoir E vous défier
 one another as you do.
de 114 jure (ir)

Whoever attentively considers the misery of human
113 172 —vement considérer misère f humain
 life, will certainly prepare for a better; since infancy
31 172 se préparer meilleure puisque enfance
 (is attended) with folly, youth with disorder, and (old
se passe dans 4 folie jeunesse désordre m vicil-
 age) with infirmities.
lessc —té.

If you would be happy, desire nothing too
vouloir (ir) A heureux désirer H 118 avec trop
 eagerly, rejoice not excessively, nor grieve
d'empressement se rejouir H —vement ne s'affliger
 (too much) for disasters; and (above all) never forget
trop des malheur surtout 120 oublier
 the concerns of your soul.
salut âme

Nobody can flatter himself he shall live till to-
*116 flatter se de * vivre (ir) jusqu'à*
 morrow. The people often suffer by the wars which
demain peuple pl ; 172 souffrir des guerre
 princes make with one another. Whoever reveals
se faire (ir) dat. 114 113 révéler
 secrets loses his credit. Honours, whatever they are,
9 perdre crédit honneur 111
 do not make men truly great, if they have no personal
rendre vraiment

merit. With time and patience we tame
 31 *mérite m* le *temps* — 98 *apprivoiser*
 wild beasts, though ever so savage.
sauvage 31 *bête f* *quelque farouches qu'elles soient*

Every moment is dear to him who knows the value of
 106 *pl* — *cher* 77 *connaître* *précieux* 4
 time. Every man seeks tranquillity, and nobody finds it.
temps 106 *pl* *chercher* — *té* 116 *trouver* 48
 Envy and hatred are always united and strengthen one
envie *haine f* *unir* 143 *se fortifier* 114
 another in the same individual; they are only distinguish-
sujet *on ne peut les* *distin-*
 able from one another in this: the one keeps close to
guér 114 *qu'en ceci* *s'attacher*
 the person, the other to his situation.
 116 *état*

CHAPTER XII.

SEVERAL MODES OF NEGATION.

RULE 119.—*ni, ni ne, neither.*

1. When *neither* and *nor* come before two nouns or two verbs in the infinitive mood, they are both expressed by *ni*, and *ne* is put before the first verb. Example:

He knows *neither* how to read *nor* write.
Il ne sait ni lire, ni écrire.

2. If they come before two verbs in any tense of the indicative, *neither* is expressed by *ne*, and *nor* by *ni ne*. Examples:

I *neither* love *nor* hate them.
Jc ne les aime ni ne les hais.
 I *neither* praise *nor* blame you.
Je ne vous loue ni ne vous blâme.

1. Henry the fourth was a great king: *neither* his palace
 11 *B* *palais*
nor his heart was shut against (any body); but they were
cœur B fermer à personne B
 particularly open to men of merit.—2. Adversity,
 —*fièrement* *ouvert* *mérite* —*té* 4

neither troubles *nor* casts down the just; prosperity
 troubler abattre (ir) * juste prospérité
neither spoils him, *nor* makes him prouder.—2. Virtue is
 aveugler 57 rendre 57 fier
neither lost by shipwreck, *nor* changed by the alter-
 ne se perd point naufrage change point vicis-
 sations of time.—2. I *neither* love *nor* hate you; you
 situde temps aimer 60 haïr 57
neither please *nor* displease me.—1. You can *neither*
 plaire déplaire 60 savoir (ir) A
 read *nor* write.—1. We despise those who are useful
 lire écrire on mépriser 76 utile
neither to themselves, *nor* to others.
 eux-mêmes 102

RULE 120.—*ne jamais*, never.

✎ *Never* is expressed in French by *jamais*; by no means is rendered by *nullement*; both require *ne* before the verb. Examples:

Never speak ill of any body.

Ne parlez jamais mal de personne.

I by no means approve of your conduct.

Jc n'approuve nullement votre conduite.

Never make public what has been trusted to you in se-
 rendre H 74 confier * 57 en
 cret. Shining characters are not always the most agree-
 brillant 31 caractère m agréable
 able; the mild radiance of an emerald is by no means less
 able doux radiation émeraude f
 pleasant than the glare of a ruby. Time past *never* re-
 agréable 39 éclat rubis passé re-
 turns; and a word, once uttered, *never* can be recalled.
 venir mot une fois prononcé rappeler
 Scipio Africanus used to say, that he was *never*
 Scipion l'Africain avoir B coutume de dire B
 less at leisure, than when at leisure; *nor* less alone,
 * oisif quand il était * oisif seul
 than when alone.
 quand il était

RULE 121.—*ne aucun*, non, no.

✎ 1. When the word *no* comes before a substantive, it is usually expressed by *aucun* or *aucune* for the singular, and by *aucuns* or *aucunes* for the plural, with *ne* before the verb. Example:

There is *no* knowledge more useful than that of ourselves.
Il n'y a aucune connaissance plus utile que celle de nous-mêmes.

2. The word *no* is expressed by *non*, when it is used in answer to a question. Example :

Do you learn geography? — No, sir.
apprenez-vous la géographie? — Non, monsieur.

1. No bounds can restrain the glory of the Almighty,
limite restreindre gloire Tout-puissant
no dimension of time can limit his reign. There is *no*
— temps limiter règne m il n'y a
 grief which length of time does not lessen or mollify.
*chagrin * * le temps diminuer F n'adoucir F*
 A clear conscience needs *no* excuse, and fears *no*
pure 31 — avoir besoin de — craindre
 accusation. — 1. No inheritance can supply the want of a
— héritage suppléer au défaut
 good education. — 1. No revenge is more heroic than
é — vengeance héroïque
 that which torments envy by doing good. — 2. Have you
76 tourmenter envie en le bien
 seen the queen of England? No, I have not. — 2. Do
voir (ir) reine Angleterre 5 ne l'ai pas vue
 you know the king? No, madam. — 1. No reverse of for-
connaître madame revers
 tune ought to alter friendship.
*devoir A * altérer 9 amitié*

RULE 122. — *ne pas*, or *non*, not.

§ 1. The word *not* is expressed by *ne* before the verb or its auxiliary, and by *pas* or *point* after. Example :

I do *not* speak. We have *not* spoken to him.
Je ne parle pas. Nous ne lui avons pas parlé.

2. *Ne* and *pas* go before the verb, when it is in the present of the infinitive. Example :

I will do it, in order *not* to displease your father.
Je le ferai pour ne pas déplaire à votre père.

* Not, followed by *that*, is expressed by *non*, *que* or *non pas* *que*, *as*, *je le ferai*, *non que* j'y sois obligé, mais pour avoir la paix ; I will do it, *not that* I am obliged to do it, but to have peace.

1. As the earth ^o does not only produce roses and
comme seulement 172 *produire* 7 —
 lilies, but likewise Erics and thistles; so the world
lis mais aussi ronces 7 *chardons* 7 *gusi* *monde* 119
 does not always afford us contentment and pleasure, but
 * 172 *donner* 57 — *tement* 7 *plaisir* 7
 sometimes afflictions and troubles.
quelquefois — 7 *peine* 7

2. You must be blind *not*² to¹ see, that this man
il faut que vous 157 *aveugle* *pour*
 wants to deceive you. — To forgive one's enemy before
vouloir (ir) * *tromper* 57 * *à* *avant qu'*
 he is sensible of his faults, is to encourage him in his
 158 *persuadé* *faute c'est* * *encourager* 57
 faults; not to forgive him at all, is to sin one's self.
lui 57 *du tout c'est* * *pécher soi-même*

RULE 123.—*ne* without *pas*, not.

The word *not* is expressed by *ne* without *pas*, when it is joined to the verbs *cesser*, *oser*, *pouvoir*, and also to *savoir*, used for *to be able*, followed by an infinitive. Examples :

He does not cease complaining. *Il ne cesse de se plaindre*
 I cannot speak French. *Je ne saurais parler Français.*

not, *Il ne cesse pas de se plaindre*, nor, *je ne saurais pas parler Français.*

As antiquity cannot authorise an error, so novelty
comme ancienneté *autoriser* *erreur ainsi nouveauté*
 cannot prejudice truth. When we dare not blame
porter préjudice à *on oser* *blâmer*
 a prince after his death, it is a sign that his successor
 — *après mort c'est signe m* — *seur m*
 is like him. Some people do not cease to complain
ressembler lui 57 104 *personne* 116 *cesser de se plaindre*
 of fortune, though they are loaded with its favours. When
 — *f quoiqu'* 158 *chargé* 32 *favours*
 Darius offered to Alexander to divide Asia equally with
offrir c *de partager Asie* 5 *également*
 him, he answered: The earth cannot bear two suns, nor
 49 *répondre c* , *pouvoir souffrir* *soleil ni*
 Asia two kings.

RULE 124. — *Distinction between pas and point.*

1. *Point* denies absolutely, and signifies not at all; *pas* denies sometimes but in part: thus this sentence, *tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont point coupables*, signifies that none of the accused are guilty; and this, *tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont pas coupables*, only signifies that they are not all guilty.

2. We make use of *point* in an interrogative sentence, when we doubt of a thing, and of *pas* when we are persuaded of it: thus, in this sentence, *n'avez-vous point vu mon frère?* I doubt if you have seen him or not; and in this, *n'avez-vous pas vu mon frère?* I am persuaded you have seen him.

Though this distinction be exact, and conformable to the practice of the best authors, yet it is not always observed; and there are many cases, in which *pas* and *point* can be almost indifferently used.

RULE 125. — *que ne, than.*

When the word *than* comes before a verb in any tense of the indicative mood, it is usually expressed by *que*, and by *ne*, which is put before the verb. Example:

He is younger *than* I thought.

Il est plus jeune que je ne croyais.

not, *il est plus jeune que je croyais.*

Courage is often allied to vice, *than* cowardice is to
 — *plus souvent allier m lâcheté* 54
 virtue. We despise those who speak otherwise *than* they
 98 *mépriser* 76 *autrement*
 think. Ireland is more powerful at present, *than* were
penser Irlande 5 f *puissant à* 54 B
 the three kingdoms at the death of queen Elizabeth. A
 • *royaume mort renaît* —
 traveller often relates things otherwise *than* they are.
voyageur 172 *rapporter*

RULE 126. — *ne after craindre, &c.*

The particle *ne* is used in French after the verbs *craindre*, *appréhender*, *avoir peur*, *prendre garde*, and *empêcher*, when they are affirmatively used, but not when negatively. Examples:

I fear he will do it.

I do not fear he will do it.

Je crains qu'il ne le fasse. *Je ne crains pas qu'il le fasse.*

From these examples you may observe, that there is always a negation in the sentence where these verbs are used.*

I have not heard^{entendu parler} of my son for these six months^{depuis * mois};
 I fear lest some misfortune have befallen him. I fear my
^{que} father will come; I do not fear^{malheur être F arriver lui 57} he will come. I will hinder
^{* venir F} him from punishing you; I will not hinder him from punish-
^{qu'il * punir F 57} ing you, because you deserve it. ^{qu'il *}
^{57 parce que mériter le 57}

RULE 127.—*ne* after *à moins que*.

☞ The particle *ne* is used in French after the conjunctions *à moins que*, *de crainte que*, *de peur que*, *que* for *unless*, and *que* for *before*; though there is no negation in English. Example:

Unless you punish him, he will not study.*

A moins que vous ne le punissiez, il n'étudiera pas.

No man was ever (cast down) by the injuries of fortune
^{personne C abatre (ir) revers — f}
unless he had before suffered himself to be deceived by
^{à moins qu'il se fût auparavant laissé * * tromper}
 fair favours. I will not go into the country ^{unless}
^{faveur aller (ir) à campagne f à moins}
 you go with me. Go home⁴⁹ for fear my
^{que venir F 49 aller H à la maison de crainte que}
 father come and find you here.* A judge ought to
^{ne trouver 57 ici juge devoir A *}
 examine his own heart, lest passion prevent justice.
^{examiner cœur de peur que — 9 empêcher — f}
 I will not forgive you, unless you beg pardon. I will
^{U pardonner 57 que demander B —}
 not (set off) before my cousin have come.
^{partir que — être F venir}

RULE 128.—*ne que*, but, only.

☞ When the words *but* and *only* come after a verb, and mean *no more*, *nothing else*, or *nobody else than*, they are

These verbs and conjunctions govern the subjunctive mood.

usually expressed by *ne* before it and by *que* after it. Examples :

I have but few friends. *Je n'ai que peu d'amis.*

He is but twelve years old. * *Il n'a que douze ans.*

Knowledge without humility produces nothing but pride,
*science 9 4 —té produire * orgueil*
 vanity, and presumption. We confess small failings, only to
—té présomption avouer 8 défaut • pour
 persuade others that we have no great ones. I am but
—der aux autres 18 grand en 57 avoir
 twenty years old. God requires nothing of us but what is for
*ans * demander * * 57 74*
 our advantage. Friendship (is to be purchased) only by
avantage amitié 9 peut s'acheter par
 friendship.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES upon the NEGATIONS.

There is no reproof more mild, no exhortation more
il y a 121 reproche m doux 121 —
 effectual, than good example. Afflict nobody, never
efficace exemple m affliger n 116 120
 blame without reason, never reprove with passion, and
blâmer 120 réprimander
 be always ready to pardon injuries. Two things cannot
prêt à pardonner injure 9 chose pouvoir (ir)
 be more contradictory than truth and falsehood; yet per-
—toire vérité fausseté peut-
 haps, none are so mixed and united. Charity never looks
être 117 mêler ni si unir —té 120 regarder
 on others with contempt.
mépris

No strength of genius, no vivacity of wit, can excuse
121 force f génie 121 —té esprit • excuser
 immorality in authors. There would be neither navigation
—té auteur il n'y aurait 119 • —
 nor agriculture, without the industry of men. What is
— sans —trie 74 se

* However, *qui* is used when but is placed between the nominative and the verb. Example: *il n'y a personne qui ne craigne la mort, there is nobody but fears death.*

done in anger, *cap* neither be done well, nor
fait dans colère ne pouvoir (ir) 119 *fait* 122
 be approved by any body. The waves of the Channel are
approuver de personne vague f Manche f
 not more agitated by the winds of the east or the west,
 122 *agité vent * est * ouest*
 than my heart was when I heard of that sorrowful
 125 *accrur 54 c apprendre (ir) c * fâcheux*
 accident.

Unless magistrates be on their guard, they will
à moins que 127 *—trat . v* *garde pl*
 (be made) instruments of the revenge of wicked men.
*devenir — vengeance méchants **
 There is no object more pleasing than the sight of a man
il y a 121 *objet agréable . ruc f*
 whom you have obliged,
 79 *obliger*

CHAPTER XIII.

OF THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

RULE 129.—*Verbs which govern the Genitive.*

☞ The verbs which govern the genitive in French are,
 1. the following, *abuser, avoir besoin, avoir pitié, hériter,*
jouir, manquer, médire, rougir, and *user,* whatever case they
 govern in English. Examples:

He traduces every body. I enjoy good health.
Il médit de tout le monde. Je jouis d'une bonne santé.
 not, *il médit tout le monde ; nor, je jouis une bonne santé.*

2. Most of the reflected verbs. Examples:

He repents his faults; she distrusts every body.
Il se repent de ses fautes ; elle se défie de tout le monde.

3. Most of the verbs followed by the prepositions *of, from,*
with, or by. Examples:

I am loaded with spoils. He is loved by his master.
Je suis chargé de butin. Il est aimé de son maître.
 not, *je suis chargé avec butin ; nor, il est aimé par son maître.*

2. The *impious* mock at virtue, and ridicule
—pie pl se moquer tourner en ridicule
 religion.—2. Do not laugh at others' misfortunes, instead
— se moquer 102 • malheur au lieu
 of pitying them.—1. You abuse the favours of for-
de avoir pitié 139 en 57 abuser faveur
 tune, and you do not use your victory with moderation.—
— user victoire modération
 1. Death pities nobody, neither rich nor poor.—1. Never
mort avoir pitié 116 119 du riche pauvre 120
 traduce (any body).
médire n personne

3. Covetous men are tormented with the desire of increas-
*avare * tourmenter désir augmen-*
 ing what they have, and the fear of losing it.—1.
ter 139 74 21 crainte f perdre le 57
 Nature wants few things.—3. She is contented with
— avoir besoin 18 se contenter
 little.—1. It is grievous to want money in a foreign
peu fâcheux de manquer argent étrang.
 country.
31 pays

RULE 130.—*Verbs which govern the Dative.*

The following verbs, *consentir, contrevénir, controuuer, dé-
 plaire, désobéir, nuire, obéir, obvier, pardonner, parvenir, pen-
 ser, plaire, remédier, ressembler, résister, songer, subvenir,
 succéder, and survivre,* govern the dative in French, what-
 ever case they govern in English. Examples :

He obeys his master. You please every body.
Il obéit à son maître. Vous plaisez à tout le monde.
 not, il obéit son maître ; nor, vous plaisez tout le monde.

Flattery can hurt nobody, but him whom it pleases. If
*—rir nuire * 128 77 plaire*
 we do not forgive others, we must not expect that God
pardonner 102 il ne faut pas espérer Dieu
 will forgive us. Remember, O my son! the counsel
** 159 57 se souvenir n 129 conseil 83*
 I give thee, it will profit thee much: obey the law of
donner 57 profiter 57 beaucoup obéir n loi
 God. Obey the king and all the subordinate magistrates,
—donné 31 —trat
 resist your passions, forgive your enemies, hurt nobody,
résister H ennemi nuire H 116

and never yield to the allurements of pleasure. He that
 120 *céder* H *attrait* 4 77
 resists his evil inclinations, deserves greater praises than
résister mauvais — *mériter* 8 *éloge* m
 he who conquers kingdoms, and cannot command his
 77 *conquérir* (ir) — *der à*
 passions.

RULE 131.— *Verbs which govern the Accusative.*

All verbs which may be used in the passive voice govern the accusative in French, whatever case they govern in English. Examples:

I accept of your offer: your offer is accepted.
J'accepte votre offre: votre offre est acceptée.

God accepts of our endeavours after holiness
accepte v effort pour arrive: à 4 *sainteté*
 provided they be sincere. He that was never acquainted
pourvu qu' 158 77 * 120 *connaître* c
 with adversity, says Seneca, knows the world but on
 * 9 — *le* *Sénèque connaître monde* 128 *d'*
 one side. If you seek for happiness (any where) but in
côté chercher bonheur ailleurs que en*
 God, you are sure to be disappointed. Henry the Fourth
 — *de tromper* 11
 looked upon the good education of youth as a thing
*regarder ** *é— jeunesse comme chose f*
 (upon which) depends the felicity of kingdoms and people.
d'où dépendre bonheur 4 peuple pl

RULE 132.— *Accusative and Genitive.*

The following verbs, *absoudre, accabler, accuser, avertir, bannir, blâmer, chasser, combler, corriger, débusquer, dégoûter, délivrer, détourner, dissuader, exclure, expulser, informer, louer, menacer, priver, remplir, soupçonner*, and a few others, govern the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing. Example:

To expel the impious from society.
Chasser les impies de la société.

* When these verbs govern one noun only, it is usually put in the accusative, whether it have reference to a person or to a thing.

It is the part of a fool to *accuse* another of a fault
c'est fait fou d'accuser un autre fautes
of which he is himself guilty. Our infirmities often
80 61 • *culpable* • —*té* 172
remind us of mortality, sickness warns us of
faire ressouvenir 57 —*té* • *maladie avertir* 57
death, adversity ought to *admonish* us of our duties, and
—*té* *devoir* A * *avertir* 57 *devoir*
make us think of religion. To load an enemy with in-
faire penser 130 — * *charger ennemi d'in-*
juries; to exclude a liar from society; to free one's country
jure * *exclure menteur* *délivrer son pays*
from tyranny.
—*nie*

RULE 133.—*Accusative and Dative.*

The following verbs, *accorder*, *adresser*, *annoncer*, *apporter*, *attribuer*, *avouer*, *communiquer*, *confesser*, *confier*, *conseiller*, *déclarer*, *dédier*, *démander*, *devoir*, *dire*, *donner*, *écrire*, *enseigner*, *envoyer*, *épargner*, *expliquer*, *ôter*, *pardonner*, *prédire*, *préférer*, *prendre*, *présenter*, *prêter*, *procurer*, *promettre*, *raconter*, *rapporter*, *refuser*, *rendre*, *renvoyer*, *répéter*, *reprocher*, *répondre*, *révéler*, *vendre* and a few others, govern in French the dative of the person, and the accusative of the thing. Example:

Take that sword from your son.
Otez cette épée à votre fils.

Observe, that no verb governs two accusative cases in French.

We must give children an honest liberty, and forgive
il faut enfant honnête —té pardonner
them the faults which they commit through ignorance
52 *faute* *commettre (ir) par* —
or levity. Ask nothing of your friend, but what is
légèreté demander * *ami* 128 74
right. Prefer virtue to riches. If we were allowed
juste préférer richesses *si nous était permis*
to take away from others, whatever we should think
de prendre * 102 107 *juger*
proper, the society of men would be soon overturned.
à propos *bientôt renverser*
When I see birds build their nests with (so much) art
oiseau bâtir nid tant 18 —
and skill, I ask what master has taught them
adresse demander maître enseigner c 52

mathematics and architecture? Justice gives (every body)
mathématiques — — f *donner* *chacun*
 his own. Intemperate youth transmits a wasted
le sien une — *pérée* 31 *jeunesse, transmettre* *épuisé*
 • body to (old age).
 31 *corps* *vieillesse*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the GOVERNMENT of VERBS.

It is the duty of a Christian to please God, to hurt
c'est *devoir* *Chrétien* *de plaire* 130 *nuire*
 nobody, and to do good even to his enemies. An honest
 '116 *bien* 7 *même* *ennemi* *honnête*
 man ought to endeavour to satisfy his creditors. We
devoir A, * *tâcher* *de satisfaire* 131 *créanciers*
 ought to use diligence, and not to abuse time,
devoir A * *user* 129 — 122 * — *ser* 129 *temps*
 because the life we enjoy is short. Fortune often
parce que 80 *jour* 129 *court* — f 172
 snatches away wealth from the rich; but she cannot
ôter 133 * *richesses* *riche* *mais*
 take away probity from the virtuous.
ôter 135 * *probité* *vertueux*

Solomon asked wisdom of God; God said unto
Sa— *demander* c 133 *Dieu* *dire* c
 him: Because thou hast asked this thing of me, and
lui 57 *parce que* *demander* *me* 57
 hast not asked long life, nor riches, nor the life of
que *une longue* *richesses* 7
 thy enemies, I have given thee a wise and understanding
ennemi *donner* 57 31 *intelligent*
 heart, also riches and honour. We cannot easily
cœur, et richesses 7 *honneur* *aisément* 172
 withstand the allurements of pleasure.
résister 130 *attrait* *plaisir* 4

The country is encompassed on all sides with craggy
pays *environner* *de* *côté* *de escarpé* 31,
 rocks, so that it needs few troops to defend
rocher *si bien qu'on a besoin* 129 *peu* 18' *pour*
 it; such is the fruitfulness of the soil, that it
le 57 *telle* *fertilité* *terrain*
 is filled with its own riches; and such is the plenty
se nourrir 129 *propre richesse* *telle* *quantité*

of fountains and woods; that it is watered with abundance
fontaine bois arroser 129 un grand
 dance of rivulets, and affords the diversions of hunting. I
nombre ruisseau procurer plaisir chasse
 will abuse your patience no longer. Did you think of
abuser 129 — davantage 172 penser B 130
 my business? Has he perceived your trick? Resist the
affaire s'apercevoir 129 tour résister H 130
 wicked. He will not obey his master.
méchans obéir 130

CHAPTER XIV.

OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

This mood comprehends the *present*, the *gerund*, and the *participle*. As these three forms demand particular attention, they will be explained separately.

OF THE PRESENT.

RULE 134.—*Infinitive without Preposition.*

1. A verb in the present of the infinitive has no preposition before it, when it comes after any of the following, *aimer mieux, aller, croire, daigner, déclarer, devoir, entendre, envoyer, espérer, faire, faillir, falloir, laisser, nier, oser, paraître, prétendre, pouvoir, savoir, sembler, souhaiter, soutenir, valoir mieux, voir, and vouloir*. Examples:

Deign to answer me.
daignez me répondre.

You ought to write to him.
vous devriez lui écrire.

2. A verb is also put in the present of the infinitive without any preposition, when it is the subject or the nominative case of another verb. Examples:

To speak too much is dangerous. To walk is wholesome.
trop parler est dangereux. se promener est salubre.

1. Should you be as rich as Cræsus, if you do not
quand E 37 Crésus 123
 know how to put bounds to your desires, you will al-
*savoir * * mettre borne ? désa*
 ways be poor.—2. To keep up acquaintance with vicious
172 vivre familièrement vicieux

people, is to authorise vice. 1. A wise man desires
 * *c'est* * *autoriser* m *le sage* *désirer*
 nothing, but what he can get justly, use with
 * 128 74 *c* *gagner avec justice consommer avec*
 sobriety, and distribute cheerfully.—2. To mourn without
sobriété — *buier avec joie* *pleurer sans*
 measure, is folly, not to mourn at all is insensibility.—1.
mesure c'est folie 122 *du tout c'est* — *le*
 Men ought to shun vice and stick to virtue. Those who
en devoir A *éviter* *pratiquer* * 77
 pretend to be learned, are often very ignorant. I will go
prétendre
 and see him to-morrow, If I have time.
le 57 *demain* *le temps*

RULE 135.—*Infinitive with de.**

☞ We place the preposition *de* before a verb in the infinitive mood,

1. After a substantive which so governs a verb as to be inseparably connected. Examples :

It is time to set out.
Il est temps de partir.

You have no cause to be angry with me.
Vous n'avez pas sujet d'être fâché contre moi.

You have plenty of time to consider that question. Read-
tout le examiner — *lec-*
 ing is a method of conferring with men, who, in every
ture 9 *manière conférer avec* 4* 106
 age, have been the most distinguished for their learning,
siècle pl se sont — *gués par science*
 of (becoming acquainted with) the result of their mature
connaître résultat mûre
 reflections, and of contemplating at leisure the finished pro-
réflexions — *pler à loisir meilleur*
 ductions of good authors. It is folly to think of escaping
 — *autour* 170 *folie penser à échapper*
 censure, and a weakness to (be affected) (by it). He
à 4 — * *faiblesse s'affecter en* 58
 had not the courage to resist. I discover no reason to post-
c — *résister découvrir* 121 *raison dif-*
 pone my journey.
férer voyage

* We have given more extent to this rule and the following, as it much puzzles foreigners to know when they are to employ *à* or *de* before an infinitive.

2. The English preposition *for* with a gerund after a substantive is generally expressed by *de* with the infinitive. Example:

I make you my compliments *for* having succeeded.

Je vous fais mes complimens d'avoir réussi.

I feel a great obligation to you *for* having spoken in my
avoir 47 *en*
 behalf. Receive my thanks *for* having (exerted yourself so
faveur *remerciement* *prendre tant de*
 much) for the success of my affair.
peine *succès* *affaire f*

3. After an adjective, whenever, by inverting the sentence, the infinitive may serve as a nominative to this expression, *to be* (*c'est être*), followed by the adjective, and likewise after *capable*, *incapable*, *digne*, *indigne*. Examples:

You are very clever to have succeeded so well.

Vous êtes très-adroit d'avoir si bien réussi.

We may say: to have succeeded so well *is to be* very clever;
avoir si bien réussi, c'est être très-adroit.

He is worthy of being selected for that employment.

Il est digne d'être préféré pour cet emploi.

Indeed, we are too good to listen to such nonsense.
en vérité *trop* *écouter* * 8 *pareil sottise f pl*
 That man is very curious, to ask (so many) questions. You
bien *faire* *tant* 18 —
 are very amiable in having come to pay us a visit. She is
aimable *être* *venir* * *rendre* 57 * — *te*
 too complaisant, in obliging a man who deserves it so little.
 — *ger* *mériter* 50 *si peu*

He is not able to go so far.

capable *si loin*

4. After any adjective preceded by the impersonal verbs *il est*, it is; *il semble*, it seems; *il paraît*, it appears; and after several impersonal verbs which could be expressed by *il est* with the adjectives derived from them: *as*, *il convient*, *il suffit*, *il importe*, for, *il est convenable*, *suffisant*, *important*. Examples:

It is dangerous to trust every body.

Il est dangereux de se fier à tout le monde.

It is enough to speak to him.

Il suffit de lui parler.

It is impossible *to please* every body. It (is import-
 — *à tout le monde* —
 ant) *to be* careful when one is in a public situation. It
ter soigneux 98. — 31 —
 ought *to* (be enough) for you not *to have* been punished ;
*devoir A * suffire* 57 —
 and it is unjust *to ask* a reward for an action which
injuste demander récompense —
 deserved punishment. It would be advantageous for a
mériter B punition avantageux
 nation *to be* governed by men entirely free from pas-
gouverner 7 entièrement exempt
 sions ; but it appears impossible *to find* such perfect
 — *trouver 7 si parfait* 31
 beings on the earth.
êtres sur

5. After most of the reflected verbs. Examples :

I will abstain from doing it. He repents of having said it.
Je m'abstiendrai de le faire. Il se repent de l'avoir dit.

6. After the following verbs, *accuser, affecter, avertir, blâ-
 mer, cesser, commander, conjurer, conseiller, craindre, détourner,
 défendre, différer, dire, dispenser, dissuader, écrire, empêcher,
 enjoindre, entreprendre, essayer, feindre, finir, menacer, mériter,
 négliger, offrir, omettre, ordonner, oublier, parler, permettre,
 persuader, plaindre, presser, prescrire, prier, promettre, pro-
 poser, refuser, remercier, résoudre, sommer, soupçonner, and
 supplier.* Example :

I advise you *to* stay here.
Je vous conseille de rester ici.

6. The law of nature forbids us *to do* injustice to one
*défendre * se faire tort p'*
 another.—6 God commands us *to love* our enemies, and
 11+ *commander 57 aimer ennemi*
to do them good.—6. They deserve *to be* encouraged, who
faire leur 57 bien 7 78 mériter —
 undertake *to serve* the public.—6. Never promise *to do*
entreprendre servir 120 promettre
 a thing, when it is not in your power *to do* it.—5. I pro-
chose quand pouvoir se pro-
 pose *to go* and see your mother to-night.
*poser * voir ce soir*

RULE 136.—*Infinitive with à.*

We place the preposition *à* before a verb in the infinitive mood,

1. After a substantive when we have to express something to be done. •Examples•

I have no time to lose.
Je n'ai point de temps à perdre.

I know of a house to be sold.
Je connais une maison à vendre.

I have found a fine garden to let. Is your house to
trouver louer 92
sell or to let? I have (so much) work to do that I
vendre tant 18 ouvrage faire
have not a moment to lose. You know my disposition to
perdre connaître
oblige my friends. I think I perceive in him a kind of
*—ger ami croire * apercevoir en 49 sorte f*
repugnancy to learn mathematics.
répugnance apprendre (ir) mathématiques pl

2. After a substantive, when the following verb is or may be expressed by *in* with the gerund. Example:

I have great pleasure to see you (*in seeing you*).
J'ai beaucoup de plaisir à vous voir (en vous voyant).

You know his courage in facing dangers. Your son
connaître — affronter —
spends all his time in laughing and playing. A true Christian
passer rire jouer vrai Chrétien
places all his happiness in relieving the unfortunate.
mettre (ir) soulager malheureux pl
The true hero experiences an infinite satisfaction in sacrificing
héros éprouver —ni 31 ——sacrifier
himself for his country. There is more glory in dying like
sc 57 pays 169 18 mourir comme
Nelson than in living in unmerited honours.
vivre au sein des honneurs qu'on n'a pas mérités

3. After any adjectives, except in the two cases mentioned in the preceding rule, and in case the verb express a reason for using the adjective. Examples:

I am ready to go out. This fruit is good to eat.
Je suis prêt à partir. Ce fruit est bon à manger.

o But we ought to say, I am glad to see you, *je suis aise de vous voir*, as the sentence means, I am glad *because* I see you.

Is French easy *to learn*? Is that question difficult *to resolve*? Let a prince be slow *to punish*, and quick *to reward*. Charity is ready *to sacrifice* her own interests *to recompense* those of others. One thing useful *to acquire* is to know how *to live* contented with the situation (in which) we have been placed by Divine Providence.

— —

4. After the verbs, *accoutumer, admettre, aider, aimer, apprendre, apprêter, astreindre, autoriser, borner, chercher, commencer, condamner, consister, contribuer, dépenser, destiner, disposer, donner, employer, encourager, engager, enharhar, enseigner, exercer, exciter, exhorter, habituer, hésiter, inviter, montrer, parvenir, persister, porter, préparer, pousser, réduire, renoncer, réussir, servir, songer, soumettre, tendre, viser*, and some others mentioned in the list of verbs at the end of the grammar, which govern the next verb in the infinitive with *à*. Examples :

I learn *to dance*. He likes *to play* at cards.
J'apprends à danser. *il aime à jouer aux cartes.*

True wisdom consists in *knowing* one's duty exactly, true eloquence in *speaking* of it clearly, and true piety in *doing* what we know to be good. Love *to help* the unfortunate, and *to comfort* the afflicted. A good education teaches us *to behave* well to every body. The latter part of a wise man's life is (taken up) in *curing* the false opinions and prejudices which he had contracted in the former.

— — — — —

RULE 137.—*Infinitive with de or à.**

1. *Manquer* governs the infinitive with *a* when it is affirmatively used, and with *de* when negatively. Examples :

The unfortunate never fail to complain.

Les malheureux ne manquent jamais de se plaindre.

I have failed *to* do what I had promised you.

J'ai manqué à faire ce que je vous avais promis.

2. *Tâcher* governs the infinitive with *de* when it means *to endeavour* ; and with *à* when it means *to aim at*. Examples :

I will endeavour to satisfy you.

Je tâcherai de vous satisfaire.

He aims at doing me a prejudice.

Il tâche à me porter préjudice.

3. *Tarder* governs the infinitive with *à* when it signifies *to delay*, and with *de* when it is used impersonally to signify *to long*. Examples :

He is long before he comes. I long to see him.

Il tarde bien à venir. il me tarde de le voir.

4. *Venir* governs the infinitive mood without a preposition, when it signifies *to come*: as, *venez me voir*, come and see me: with *de*, when it signifies a thing just done: as, *il vient de sortir*, he is just gone out; and with *à*, when it signifies *to happen*: as, *s'il vient à pleuvoir*, *vous serez mouillé*, if it happens to rain, you will be wet.

1. I will not fail to punish you, if you neglect to do your
manquer punir 51 manquer
 exercise.—2. You ought to endeavour to learn your
thème devoir E 134 apprendre
 lessons better. That man aims at nothing but ruining those
*leçon nuire 172 * 128 ruiner 76*
 who trust to him.—3. I long to see your mother; she
se fier 49 il me tarde voir
 delays long in coming.—4. Come and see us to-morrow.
*tarder longtemps à venir venir * 57*
 Is your father at home?—4. No, he is just (gone out). As
*92 * père chez lui venir sortir*

* *The following, commencer, continuer, contraindre, forcer, and obliger, govern the infinitive with de, rather than à, when there is nothing vague in the use of the infinitive.*

religion obliges us to love princes, so princes are obliged to
 f obliger 57 à aimer ainsi
 protect us.
 protéger

RULE 138.—*Infinitive with pour.*

☞ We use the preposition *pour* before the present of the infinitive, when we want to express the end, the design, or the cause for which a thing is done; and, in general, every time that the preposition *to* can be changed into *in order to*, without altering the sense. Example:

I am come to see you.

Je suis venu pour vous voir.

I will do every thing to, oblige you.³

Je ferai tout pour vous obliger.

He who tells a lie, (is not sensible) how great
 57 faire (ir) mensonge ni ne savoir (ir) pas quelle *
 a task he undertakes; for he may be forced to
 * tâche f entreprendre (ir) pouvoir (ir) forcer d'en
 invent twenty more to maintain that one. It is necessary to
 inventer autres soutenir le premier 135

know the human heart, to judge well of others. God has
 connaître 31 juger 172 des autres

not given us a heart to hate one another. He who has a

57 nous haïr 114 pl 77 une
 good estate, and makes use of it to promote the glory of
 belle fortune f qui usage en 57 procurer

God, and to help those who are in need, is beloved by
 soulager 77 dans le besoin aimer de

every body. Palamedes invented the game of chess, to
 tout le monde — 174 inventer c jeu échecs

serve for diversion to his soldiers, and to teach them
 servir d'amusement soldats apprendre 52

the stratagems of war.

stratagème 4 guerre

RULE 139.—*Infinitive instead of the Gerund.*

☞ We never put a gerund in French after any other preposition than *en*. Thus we put the present of the infinitive

* *Pour* is also used after the words *assez*, *trop*, *suffisant*, and the verb *suffire*

after the prepositions *de, à, pour, après, sans, par*, and every other.

You cannot go there, *without* disobeying your father.

Vous ne pouvez y aller, sans désobéir à votre père

I must begin *by* saying my lessons.

Il faut que je commence par réciter mes leçons.

After *having* terminated some affairs at home, I shall

—ner 104 chez moi

begin by *paying* some visits; and after *having* dined

commencer rendre 104 —le

with a friend of mine, I will spend the evening with you.

70 passer soirée

Nobody can be happy, *without* *practising* virtue. We

116 pratiquer

should never undertake (any thing) before *having* con-

devoir E 120 entreprendre rien avant de

sulted the will of God, and implored his divine assistance.

—ter volulté —rer 31 —

If Titus passed one day *without* doing good to (anybody).

passer B bien 7 quelqu'un

he used to say, I have lost that day.

avoir B coutume 135 perdre • journée

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the INFINITIVE with *de, à, pour, sans, &c.*

Youth cannot forbear gaming. All men are liable

les jeunes gens 134 s'empêcher 135 jouer

to mistake. Men are born to labour as birds

132 se tromper naître (ir) 138 travailler oiseau

to fly. There are persons whom we hate, others whom

138 voler Il y a personne 7 que haïr d'autres

we love, without knowing why; the one is injustice, the

aimer 139 savoir une —f

other a weakness. The desire of deserving the praises which

faiblesse désir 135 mériter louange

are given us strengthens our virtue. Giddy minds begin

98 donner 57 fortifier légers 31 esprits

many things, without ever finishing any.

plusieurs 139 en finit aucune

There are two sorts of curiosity; the one of interest

il y a sorte f 16 —tés intérêt

which incites us to desire to learn what can be useful

porter 136 désirer d'apprendre 74 utile

to us; the other of pride, which proceeds from the desire
 57 *orgueil venir désir* 139
 of knowing what others are ignorant of. The greatest
savoir 74 * *ignorent* *
 wisdom of a man consists in knowing his own follies, and in
sagesse — *ter* 136 *connaître folie*
 taking measures to (make amends) for them.
prendre 7 *mesure* 138 *réparer* * *les* 57.

Life is given us to glorify God, and to save our souls,
 138 — *fier* 138 *sauver âme*
 by good actions. In general, young men are more fond
 8 — *les jeunes gens* * 172 *aimer*
 of hearing strange things, than ready to believe
 136 *entendre étrange* 31 7 *qu'ils ne sont prompts* 136 *croire*
 them. Death is an eternal decree, to which all men ought
 57 *éternel* 31 *décret* 81 *devoir* A
 to submit. Men often think of death when it is too
 134 *se soumettre* . 172 *penser* 130 *trop*
 late; and begin to study how to live, when they
tard . *commencer* 136 *apprendre* * 136 *vivre quand*
 should learn how to die.
devoir E *apprendre* * 136 *mourir*.

People are often afraid of seeing themselves such as
on * 172 *craindre* 137 *voir* *se* 57 *tel qu'*
 they are, because they are not what they should be. No-
on *parce qu'on* 74 *on* *devoir* E
 body (is able) to write well, who has not learnt to
 116 *pouvoir* 134 *écrire* 172 *s'il* *apprendre* 136
 think well, to arrange his thoughts methodically, and to
penser 136 — *ger* *idée* * *avec méthode* 136
 express them with propriety. To be a Christian, is to
exprimer 57 — *été* 134 * *Chrétien c'est* *
 follow the precepts delivered by Jesus Christ, to love what
suivre *précepte* *donné* *Jésus* — * *aimer* 74
 he loved, and to condemn what he condemned.
 B * *condamner* 74 B

OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

RULE 140. — *Participle pres. invariable.*

☞ When a word ending in *ing*, coming from verbs, pre-
 cedes the substantive in English, it goes after it in French,
 and is always declinable like an adjective. Examples :

A • convincing proof.
Une preuve convainquante.

Charming girls.
Des filles charmantes.

2. When a word ending in *ing*, coming from verbs, goes after the substantive in English, it is a part. pres., and invariable in French. Example:

A proof convincing every body.

Une preuve convainquant tout le monde — not *convainquante*.

This distinction is an invariable rule by which one may easily know when a part. pres. is declinable or invariable. It qualifies in the first case as an adjective; and in the second it denotes an action as a verb.

1. The loadstone has *surprising* effects. — 1. Your sister
aimant *surprenant* *effet* *i*
 is a *charming* girl. — 2. The soldiers of Alexander, *forgetting*
charmant *oublier*
 their wives and children, looked upon the Persian gold
regarder *B* *** *de la Perse* *31* or
 as their plunder. — 1. *Lowing* oxen, and *bleating* sheep,
butin *mugissant* *bœufs* *bélant* *brebis* *pl f*
 came in flocks; they could not find stables enough to
B *fouler* *on* *B* *trouver* *étable* *18* *138*
 shelter them.
mettre à couvert *57*

2. The Asiatics, remembering the dignity of Berenice,
—tigue se souvenir *129* *Béré* —
 and pitying her hard fortune, sent her aid. — 1.
avoir pitié *130* *mauvais* — *envoyer* *c* *52* *secours* *7*

As on the margin of a brook a zephyr, with a cooling
comme *bord* *ruisseau* *rafraîchissant*
 breeze, revives the languishing flocks, which the burning
halcine *f ranimer* *languissant* *troupeau* *brûlant*
 heat of the summer consumes, so this speech allayed
chaleur *été* — *mer* *ainsi* *discours* *apaiser* *2*
 the goddess's despair.
déesse *17* *désespoir*

ROLE 141. — Indicative used instead of the Part. pres.

When the verbal noun in *ing* refers to a substantive or a pronoun which is not in the nominative case, it must be rendered in French by the present or the imperfect of the indicative mood, with the relative pronoun *qui* before it. Example:

I have seen my brother playing in the garden.
J'ai vu mon frère qui jouait dans le jardin.
 not, *j'ai vu mon frère jouant.*

Clouds and fogs (are formed) from the vapours *arising*
nuage brouillard se former vapeur s'élever A
 from the earth. Variety of colours depends on the position
—été 4 couleur dépendre de —
 and order of the objects *diversifying* the light in the reflection
ordre objet diversifier A lumière réflexion
 of their rays. Alexander, at the point of death, asked his
rayon sur — mourir 133
 friends *standing* about him if they thought they could
se tenir B auprès de croire (ir) B 83 • G •
 find a king like him. Men act most frequently from motives
comme 49 agir souvent par motif 7
arising from present circumstances.
venir A 31 circonstance

RULE 142.—by expressed by *en*.

☞ The preposition, *by*, followed by the verbal noun ending in *ing*, is most commonly expressed in French by *en* with the gerund. Example :

We have obtained peace *by* making great sacrifices.
Nous avons obtenu la paix en faisant de grands sacrifices—
 not, *par faisant de grands sacrifices.*

By (taking revenge), a man is but equal with his enemy;
se venger 128 égal à ennemi
by passing it over, he is his superior. You may easily
*pardonner lui * lui * supérieur*
 get praise, *by* complying (with the) wishes of the
obtenir louanges 7 vous conformer au désir
 people you converse with, and *by* preferring others to
personne 83 —ser 174 préférer
 yourself. If you have rashly engaged to do a
imprudemment s'engager à
 thing which ought not to be done, do not make
*devoir A se faire * rendre H le*
 bad, worse *by* persisting to do it. The grace of
mal plus grand —ter 136 la 57
 God works upon us, *by* suggesting good thoughts and keeping
opérer en suggérer • 8 pensée 177 éloigner
 off bad ones.
** les mauvaises **

OF THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

RULE 143. — Cases in which the Participle past is declinable.

1. A part. past is always declinable in French as an adjective, when it comes after a substantive which it qualifies. Examples :

A book well written.
Un livre bien écrit.

A letter well written.
Une lettre bien écrite.

2. When it comes after any tense of the verb *être*, not holding the place of *avoir*, or after *paraître* or *sembler*. Examples :

My brother is esteemed.
Mon frère est estimé.

My sister is esteemed.
Ma sœur est estimée.

He appears afflicted.
Il paraît affligé.

She seems afflicted.
Elle semble affligée.

3. In the compound tenses of reflected verbs, when the second pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, and *vous*, are in the accusative, which is always the case when the reflected verb is not followed by another accusative. So we must say,

She has wounded herself; *elle s'est blessée* ;
because *se* is in the accusative: but we should say,

She has wounded her foot; *elle s'est blessé le pied* ;
because *se* is in the dative, and stands for *à elle-même*.

4. In compound tenses with *avoir* and *être*, when the accusative governed by that tense goes before the auxiliary, the participle must agree with it in gender and number. Examples :

The woman I have seen is very handsome.
La femme que j'ai vue est très-belle.

The rules which I have learnt are easy.
Les règles que j'ai apprises sont faciles.

The part. past *vue* agrees with *femme*, and *apprises* with *règles* ; because if you ask me, whom have I seen? my answer will be a handsome woman ; what have I learnt ? — easy rules.

2. He has arrived from France. • She has arrived from Spain.
être arriver • *Espagne*

—1. A noble, but confused thought, is a diamond covered
31 *confus pensée* • *diamant couvrir*

with dust.—1. Alms given without ostentation acquire
de poussière aumône f — *acquérir (ir)*
 new merit.—2. Letters and writing have been invented to
in mérite m f *écriture* *inventer* 138
 speak to the eye.—2. The wicked are always tormented by
pl *méchans* *tourmenter*
 their own conscience.—2. Virtuous people are esteemed, and
 — *vertueux personne f* *estimer*
 the impious despised.—3. My sisters (have been much amused)
impie m sont mépriser 172 *s'amuser*
 in your company.—3. The accounts (have not been
dans — *guie* *compte m* *se*
 found) right.—3. Both armies have fought with the greatest
trouver juste *les deux armée se battre (ir)*
 intrepidity.—4. The letter which I have received is long.—4.
intrepidité *lettre f* *recevoir* —
 The faults he has committed are pardonable.—4. The house
faute f 83 *commettre (ir)* *pardonnable*
 which I have bought is new.—4. The horses which you have
acheter *neuf*
 seen, are very good.—4. The women whom I have
vendre 57
 seen are young and handsome.

RULE 144.—Cases in which the Participle past is invariable.

1. The participle after the auxiliary is invariable when the accusative follows the compound tense; when the verb is impersonal, or in its nature can have no accusative case. Examples:

I have seen a handsome woman. I have learnt a rule.
J'ai vu une belle femme. J'ai appris une règle.

There arose a dispute. The days that I have lived.
Il s'est élevé une dispute. Les jours que j'ai vécu.

2. In applying the foregoing rules, we must discriminate between an accusative governed by the compound tense and one governed by a verb following the participle, as in this example:

The house which I advised you to buy.
La maison que je vous ai conseillé d'acheter.

The compound tense *ai conseillé* does not govern the preceding accusative *que*, but the verb *acheter* does; and the answer to advised *what?* is *you*, in the dative case, for *to you*; adding, to buy the said house.

These two rules, if well understood, will remove one of the greatest difficulties of the French language.

1. Happy the princes, who have always used their
heureux *employer*
 power for the good of their people. Demetrius being in-
pouvoir *bien* *peuple* *pl* *in-*
 formed that the Athenians had overthrown his statues; they
former *B* *détruire* *statue*
 have not, replied he, overthrown the valour which has
répliqua-t-il *valeur*
 caused them (to be erected) (to me). Your sisters have
fait 57 *ériger* *me* 57
 made great progress in French. We have dined to-day
faire 8 *progress* *dans le* *dîner*
 sooner than usual. I have written a letter to my father.
plus tôt *à l'ordinaire* *écrire*
 We have played much to-day.
jouer. 172

2. I must finish the letter which I have begun to write
il faut que 157 *lettre* *f* *commencer*
 The rules which I had advised you to learn are useful. —
conseiller 135 *apprendre* *utile*
 (How many) men commit the same faults which they
que d'hommes commettre (*ir*) *faute* *f*
 had resolved to avoid.
B résoudre (*ir*) *d'éviter*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the PAR- TICIPLES PRESENT and PAST.

Philip sent deputies to the Scythians desiring a
Philippe envoyer c député 7 *Scythe* *pour demander*
 part of the expenses of the siege; the Scythians, alleging
partie *frais* *—m* *alléguer* 140
 the barrenness of their land, replied, that having no riches
stérilité *terre répondre c* *richesse*
 sufficient to satisfy so great a king, they thought it
—sant 138 *—faire* *roi* *croire* (*ir*) *B* *
 more unfit to pay but a part, than to refuse the
moins *convenable* *de payer* 128 *partie* 40 *—ser*
 whole. Groveling geniuses never attain the sublime.
105 *rampant* 140 *génie* 120 *s'élever* *a* • —
 This actor performs with charming taste and
acteur représenter *un* 27 *charmant* 140 *gout*
 K 6

lignity. As a flower blowing in the morning.
—té de même qu' fleur 141 s'épanouir matin répand
 (sweetly perfumes) the fields around the whole day,
un doux parfum dans champ d'alentour jour
 but fading towards the evening, *lesq's* its lively colour,
 140 *se flétrir vers soir perdre* *vif 30 couleur*
 languishes and droops its beautiful head; so was the son of
languir panacher beau tête f ainsi B
 Ulysses brought to the gates of death.
— arriver porte

All will respect the magistrates who, forgetting
tout le monde respecter A . magistrat 140 oublier
 their own interest, observing the law, favouring virtue, and
—ver loi favoriser
 restraining vice, seek the welfare of their country. The
reprimer m chercher bien pays
 fleet destined to the siege of Troy was composed of 1300
flotte f —ner 143 — Troie B —ser 143
 ships. The Cardinal Richelieu represented to the king
de représenter c roi
 the great pains he had taken and the services he
peine f 83 B 143 prendre (ir) —m
 had done to the state. The books which I have bought
B 143 rendre état livre m 143 acheter
 are well bound. The watch which I have sold is a new
** relier montre f 143 vendre * neuf*
 one. We acquire a greater honour by defending others
** on acquérir (ir) honneur 142 défendre*
 than by accusing them.
accuser

OF THE CONCORD OF VERBS.

RULE 115.—*The Verb agrees with its Nominative Case.*

All the personal verbs agree in French with their nominative case in number and person. Examples :

I speak, thou speakest, he speaks.
Je parle, tu parles, il parle, &c.

All substantives are of the third person; thus a verb must always be put in the third person singular or plural, when it has a substantive for its nominative case. Examples :

The master teaches. The scholars study.
Le maître enseigne—singular. Les écoliers étudient—plural.

A verb is always put in the third person plural when it applies to two or more substantives in the nominative case, though they should be both in the singular. Example

Demosthenes and Cicero were two great orators.
Démosthène et Cicéron étaient deux grands orateurs.

I read the Bible. Thou speakest too fast. He writes
lire (ir) Bible trop vite écrire (ir)
 well. We are all mortal. You are young. They are happy.
mortel jeune heureux
 My brother and sister will dance. Virtue and vice have dif-
63 danser m
 ferent consequences.

31 *effet 7*

RULE 146.—*The Verb with Nominatives of different Persons.*

If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first, in preference to the other two, and with the second, in preference to the third; and is preceded by one of these two pronouns, *nous* and *vous*. Examples:

My brother and I shall go thither.
*Mon frère et moi nous *irons.*
 You and he were speaking of us.
Vous et lui vous parliez de moi.

as if it were, my brother and I we shall go there; and so on for others.

You and I will play. You and they were of the same
vous jouer eux B
 opinion. You or your father could lend me the two hun-
père 165 E prêter
 dred pounds I want. You or your brother have
cent livre dont j'ai besoin
 taken my book. Lewis the fourteenth having said
prendre (ir) livre m Louis 11
 the earl of Grammont; I know your age, the bishop
comte savoir (ir) évêque
 of Senlis, who is eighty-four years of age, told me that
*avoir * * 153*
 you have studied in the same class; that bishop, Sire, re-
étudier ré-

* y is always omitted before *irai*, *irais*, on account of the cacophony.

plied the earl, does not speak right, for neither he nor I
pliquer 150 *accuser juste* ni 119 45
have ever studied.

RULE 147.—*The Verb after the relative Pronoun qui.*

The relative pronoun *qui* is of every person: thus, the verb which comes after it agrees in number and person with the noun or pronoun antecedent. Example:

It is we who have said it.

C'est nous qui l'avons dit—not, *c'est nous qui l'a dit*.

It was I who destroyed the fortifications of that city. It
ce c détruire — ville ce
was you who refused my request. It is you, or your
c —ser c requête f, ce
brother who have taken my book. It was you who
146 *prendre (ir) livre ce c*
came last night. It is they who have done it. It is I
venir hier, qu soir 171 faire le 57 ce
who have seen him. It is my brothers who have dis-
voir (ir) le 171 do.
covered the plot. It will be you who shall go there.
couvrir complot aller

CHAPTER XV.

OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. This mood comprehends the present tense, the imperfect, the preterite, the future, and the conditional, with the same number of compound tenses.

RULE 148.—*Use of the Present Tense.*

1. The present tense of the indicative mood is used in French to express a thing present. Example:

see a man who sleeps.
Je vois un homme qui dort.

2. A thing which we do habitually, though not in the moment in which we speak. Example:

I walk every day.
Je me promène tous les jours.

3. A thing of eternal truth. Example :

God^s is merciful.
Dieu est miséricordieux.

4. A future not distant. Example :

I go^o to-night to the play.
Je vais ce soir à la comédie.

History is the picture of times and men, and consequently the image of inconstancy and caprice. The rainbow (is formed) by the beams of the sun reflected by drops of rain. I (set out) for France to-morrow, if it be fine weather. I learn French, and my sister Italian. I go to-night to the opera. God is immutable. I (set out) to-morrow for Paris.

histoire tableau temps 21 consé-
quemment —ce —m arc-
en-ciel se former de rayon soleil réfléchir 143
goutte de pluie • partir 5 demain
faire (ir) • temps apprendre (ir)
Italian ce soir immuable

RULE 149.—*Imperfect of the Indicative.*

1. The *imperfect* is used to express a past but habitual action, during a time not specified, and then it answers to the English expression *I used to do*. Example :

Cæsar was a great general.
César était un grand général.

2. The *imperfect* expresses also a present with respect to something past, and then it exactly answers to the English expression *I was doing*. Example :

I was dining when I heard that sad news.
Je dinais quand j'appris cette fâcheuse nouvelle.
 not, j'étais dinant, nor je dinai quand, &c.

1. Orpheus, according to the fable, mingled so agreeably his voice with his lute, that he stopped the course of rivers, calmed tempests, attracted the most savage beasts, and (gave motion) to the trees and rocks.—2. I was writing you a letter when I was informed of your arrival.—2. What

*Orphée selon * —f mêler agréablement*
voix à luth arrêter • cours rivière
calmer tempête attirer • 44 sauvage bête f
*émouvoir (ir) * • arbre rocher 21 écrire*
 57 c —mer arrivée que

were you doing this morning in my room when I found
faire ce matin chambre f y ai trouvé
 you.—2. I was doing my exercise.
thème m

1. Alfred was a great king; he possessed all the virtues of
roi posséder
 a wise man, which were so well regulated, that each prevented
sage 81 si réglé l'une empêcher
 the other from exceeding its proper bounds; he knew
sortir de borne savoir (ir)
 how to unite the most enterprising spirit with the coolest
** * unir 44 entreprenant 31 esprit à plus grande*
 moderation, and the most severe justice with the greatest
31 — f à
 lenity. The walls of Babylon were two hundred feet high
douceur mur 36
 and fifty broad.

RULE 150.—*Preterite of the Indicative.*

☞ The *preterite* of the indicative is used to express a particular fact or event, happening but once or very seldom in a time quite past, and at the distance of at least a day. Examples:

My father died yesterday. I saw the king last year.
Mon père mourut hier. L'année passée je vis le roi.
 not, *mon père mourait hier*; nor, *je voyais le roi l'année passée*.

This tense is by some grammarians called the *historical tense*, because it is chiefly used in historical relations.

Cæsar ascended to the empire by very sanguinary means.
parvenir m 31 — naire voie 7
 Alexander, with forty thousand men, attacked Darius who
Alexandre attaquer

had six hundred thousand; he gave him battle twice,
en 149 livrer lui 57 bataille deux

defeated him, and made his mother, wife, and daughters
fois défaire de 57 faire 63 femme
 prisoners. Cato killed himself lest he should fall into the
*prisonnières tuer se 57 de peur de * tomber entre*
 hands of Cæsar.
main César

Hardly was Cæsar entered into the senate, when the con-
à peine 92 entrer s'ent que
 spirators threw themselves upon him, and pierced him
— leur jeter se 57 lui percer le 57

with daggers. Marius *was* (ill treated) by fortune; however,
de coups de poignards maltraiter de — f cependant
 he did not lose his courage.
perdre

RULE 151.— *Future and Conditional.*

1. The *future* is used to express a time not yet come.
 Example:

I shall soon go to France.
J'irai bientôt en France.

2. The *conditional* is used to express something to be done or to take place with dependence upon a condition. Example:

We should be happy, if we knew how to fix our desires.
Nous serions heureux, si nous savions fixer nos desirs.

3. The English often put the verb in the *present*, after the conjunctions *when, as soon as, or after*, when they want to express a thing not yet come; in such cases, the *future* must be used in French. Example:

I will play as soon as I have finished my exercise.
Je jouerai aussi-tôt que j'aurai fini mon thème.
 not, *aussi-tôt que j'ai fini.*

3. As soon as my education is finished, I shall go to Italy, to visit the Roman antiquities. — 3. When you are ready, we will go and (take a walk). — 3. The Lord said unto Cain, who had killed his brother Abel: When thou tillest the ground, it shall not yield unto thee; a fugitive and vagabond thou shalt be on the earth.*
Italie 138 voir Romain — té quand
*prêt aller * nous promener Seigneur*
à Caïn B tuer frère
*labourer terre proaire rien * — ti*
sur terre.

1. There will always be wars among men, as long as they are ambitious. — 2. I would have lent him fifty pounds if I had known he wanted it. — 1. I hope you will not refuse me the favour I beg of you.
169 7 entre tant que
3 — tieux prêter cinquante livre
G savoir qu'il en avait besoin espérer
*— ser faveeur 83 demander **

* That is, thou shalt be fugitive, &c.

RULE 152.—*Neither future nor conditional after si.*

1. After the particle *si*, if, we use in French the present of the indicative instead of the future, and the imperfect instead of the preterite or conditional used in English. Example:

He will become a learned man, if he will study.
Il deviendra savant s'il étudie.
 not *s'il étudierait.*

2. We use, however, the future and conditional in French as in English, after the particle *si*, if, when it signifies *whether*. Example:

I do not know if he will come, or if he would come.
Je ne sais pas s'il viendra, ou s'il viendrait.

1. If your person were as gigantic as your desires, the whole world could not contain you; your right hand would touch the east, and your left the west (at the) same time; and, if you should have conquered all mankind, you would attempt to subdue nature; said (the Scythian ambassador to Alexander).
personne 37 —lesque désir 31
entier monde contenir 31 droit f
orient gauche occident en même temps
conquérir (ir) la terre
entreprendre (ir) 135 soumettre — l'ambassadeur
des Scythes Alexandre

2. I do not know if my father would come, if you were to invite him.—1. If I would sell my horse, I could have forty pounds for him.—1. If you would study well, your master would love you, and you would make great progress.—1. I should become rich, if I would continue my trade.—2. I do not know if my brother will consent to it.
savoir (ir) venir en cas
que vous l'invitassiez vendre cheval
pouvoir (ir) E livre en 57
étudier aimer
faire (ir) progrès 8 devenir riche
—nuer commerce m
—tir. y

RULE 153.—*Compound of the Present.*

The *compound of the present*, or *preterite indefinite*, is used in French to express a thing past in a period not yet elapsed, or at a time which is not specified. A period is not yet elapsed when the word *this* is or could be prefixed to it. Example:

I learnt my lesson this morning.

J'ai appris ma leçon ce matin.

not *j'appris*, nor *j'apprenais*.

I breakfasted this morning at eight o'clock, and I dined
déjeûner matin huit heures dîner
 at three in the afternoon. When did you learn your
heures après-midi avoir apprendre (ir)

lesson? I learnt it after dinner. Why did you not learn it
leçon 143 143 *la*

before? because I was sick all the morning. Have you
auparavant parce que malade matinée

done your exercise? No, I have not done it yet; but I will
thème encore 172

do it to-night. Where did you walk out to-day?
*ce soir où se promener * aujourd'hui ?*

I have not walked out because it was not fine weather.

* *parce que 179 B beau temps*

RULE 154.—*Other Compound Tenses.*

1. The *compound of the imperfect* or *pluperfect* is used to express a thing which has happened before another which is also past; but it is employed when the previous action was habitual, or when nothing points out the approximation of the two actions. Example:

I had done my task, when she came to see us.

J'avais fait ma tâche, quand elle vint nous voir.

2. The *compound of the preterite* or *preterite anterior* is used to express an action past before another action in a time entirely elapsed, but it points out the end or the approximation of the two actions. Example:

As soon as the king had spoken, every body obeyed.

Aussi-tôt que le roi eut parlé, tout le monde obéit.

1. Yesterday I had finished my work before six o'clock.
ouvrage. heure

2. As soon as I had dined, I (went out). He had no sooner
dès que sortir 150

acted in that manner than he repented. When, *he had*
aggr de la sorte s'en repentir 150
 perceived her error, she was quite ashamed.—1. Darius
s'apercevoir de 150 108 *honteux*
 in his defeat being obliged to drink water full of mud;
défaite f —ge de boire 7 plein boue
 assured his soldiers that he had never drunk with more
assurer 150 *dat. soldat plus*
 pleasure. The king had named an admiral which he
18 plaisir nommer amiral on lui
 heard of you.—2. As soon as the parliament had voted
parler c aussi-tôt que parlement voter
 against the continuation of the war, the peace was made.
contre — guerre paix se faire c

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the TENSES
 of the INDICATIVE MOOD. :

William the Conqueror was one of the greatest generals
Guillaume Conquérant 149
 of his age; in him (were united) activity, vigilance, and
siècle m en s'unir 149 —*té* 9 —
 intrepidity; he was strict in his discipline, and kept his
—té 149 *strict lu — f tenir* 149
 soldiers in perfect obedience, yet he preserved their af-
dans un parfait obéissance *conserver* 150
 fection: he (was perfect master of) the military art; his
— 149 posséder à fond militaire 31 —
 aspect was noble, his constitution robust, and nobody but
— 149 — — —te personne que
 himself could bend his bow.
lui ne pouvoir (ir) bander arc

Idomeneus, one of the bravest kings of the Greeks, on
Idoménée 31 *roi Grec sur*
 the point of being shipwrecked, made a vow to sacrifice
— 135 faire naufrage 150 * *vowu* 135 *sacrifier*
 to Neptune the first object he should meet on his arrival in
— objet renaitre à arrivée
 his country, should he escape the present danger; he
pays si 152 *échapper au* 31 —
 was unhappy enough to meet with his own son; he
assez malheureux 138 *rencontrer **
 killed him, and was for that action obliged to quit his
150 le pour de quitter
 country.
pays

Cæsar and Cato had the same degree of glory, but
Cæsar Cato 149 degré gloire
 they acquired it by different ways; Cæsar was celebrated for
acquérir 154 • 31 • 7 voic 149 célèbre par
 his generosity, Cato for his great integrity; in the former, the
générosité • intégrité premier
 miserable found a sanctuary, in the latter the guilty
trouver 149 refuge in dernier coupable
 met with certain destruction: Cæsar aimed at the so-
*trouver 149 * un 31 — aspirer 149*
 vereign command, and desired new wars to display
30 commandement 149 nouveau guerre 138 déployer
 his military talents; as for Cato, his only study was
31 — quant à seul étude f 149
 moderation, a regular conduct, and a rigorous severity;
— régulier 31 conduite f rigoureux 31
 he contended in bravery with the brave, in modesty with
rivaliser 149 en bravoure • — modestie
 the modest, and in integrity with the upright.
homme — • juste

After Alexander had conquered Porus, he not only
après que 154 vaincre (ir) non-seulement
 spared his life, but allowed him to retain his
épargner 150 vie permettre (ir) lui 57 135 garder
 title of king, and enlarged his dominions. As soon as
titre m roi agrandir 150 état aussi-tôt que
 the Israelites had passed the Red Sea they forgot the
154 passer Rouge 31 Mer oublier 150
 miracle that had saved them.
— m sauver 143 les 57

CHAPTER XVI.

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

RULE 155.—*Superlatives and Indeterminate Pronouns govern the Subjunctive.*

1. The superlative governs the next verb in the subjunctive, when that verb is preceded by *qui* or *que*, and no genitive case. Example:

He is the most learned man I know in London.
Il est le plus savant que je connaisse à Londres.

RULE 156.—*Verbs which always govern the Subjunctive Mood, after the Conjunction que.*

A verb preceded by the conjunction *que* is put in the subjunctive after the verbs which express any doubt, wish, command, order, fear, ignorance, or any affection of the mind; and particularly after the following, *appréhender, avoir peur, craindre, défendre, désirer, douter, être bien aise, être content, être fâché, être surpris, ignorer, nier, ordonner, prier, se réjouir, souhaiter, and vouloir.* Examples :

I will be obeyed. I doubt whether he will come.
Je veux qu'on m'obéisse. Je doute qu'il vienne.

Who doubts that true riches (are placed) in virtue?
douter 30 richesse ne consister 162 dans.

The Egyptians did not doubt that certain plants and animals
Egyptien 149 27 plante f

were divinities. In the mean time Eucharis said to Te-
*ne 162 divinité 7 En * temps — 150 Té-*
lemachus, in a jeering tone: Are you not afraid that
lémaque d' moqueur 31 ton craindre

Mentor will chide you for coming a hunting without
— ne gronder 57 de venir à la chasse sans

him? Almost all the East ordered divine honours to be
presque Orient 150 que 31 7 honneur 162

rendered, and temples to be built to Jason; but many
rendre que 7 — bâtir à — mais

years after, Parmenio ordered them (to be pulled down),
Parménion faire 150 les abattre 134

lest the name of (any one) should be greater than
de peur que 158 nom quelqu'un ne

that of Alexander.

76 *Alexandre*

RULE 157.—*Impersonal Verbs which govern the Subjunctive.*

A verb preceded by *que* is always put in the subjunctive after the impersonals, *il faut, il est juste, il est injuste, il est fâcheux, il importe*, and in general after all the impersonal verbs, not mentioned in rule 160. Example:

You must do it.
Il faut que vous le fassiez.

It is an unjust thing, that those who deserve well of their
** injuste mériter*
country are not rewarded. It concerns the public that the
pays 162 récompenser 143 importe du

wicked be punished. There is no state which *can* be
méchans punir 169 *état ne pouvoir (ir)*
 be utterly overthrown by civil wars. It (is enough) that
totalemt détruire *guerre suffire*
 we do not neglect any thing that can contribute to
 98 *négliger rien de ce qui pouvoir (ir)* — *buer*
 the success of an undertaking; disappointments ought not
succès entreprise les contre-temps devoir 131
 to lessen the merit of it. If you (are desirous) of being
diminuer mérite en 57 *vouloir (ir)* 134
 esteemed, you must be obliging, polite, and affable to
estimer il faut que vous — geant poli — 34
 every body.
tout le monde

RULE 158.—*Conjunctions which govern the Subjunctive.*

A verb is always put in the subjunctive after the following conjunctions, *àin que, à moins que, avant que, bien que, de crainte que, de peur que, en cas que, encore que, jusqu'à ce que, loin que, malgré que, notwithstanding que, non que, non pas que, pourvu que, pour que, quoique, sans que, soit que, and supposé que.* Example:

I shall be ready before they arrive.
Je serai prêt avant qu'ils soient venus.

(Keep a strict watch) over all your senses, lest *
veillez avec soin sur sens de peur que
 intemperance (get the master of) you, and lest your senses be
 — *maîtriser vous* 57. *que ser-*
 the instruments of polluting your soul. Although Antio-
vir d' — pour souiller. âme quoique
 chus approved of Hannibal's advice, yet he would
 — *approuver* Annibal* 17 *avis vouloir (ir)* 8
 not act according to it, lest the victory should be
agir en conséquence de peur que victoire
 attributed to Hannibal, not to him.
et non pas à lui

We despise the world when we know it thoroughly,
mépriser monde in connaître parfaitement
 but we give ourselves to it before we know it, and the
livrer nous y 58 *avant que le*

* *À moins que, de crainte que, and de peur que, require the particle ne before the next verb, as we have said before.*
 Rule 127.

heart is lost, before reason has enlightened it. You
cœur perdre avant que raison 162 *éclairer* le 57
 will learn very well, provided you take pains.
apprendre pourvu que prendre de la peine
 with study (so much), that I hope I shall speak French.
étudier tant espérer Français
 before it is long, though I am convinced that it is
longtemps quoique convaincre (ir) ce
 a difficult language.
difficile 31 *langue* f

VERBS and CONJUNCTIONS which govern sometimes the
 INDICATIVE and sometimes the SUBJUNCTIVE.

RULE 159.—Verbs which govern the Subjunctive in one sense,
 and the Indicative in another.

The following verbs, *assurer, avouer, conclure, croire, déclarer, dire, espérer, juger, oublier, penser, prouver, prévoir, promettre, soutenir, savoir, supposer, voir*, and in general all those which express belief or certainty, govern most commonly the subjunctive, when they are used interrogatively, negatively, or conditionally; but they govern the indicative in other circumstances. Examples :

- I think she will do it, if she can.

Je crois qu'elle le fera, si elle peut—*affirmat. indic.*

Croyez-vous qu'elle le fasse?—*interrog. subj.*

Je ne crois pas qu'elle le fasse—*negativ. subj.*

Si vous croyez, qu'elle le fasse—*condit. subj.*

I think my father will come. I do not think he will
croire (ir) *venir*

come. Do you think he will come? I perceive that you have
s'apercevoir

deceived me. If I find you frequent bad company,
trouver s'apercevoir 83 *fréquenter* 8 *—gnie*

you will lose my friendship. I hope they will make
perdre amitié espérer on faire

peace this year. Do you hope they will make peace? Let us
paix année on

go, if you think it will be fine weather. I thought this
partir 179 *croire* 153

morning it would be fine weather, but now I do not think
—matin à prés

it is, because it begins to rain.

cela être 136

RULE 160.—*Impersonal Verbs which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive.*

The impersonal verbs with an adjective denoting evidence, certainty, or probability, such as, *il est clair, il est certain, il est probable, il est évident, &c.* govern the subjunctive when they are used in a negative, interrogative, or conditional manner, and the indicative, when they are not. Examples:

It is certain that he is in the wrong.

Il est certain qu'il a tort—indic.

Il n'est pas certain qu'il ait tort—subj.

Est-il certain qu'il ait tort?—subj.

S'il est certain qu'il ait tort—subj.

It is certain that unforeseen evils are more grievous than others. *imprévu 31 mal fâcheux*
 It is not certain that a man can be happy in a desert. *autre certain*
 It is evident, that a nation cannot be happy under a tyrannical government. *désert*
 It is not certain that a republic is the best government for a great nation. *sous république f. meilleur*
 It is probable he will do it. It is probable she will do it. It is not probable they will do it.

RULE 161.—*Conjunctions which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive.*

These four conjunctions, *de manière que, de sorte que, tellement que, sinon que*, govern the indicative, when the sentence positively affirms that such a thing is or will be; and the subjunctive, when the thing in question is not certain, but rather wished for. Examples:

I have nothing to tell you except that I do my duty.

Je n'ai rien à vous dire sinon que je fais mon devoir—indic.

I ask nothing except that you do your duty.

Je ne demande rien sinon que vous fassiez votre devoir—subj.

Employ all the days of your youth, so that you may fulfil honourably all the duties of your station. Your
employer H jeunesse, de manière que
remplir honorablement devoirs état
 one conducts himself in such a manner that he gains general
*se conduire de * * manière gagner 31*

esteem. I ask nothing from you except that you *estime f* *demandez* 118 * *vous* 57 *sinon que*
 your task, and obey your master. I have nothing
tâche f *que vous obéir à.* *rien*
 tell you, except that I have done, and shall always do
à 57 *sinon que* *que je*
 what religion commands all Christians.
 74 *der à* *Chrétien*

RULE 162.—Which Tense must be used.

✎ A verb required to be in the subjunctive mood by any of the preceding rules, is usually put in the *present*, when the time of its action is present or future; and in the *preterite*, when that time is past or only conjectural. Examples :

I do not think they will write to-day.
Je ne crois pas qu'ils écrivent aujourd'hui—future.
 I did not think they would write to your sister.
Je ne croyais pas qu'ils écrivissent à votre sœur—past:

A man ought to conduct himself so honourably, that no
devoir A se conduire si 121
 motives should be able to induce him to an action un-
motif pouvoir (ir) — *in-*
 worthy of his rank. The apostles received the gift of
digne rang apôtre recevoir c don
 tongues, that they might preach the gospel to all
langue afin que pouvoir (ir) prêcher évangile
 the nations of the earth. If you are assiduous and
 — *terre* — *du et que vous*
 take pains, you will succeed. Before I form any
 96 *de la peine réussir, avant que former*
 plan, I shall wait till things have a more tranquil ap-
 — *attendre que* 31 *ap-*
 pearance. David (gave orders) that his subjects should be
parence — ordonner c qu'on sujet faire le
 numbered*, which excited the displeasure of God.
dénombrement de ce qui —ter c déplaisir
 Do you think they will do it? Did you think they would do
penser B
 it? I did not think they would come to-day.
 B

* That is : that they should make the survey of his subjects.

RULE 163.—*Compound Tenses of the Subjunctive.*

When it is meant to express an action past in a time anterior to the action expressed by the first verb, the second verb is usually put in the compound of the present of the subjunctive in French, when the first verb is in the present or the future in English; but it is put in the compound of the preterite, when the first verb is in any other tense. Examples.

I fear they have said it.

Je crains qu'ils ne l'aient dit—present tense.

I did not fear they had said it.

Je ne craignais pas qu'ils l'eussent dit—preterite.

I doubt whether any philosophers have ever known the origin of the winds. I wonder you have refused the employment that has been offered you. I never could have thought that the Emperor would have submitted to such hard conditions. Garrick was perhaps the best tragic actor which the world has ever produced.

douter que s —phés . jamais
—ne vent être surpris —ser
place 143 offrir 57 pouvoir 167
penser Empereur se soumettre (ir) si
dur 31 —7 .c peut-être tragique
acteur 155 monde m produire

RULE 164.—*Cases in which the Preterite of the Subjunctive is used.*

The second verb is always put in the preterite of the subjunctive, or its compound, when there is any conditional expression, though the first be in the present or future. Example:

I do not think they would have come, if I had not gone to fetch them.

Je ne crois pas qu'ils fussent venus si je n'avais été les chercher.

It is not probable you could have obtained the consent of your father, if I had not spoken in your favour.

— 83 obtenir con-
sement B faveur
 I do not think that the French revolution would ever have happened, had Lewis the Sixteenth vigorously opposed its arrival, if Louis Seize had not been so vigorously opposed.

croire (ir) 31 ré—
être arriver si Louis Seize 172 se fût op-

posed the first innovations? Do you think your brothers
posé *ad.* *—* *penser*
 would learn French, should I teach them?
apprendre (ir) *si* *le* *enseigner* *B* *leur* 57

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the Use of the
 SUBJUNCTIVE.

There is no grief which length of time does not
 169 *point* *chagrin* 18 * *
 lessen. Erostratus set on fire the temple of Diana, that
diminuer *—le* *mettre* *c* *le* *feu* *à* *—m* *Diane* *afin*
 his name might be spread through the whole
que 158 *nom* *se* *répandre* *par*
 earth. Philosophers are composed of flesh and bones as well
—phé 143 *—ser* *chair* *os* *aussi-bien*
 as other men; and, however sublimated, their theories
que 109 *—* *élevé* *théorie*
 may be; they are liable to frailties, as well as other mortals.
— *snjet* *faiblesse* 7
 The bark of trees was used to write upon before paper
de l'écorce *arbre* 98 *se* *servir* *B* *pour* * 158 *papier*
 was invented.
—ter

• The Emperor Caligula wished that all the citizens of
empereur *—* *désirer* *B* 156 *citoyen*
 Rome had but one neck, that he might behead them
 128 *—* *cou* *m* *afin* *que* 158 *pouvoir* *décapiter*
 all at once. Whatever riches we may have, and however
à *la* *fois* 155 *richesse* .
 unsuccessful may be our literary productions, we are never
malheureux *littéraire* 31 *—* 120
 contented with our fortune, nor dissatisfied with our under-
content 32 *—* *mécontent* 32 *es-*
 standing. A man who has no friends has nobody he can
pré *point* 18 155
 rely upon, nor from whom he may expect any fa-
compter *sur* *qui* 174 *—* *de* *qui* *pouvoir* *attendre*
 vour.

The love of our enemies must have no bounds in
amour *—* *ennemi* *ne* *doit* *point* 18 *borne*
 the heart; though in the outward behaviour, it may
cœur *quoique* 158 *—* *extérieur* 31 *conduite* *f* *il* *pouvoir*
 have some limitation. Lightning appears before the thunder
 7 *limites* *éclair* *paraître* 158 *tonnerre* *m*

is heard. Unless a book be instructive or enter-
 98 *entendre à moins que* 158 *ne* — *lif* *amu-*
 taining, I do not care to read it. Though ambition is
sant se spacier 135 " 158 —
 a vice, it is nevertheless the foundation of many virtues.
 — *néanmoins base f bien* 13

Though an honourable title may be conveyed
quoique 158 *honorable* 31 *titre m pouvoir se transmettre*
 to posterity, yet the ennobling qualities, such as great-
qui anoblissent 141 — *telles que gran-*
 ness of the soul, cannot be transferred. Christopher Colum-
deur à me se transmettre — phe Colomb
 bus, by an effort of genius and intrepidity, the most successful
 — *génie* 20 *intrépidité heureux*
 that is recorded in the annals of mankind, opened
 150 98 *trouver annales du genre humain ouvrir* 150
 to his contemporaries the way to a new world.
 — *ram chemin de monde m*

CHAPTER XVII.

OF THE IRREGULARS *would, could, should, &c.*

RULE 165. — *would, could, should, expressed by vouloir, pou-
 voir, devoir.*

The words *will* and *would* are expressed in French by the
 verb *vouloir*, when they imply an explicit will: *could* and
might are expressed by *pouvoir*, when they denote possibi-
 lity; and *should* by *devoir*, when it denotes necessity or duty.
 Example:

He will not obey his superiors.
Il ne veut pas obéir à ses supérieurs.

Why do you not speak French? Because I cannot;
pourquoi Français parce que pouvoir (ir)
 if I could, I would.* We are born for society; we should,
le 152 *le faire (ir) e* " *nés* A

* *Would, could, should, and might, are not expressed in
 other cases, and are only the mark of a tense, as je parlerais, I
 would speak.*

therefore contribute to the advantage of the community. If

donc —buer bien —naul:
 you could lend me your horse, you would oblige me (very
 152 *prêter* —gr E beau-
 much). I am sorry I cannot to-day; if I could, I
coup *fâché de * le* *aujourd'hui* *le* 152

certainly would not refuse you; if you had asked for
certainement 172 *refuser* E 152 *

it yesterday, you could have had it then, or if you could
le hier 167 *alors* 152

wait till to-morrow, it would be at your disposal.
attendre jusqu'à *demain* E *service*

Marshal Turenne would not take (any thing) from mer-
Le maréchal de — B *prendre rien* *mar-*
 chants upon trust, lest they might lose a part of it,
chand *à crédit de peur que* 158 *perdre partie en* 57
 should he be killed in battle.

s'il B *tuer bataille*

RULE 166.—would, could, &c. not followed by a Compound Tense.

If the auxiliaries *would*, *could*, *should*, and *might* are not followed by a compound tense, they are expressed in French by the imperfect, the preterite of the indicative, the conditional, or the preterite of the subjunctive, of the verbs *vouloir*, *pouvoir*, &c. according as the sense requires it. Examples :

I could do it yesterday. I could do it formerly.

Je pouvais le faire hier. *Je pus le faire autrefois.*

I could, if I would. I do not think I could.

Je le pourrais, si je voulais. *Je ne crois pas que je le pusse.*

RULE 167.—would, could, &c. followed by a Compound Tense.

If the auxiliaries *would*, *could*, *should*, and *might* are followed by a compound tense, the sentence is rendered by the imperfect or the conditional of *avoir*, with the participle *pu*, *dû*, or *voulu*, if you speak of something already done; and by the conditional of *pouvoir*, *devoir*, or *vouloir*, and the verb *avoir* in the infinitive, if you speak of something not yet done. Examples :

You should have written to me, as you knew my direction.

Vous auriez dû m'écrire, puisque vous saviez mon adresse.

I *could* have finished my letter before him.

Je pourrais avoir fini ma lettre avant lui.

I *could* have done my exercise as soon as you if I
faire thème aussi vite que
would; but then it would not have been done so well as it is.

152 *mais faire si bien qu'il l'est*

If you *would* have studied French, you *might* have learnt it
si 152 étudier apprendre

in a short time when you were in France. Cities *could* not
** peu de temps B ville*

have been built without an assembly of men. I think that
bâtir assemblée croire (ir)

if our general *would* have pursued the enemy, he *might*
général 152 poursuivre (ir) ennemi pl

have taken their ammunition. I *could* have lent you two
prendre (ir) munition pl prêter

hundred pounds yesterday, but I do not think I can at
livre hier croire 83 je le puisse

present, because I have bought a horse this morning.

— parce que acheter matin

CHAPTER XVIII.

OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS *il faut, il y a, &c.*

RULE 168.—*il faut*, it must.

☞ The verb *must* is expressed in French by the impersonal *il faut que*. The nominative of *must* becomes the nominative of the next verb, which is put in the subjunctive mood. Examples :

Your brother must come here to-morrow.

Il faut que votre frère vienne ici demain.

They must do it.

Il faut qu'ils le fassent.

as if it were, It must that your brother come.

* If you are at a loss in which tense to put i. French these irregular *would, could, should, &c.* turn them by the verb to be willing, to be able, or to be obliged, and then put *vouloir, pouvoir, or devoir* i. the same tense as is the verb to be in English, and you will never be mistaken.

Children *must* obey their parents. Men *must* practise
obéir 130 — *pratiquer*
 virtue. I *must* have a new hat. A woman *must* have
neuf 31. *chapeau*
 (a great deal) of circumspection when speaking of herself. I
beaucoup *retenu* *en*
 have sold my house: I *must* buy another. You *must*
vendre *en acheter*
 have a new book. They *must* have new stockings. They
neuf *bas*
must answer. You *must* go there.
pondre *y*

• RULE 169.—*il y a*, there is.

1. The impersonals, *there is*, or *there are*; *there was*, or *there were*, &c. are expressed in French by *il y a* for the present tense, *il y avait* for the imperfect, *il y eut* for the preterite, *il y aura* for the future, *il y aurait* for the conditional, *il y eût* for the present subjunctive, and *il y eût* for the preterite. Example:

There is no talent more shining than that of speaking.
Il n'y a point de talent plus brillant que celui de la parole.

2. The impersonal *il y a* is also used to ask the distance from one place to another; then it answers to the words *how far*. Example: *combien y a-t-il de Douvres à Calais?* how far is Dover from Calais?—to ask the number of inhabitants, years, months, cities, &c.; then it answers to the words *how many*. Example: *combien y a-t-il de villes en Angleterre?* how many towns are there in England?—to ask the time since any thing happened; then it answers to the words *how long*? Example: *combien y a-t-il qu'elle est morte?* how long has she been dead? and in this case the following verb (when it expresses something still existing) is put in the present of the indicative.

1. There is no less eloquence in the tone of the voice,
pas moins 18 *dans* *ton* *voix*
 in the eyes and the gesture, than in the choice of words.
geste *en* *que* *choix* *mot*
 There is in true virtue a candour which nothing can
leur 118 *pouvoir* (ir)
 counterfeit.—2. How long have you been in England?—These
contrefaire *combien* *Angleterre* *
 five years.—2. How long has your father been dead?—2. How
ans *mort*

long have you learnt geography?—2. How far is Rouen
 from Paris?—2. How far is London from Vienna?—2. How
 many inhabitants are there in France?—2. How many towns
 are there in England?—1. There is nothing made by the
 hands of men, which time does not destroy.

apprendre géographie combien
 —dres. —ne
 18 habitant en 18 ville
 Angleterre rien de
 main temps détruire 165

RULE 170.—Distinction between *c'est* and *il est*.

1. The impersonal *it is, it was, it will be, &c.* is usually expressed by *il est, il était, il fut, &c.* when it is followed by an adjective, without reference to any thing expressed before. Example:

It is very difficult to please every body.

Il est très-difficile de plaire à tout le monde—not *c'est*.

2. *It is, it was,* is expressed by *c'est* or *c'était*, when it is followed by a substantive, a pronoun, or a verb. Example:

It is my brother who says so. It is you who have seen him.

*C'est mon frère qui le dit. C'est vous qui l'avez vu.**

not *il est mon frère qui le dit*; nor, *il est vous qui l'avez vu*.

2. *It is* a certain mark of fortitude to preserve the soul
 from pride in prosperity, and to shun (depressing anxieties) in adversity.—1. *It is* more glorious to conquer
 oneself than to conquer an enemy.—2. *It was* envy which
 caused the death of Abel.—2. *It is* you who have spoken of it.

31 marque f courage 135 son âme
 orgueil prospérité d'éviter le découragement
 135 se vaincre
 soi-même ennemi 150 envie
 causer mort parler en 57

—2. *It is* the character of a great genius to intimate
 many things in few words.—1. *It is* certain that men
 could not live long in society without civil laws.

caractère m génie 135 exprimer
 beaucoup 18 peu 18 mot
 pouvoir (ir) E longtemps 31 loi 7 •

* *It is, is usually expressed by il est or il était (and not by c'est) when it is followed by a substantive which has reference to time: as, il est temps de partir, it is time to set out; not, t'est temps de partir.*

It is, late; it is time to go to bed. What o'clock is it?
tard 135 *aller se coucher* *heure*
 It is past ten; it is almost eleven.
plus de *presque*

RULE 171.—*c'est, ce sont, it is.*

☞ The impersonal *it is*, is expressed by *ce sont* when it is followed by a substantive plural, or the pronouns *eux* or *elles* in the nominative case. Examples:

It is they who speak. It is they who have seen him.
Ce sont eux qui parlent. Ce sont elles qui l'ont vu.
 not, *il est*, nor, *c'est eux qui parlent*, &c.

2. The impersonal *it is*, is expressed by *c'est* in all other cases, even before a substantive plural, or the pronouns *eux* or *elles*, if they are not in the nominative case. Examples:

It is you who say so. It is for them to speak.
C'est vous qui le dites. C'est à eux à parler—not, c

1. It is the Phœnicians who invented the art of writing.
Phénicien —ter 153
 —1. It is not those who speak much, who are the most
ceux beaucoup
 esteemed.—2. It is for you to obey.—2. It was to your
estimer à d'obéir 150
 brothers I lent that money.—2. It is to them I speak
frère 83 prêter argent eux 83
 —1. It is your ancestors, who by their virtue have trans-
ancêtre trans-
 mitted you the titles you enjoy; it is they who have
mettre (ir) titre dont jouir eux
 rendered your name great; imitate them if you wish to
rendre imiter H vouloir (ir)
 be worthy of their name.†
digne nom

* The word *heure* is always expressed after the cardinal numbers, unless two or more are in the same part of a sentence:
de, depuis six heures jusqu'à huit, et depuis neuf jusqu'à onze.
 † I have not put a recapitulatory exercise to these chapters, because they are easily understood.

CHAPTER XIX.

SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.

RULE 172.—*Adverbs after the Verbs.*

Adverbs are placed in French after the verb when it is in a simple tense, and between the auxiliary and the participle when it is in a compound one: they are never put, as in English, between the nominative and the verb. Example:

They never say what they think.

* *Ils ne disent jamais ce qu'ils pensent.*

not, *ils ne jamais disent.**

We seldom repent of talking little, but very often
on rarement se repentir 135 parler peu souvent
 of talking (too much). Homer sometimes slumbers (in the
trop Homère quelquefois sommeiller au
 midst) of gods and heroes. Your exercise is not well done,
milieu dieu 14 hâtes thème
 you have done it hastily. Never reproach any one
57 à la hâte 173 reprocher à personne
 with the services you do him. Courtiers often pass their
 * — in 83 *rendre lui 57 courtisan passer*
 life in the hope of acquiring what they never obtain.
espérance 135 acquérir 74 obtenir
 The love of earthly things is always accompanied with an
terrestre 31 bien accompagner 32
 indifference towards heavenly. What is made with
 — *pour les bien célestes ce qui se fait avec*
 pleasure, is generally well made.
plaisir ordinairement

RULE 173.—*Place of Adverbs.*

The following adverbs of time, *aujourd'hui, demain, hier*, the adverbs compounded of several words, and those which govern a noun after them, are usually placed after the participle, and even after the words it may govern. Examples:

He has acted conformably to his principles.

Il a agi conformément à ses principes.

* The adverbs, *bien, well, mieux, better, mal, ill*, are generally placed before the verb, when in the infinitive.

He has prudently managed that business.

Il a conduit cette affaire avec prudence.

not, *il a conformément agi à ses principes*; nor, *il a avec prudence conduit.*

If you had acted conformably to reason and justice,
 152 *agir conformément* . *raison f 177*
 nobody would have condemned your conduct. He has
condamner conduite.
 often spoken well of you. As I wanted to (go out
 172 *parler en bien* *comme avoir besoin de sortir*
 this morning, I have done my exercise hastily. You have
matin faire thème à la hâte
 given me (too much) bread: I shall have done to-morrow.
 .18 *pain finir*

CHAPTER. XX.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

RULE 174.—Place of Prepositions.

☞ The prepositions are always placed in French before the words which they govern, and never after, as they are sometimes in English. Examples:

What's that for? Whom do you complain . . .

Pourquoi cela? de qui vous plaignez-vous?

not, *qui cela pour?* nor, *qui vous plaignez-vous de?*

Whom do you speak to? What does he complain of:

qui quoi se plaindre

Whom shall I apply myself to? As magistrates are

adresser me 57 de même que —tratt

above the people, so the laws are above magistrates.

au-dessus du peuple ainsi loi

We fancy that the antipodes are under us, they think that

s'imaginer — sous croire (ir)

we are under them; but all are upon the earth, for no part of

sur 121 partie

a surface can be upon another part of the same surface.

pouvoir (ir) . . . une autre

RULE 175.—How to express from followed by to.

1. When the prepositions from and to are used to express the distance, or the going from one place to another, from is

expressed by *de*, and *to* by *à*, if we speak of a particular place. Examples:

I go from Rouen to Caen in one day.

Je vais de Rouen à Caen en un jour.

He wanders from the cellar to the garret,

Il va de la cave au grenier.

2. But *to* is expressed by *en* instead of *à* before the name of a country, or when the same substantive is repeated. Examples:

We have travelled from Italy to Switzerland.

Nous avons voyagé d'Italie en Suisse.

I go from house to house, from street to street, &c

Je vais de maison en maison, de rue en rue.

1. I can go in one day from Calais to Paris, and
pouvoir (ir) en jour — —
 in two hours from Paris to Versailles.—2. I like to travel;
heure — — aimer 136 voyager

I went from Germany to Russia, and from Russia to
aller 183 Allemagne Russie

Sweden.—1. (How far) is it from London to Winchester
Suède combien 169 Londres

and from Winchester to Salisbury?—2. You spend all the
passer

day in going from house to house, from street to street, and
à aller — — rue

from place to place. 1. How many miles from Chelsea
— — Combien y a-t-il de

to the Tower? It is not far from his house to the river.

Tour 169 loin rivière

• RULE 176.—*depuis, jusqu'à*, from, to.

When the prepositions *from* and *to* are used to express a duration of time, *from* is expressed by *depuis*, and *to* by *jusqu'à*. Example:

I have been sick from Christmas to Easter.

J'ai été malade depuis Noël jusqu'à Pâques.

A poor ploughman, who works from morning to night,
laboureur travailler matin soir

* The preposition *to*, is always expressed by *jusqu'à* when it signifies so far as. Example: *je le poursuivrai jusqu'au bout*; I will prosecute him to the end.

when he is well paid for his labour, lives as content as
payer de travail vivre (ir)
 a king. I have drunk the cup to the dregs.
boire (ir) calice *il* *he sing*
 walk every day from ten to twelve, and I study
se promener dix heures midi étudier
 from six of the afternoon to eight, sometimes to nine.
six heures après-midi huit quelquefois neuf

RULE 177.—*Prepositions repeated.*

The prepositions *de*, *à*, *en*, *contre*, and *sans*, are usually repeated in French before every noun, pronoun, or verb, whether they are repeated or not in English. Example :

He is in a state of doubt, fear, and distrust.
Il est dans un état de doute, de crainte, et de défiance.

The other prepositions are repeated before words of different significations, but not when they are before words of similar import.

Forcigners take pleasure in admiring at Amster-
étranger prendre (ir) plaisir à admirer à —
 dam the singular mixture formed by the ridges of houses,
singulier 31 mélange former toit •
 the tops of trees, and the flags of ships, which present,
cime f pavillon vaisseau 74
 in the same place, an idea of the sea, the city, and the coun-
— idée mer ville cam-
 try. Heroes formerly sacrificed themselves for their
pagne héros autrefois 172 sacrifier se 57
 country, or their mistresses ; at present, nothing is done but
pays maîtresse se faire que
 for fortune or pleasure.

Jesus Christ came into the world to redeem men, and to
venir 153 monde 138 racheter
 destroy the empire of the devil. Charity does nothing without
détruire démon charité rien sans
 consideration and order. Our laws do not condemn any per-
ni ordre condamner
 son without having heard and examined him.
 139 • *entendre examiner le*

CHAPTER XXI. OF THE FRENCH IDIOMS.

RULE 178.—to be expressed *by avoir*.

☞ The verb *to be* is expressed by the verb *avoir* when it is followed, 1. By a word of dimension (see Rule 36). 2. By the words *hungry, dry, or thirsty*. 3. By the words *hot, warm, or cold*.* 4. By the words *in the right, in the wrong, ashamed, or afraid*. 5. By *in vain*. 6. In speaking of the age of a person, or animal.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Il a six pieds, | he is six feet high. |
| 2. Avez-vous faim ? | are you hungry ? |
| 3. Avez-vous froid ? | are you cold ? |
| 4. Vous avez raison, | you are in the right. |
| 5. Vous avez beau dire, | it is in vain for you to say so. |
| 6. Quel âge avez vous ? | how old are you ? |
| J'ai quinze ans, | I am fifteen. |

1. Some whales are a hundred feet long, their tails are
baleine pied 35 queue
 more than twelve feet in circumference, and their fins are
de circonférence nageoire
 about seven feet long.—6. How old was your father when
environ 35 quel âge n 65
 he died ?—He was seventy.† And your mother ?—she
mourir e 149 soixante-dix ans 65
 was almost eighty.—2. I do not remember to have ever
près de quatre-vingts se ressouvenir 135 jamais
 been so thirsty as I was yesterday.—3. Warm yourself, if you
si soif que c hier se chauffer
 are cold; my feet are not cold, because I have walked much,
froid
 but my hands are so cold, that I cannot write.—1. There
si froid pouvoir (ir) 169

* The part of the body which is cold or hot is preceded in French by *au, à la, or aux, as j'ai froid aux pieds*.

† The word *an, year, when speaking of age, must always be used in French after the cardinal number, though it be not expressed in English.*

are some walks in our park which are three hundred feet long.—4. You are in the wrong, and he is in the right.

5. It is in vain for you to ask money from a miser, he never will give you any.—6. How old is your daughter? she will be eighteen next March. I did not think she was more than fifteen.—4. When we heard that your coach had been stopped by some ruffians, we were afraid they would have murdered you.—Are your feet cold? No, on the contrary, they are very warm; but my hands are cold.

• RULE 179.—to be expressed by faire.

The verb *to be* is usually expressed by *faire*, before the words *soleil*, *vent*, *chaud*, *froid*, and in general when we speak of the kind or disposition of the weather Example:

It is fine weather.
Il fait beau temps.

Is it cold this morning?—Yes, sir it is very cold; however I do not think it is quite so cold as it was yesterday. The weather is very inconstant; it was hot yesterday, it is cold to-day; it rained this morning; it is fine weather now, but perhaps it will rain again before night. If it be fine weather to-morrow, I will go to the play, but if it be bad weather, I shall not go. When I was in the country, it was very bad weather; now I am come to town it is very fine weather, and if I was to return into the country, I fear it would be bad weather again.

RULE 180.—to be expressed *by se p.....*

☞ The verbs *to be* or *to do*, used in English to enquire after, or to speak of the health of somebody, are expressed in French by the reflected verb *se porter*. Example:

How does your father *do*? — He is very well,
Comment se porte monsieur votre père? — Il se porte très-bien,
 thank GOD.
Dieu merci.

How do you *do* this morning? — I am very well, I
comment *mañ* *bien*
 thank you. And how does your sister *do*? — She is not
remercier 65 92

well; she (has been) ill for these two months, and I
*A malade depuis * mois*

fear she will never be well again. And your brothers,
craindre 126 * 65

how are they? — the youngest is very well, but I do not
plus jeune *mais*

know how the eldest *docs*, because we have not
savoir (ir) *ainé* 92 *parce que*
 heard of him for these two months; he was very well
*entendu parler depuis **
 when he wrote to us last.
quand écrire c la dernière fois

RULE 181.—*il en est de*, it is with.

☞ The impersonal *it is with*, *it will be with*, &c. is rendered in French by *il en est de*, for the present tense; *il en était de*, for the imperfect; *il en fut de*, for the preterite, &c. Example:

It is with you as with other men.
Il en est de vous comme des autres.

It is with the diseases of the heart as with those of the
maladie 76
 body, some are real, and some imaginary. *It is with*
quelques-unes réel d'autres —naire
 (men of learning) as with ears of corn; they raise their heads
savant épis blé lever la tête
 while they are empty, and when they are full, they begin
tant que vide —plein commencer
 to droop. *It is with* your son as with other children. I do
 136 *pencher*
 not think it will be with my son as it was with yours.
croire 159 153

RULE 182.—to have, expressed by être.

The auxiliary *to have* is expressed in French by the verb *être* in the compound tenses of all the reflected verbs, and also of the following, *aller, arriver, décéder, entrer, mourir, naître, partir, sortir, tomber, venir*, and their compounds. Examples:

I rose at six o'clock. He has arrived before us.
Je me suis levé à six heures. Il était arrivé avant nous.

The Amazons have made themselves famous by their
Amazone f rendre 143 se 57. fameux
 courage in war. If you had risen an hour sooner this
la guerre 152 se lever plus tôt
 morning, you would have embarked with the others. If I had
s'embarquer 152
 (been awake), I would have risen. Why have you deviated
s'écarter se lever s'écarter
 from the road which you had begun to follow?—I have
route f commencer 144 à suivre (ir)
 often repented not having followed your advice.
se repentir avis

My father has arrived an hour sooner than you. I would
arriver plus tôt
 not have come this morning, if I had not received a letter from
venir 152
 you yesterday. You would not have fallen from your horse,
*173 tomber de * cheval*
 if you had not galloped. I have walked in the garden
152 galoper se promener
 before you were up. Why have you complained of me?
avant que 158 levé se plaindre
 I have (got a cold) this morning. He has distrusted every
s'enrhumer se défier de
 body.

RULE 183.—avoir mal à.

We make use of the verb *avoir mal* in speaking of any illness. The part of the body affected with some pains is put in the dative case, and, instead of the possessive pronouns, it is preceded by *au, à la, à l,* or *aux*, according as the gender and number require it. Examples:

I have the head-ach. She has the tooth-ach.
J'ai mal à la tête. Elle a mal aux dents.

as if it were, I have a pain to the head, she has a pain to the teeth: and so for other sentences of the same kind.

I have great pain in my side. He has sore eyes. Have
bien mal côté mal yeux
 you the stomach-ach? He has a sore foot. My lips are
estomac mal pied lèvres
 sore. She had the tooth-ach yesterday, now she has the
 149
 head-ach; to-morrow, perhaps, she will have a bad leg.
peut-être jambe
 When I was young, I often had the head-ach.
jeune souvent 172 149

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the FRENCH IDIOMS.

Why do you not eat, if you are hungry? I am not very
manger 178 *faim* 178 *très*
 hungry, I can wait till (dinner-time), but I am very thirsty,
*attendre * le dîner* 178 *soif*
 and I will thank you for a glass of wine. It is very
prier de me donner verre in vin 179
 cold to-day. It was cold yesterday. It will be hot soon.
froid 179 179 *chaud bientôt*
 I am thirsty. He is hungry. My sister is not well, she has
178 soif 178 faim 180 bien
 not been well for these three weeks, she has the head-ach
*180 depuis * semaine* 183
 to-day. At what o'clock did you rise this morning?
quelle heure 153 se lever 183

It is in vain for you to say so, I do not believe
178 dire le 57 croire (ir)
 you. It is with my brother as with yours. How old is
181 89 178
 your son?—He is almost nineteen. And your daughter?—
près de
 She will be fifteen next Christmas. What weather is it
à 31 Noël 179
 this morning?—It is fine weather. I hope it will be fine
179 espérer 179
 weather to-morrow. Why?—Because if it be fine weather
parce que 179
 we shall go into the country, my brother and I; but if it be
campagne f 45 179
 bad weather, we shall stay at home.
rester maison

How far is your house from the chapel? How old was
 169 *de* *à* *chapelle* *quel âge* 178
 your father when he died? How old were you when you
 65 *quand mourir* 150 *178* 182
 married?—I was thirty. How old are you now?—I shall
se marier 153 178 178
 be fifty next April.
 178 *au mois d'Avril prochain*

It is in vain for us to bury ourselves in obscurity;
s'enfoncer *—té*
 nothing protects us against the persecutions of malignity;
 118 *mettre à couvert des poursuites* *méchanceté*
 nothing shelters us from the darts of envy.
mettre à l'abri *traits*

What weather is it to-day? I do not know; I have
 179 *savoir* (*ir*)
 not (been out), but I think it is very cold. If it be
 182 *sortir* *croire* (*ir*) 179 179
 cold, I shall not (go out), because I fear to get cold. I
sortir *craindre de m'enrhumer*
 never drink unless I am thirsty.
boire (*ir*) *à moins que* 158 127 *soif*

How do your children do?—They are all very well, I
 180 180
 thank you. And your mother?—She is not well; she
remercier 65 180
 had the tooth-ach yesterday, and she told me this morning
 183 *dire* 153
 she had the head-ach. Is it cold? Are you cold? It is
 183 179 *froid* 178 179
 not cold. I am not cold. Your brother will not be well
 178 *froid* 180
 till he is twenty.
jusqu'à ce que 158 178 *vingt ans*.

FREE EXERCISES.*

1. THE TWO BEES.

On a fine morning in May, two bees (set forward) in
dans *matinée de Mai* *partir*
 quest of honey; the one wise and temperate, the
aller chercher *sobre*
 other careless and extravagant. They soon arrived at a
négligent *prodigue* *dans*
 garden enriched with aromatic herbs, the most fragrant
odoriférant
 flowers, and the most delicious fruits." They regaled them-
 selves for a time on the various dainties that were
** quelque de différent mets délicat*
 spread before them; the one louching his thigh at intervals
étaler *patte pl de temps*
 with provisions for the hive against the distant
en temps *afin de s'en nourrir pen-*
 winter, the other revelling with sweets, without (regard
dant l'hiver *s'enivre de*
 to any thing but) his present gratification. At length they
songer qu'à *satisfaction*
 found a large-mouthed phial, (that hung) beneath the bough
à large ouverture *suspendu* *une branche*
 of a peach-tree, filled with honey ready tempered, and exposed
** tout clarifié qui s'offrait*
 to their taste in the most alluring manner. The thought-
de *atrayant*
 less epicure, in spite of all his friend's remonstrances,
*épicurienne malgré**
 plunged headlong into the vessel, resolving to indulge him-
vase résolu se livrer
 self in all the pleasures of sensuality. The philosopher, on
à *f*
 the other hand, sipped a little with caution; but (being
en goûter

* In the following Exercises the rules will be no more indicated, as the pupils must know them well enough to apply them by themselves.

suspicious) of danger, flew off to fruits and
soupçonner prendre son essor vers
 flowers; where, by the moderation of his meals, he (in-
sobriété repas f
 proved his relish for the true enjoyment of them). In
ménager le plaisir d'y trouver toujours un nouveau goût vers
 the evening, however, he (called upon) his friend to
aller trouver *lui*
 enquire whether he would return to the hive; but found
demander f
 him surfeited in sweets, which he was as unable to leave,
gorgé de hors d'état de
 as to enjoy. (Clogged in his wings), enfeebled in his
d'en les ailes collées les patés affai-
 feet), and (his whole frame) totally enervated, he (was but
blies tout le corps n'avoir
 just able) to bid his friend adieu, and to lament
que la force reconnaître avec dou-
 (with his) latest breath, that, though a taste of
leur en rendant le soupir en effleurant le
 pleasure might quicken the relish of life, (an
on pouvoir rendre plus vif jouissance pl en
 unrestrained indulgence) is inevitable destruction.
s'y livrant sans mesure on court à une

II. RESPECT PAID BY THE LACEDÆMONIANS TO OLD AGE.
rendre Lacédémoniens

It happened at Athens, during a public representation of
 some play exhibited in honour of the commonwealth, that
qui se donnait au théâtre
 an (old gentleman) came too late for a place suitable
vicillard pour trouver
 to his age and quality. Many of the young gentlemen, who
** * gens*
 observed the difficulty and confusion he was in, made
embarras où
 signals to him that they would accommodate him, if he came
signe sing. céder une place dat.
 where they sat: the (good man) bustled through the
*être assis vicillard percer **
 crowd accordingly; but when he came to the seats (to
arriver banc
 which) he was invited, the jest was to (sit close) and
où on se faire un jeu de se serrer

expose him to the whole audience, when he stood,
la rusée de *assemblée tandis que être debout*
 (out of countenance). The frolic went round all the
tout décontenance *ce badinage passer de banc en*
 (Athenians' benches). But on those occasions there were
banc parmi les Athéniens *dans*
 also particular places assigned for foreigners: when the
destiné dat.
 (good man) skulked towards the seats appointed for
vaillard étant allé se cacher *bancs marqué*
 the Lacedæmonians, that honest people, more virtuous than
gens pl
 polite, rose up all to a man, and with the greatest
polvé *jusqu'au dernier*
 respect received him among them. The Athenians, being
 suddenly touched with a sense of the Spartan virtue and
sentiment *spartiate*
 their own degeneracy, gave a thunder of applause,
dépravation *des applaudissemens redoublés*
 and the old man cried out. "The Athenians understand
connaître
 what is good, but the Lacedæmonians practise it."—
bien
Smectatus

III. PÆTUS AND ARRIA

In the reign of Claudius, the Roman emperor, Arria, the
sous
 wife of Cecinna Pætus, was an illustrious pattern of magna-
cemple
 nimity and conjugal affection.

It happened that her husband and her son were both, at
 the same time, attacked with a dangerous illness: The son
 died. He was a youth endowed with every quality of

mind and person which could endear him to his parents.
corps *rendre cher*

His mother's heart was (torn with all the anguish of grief);
navré de douleur

yet she resolved to conceal the distressing event from her
ce cruel *à*

husband. She prepared and conducted his funeral so pri-
sc-
 vately, that Pætus did not know of his death. When-
crètement

ever she came into her husband's bedchamber, she pretended her son was better, and (as often as) he enquired after his health, would answer, that he had rested well, or had eaten with appetite. When she found that she could not longer retain her grief, but her tears (were gushing out), she would leave the room, and having given vent to her passion, return again with dry eyes, and a serene countenance, as if she had left her sorrow behind her at the door of the chamber.

Camillus Scribonianus, the governor of Dalmatia, having taken up arms against Claudius, Pætus joined himself to his party, and was soon after taken prisoner, and brought to Rome. When the guards were going to put him on board the ship, Arria besought them (that she might be permitted) to go with him. "Certainly," said she, "you cannot refuse a (man of consular dignity) (as he is), a few attendants to (wait upon) him; but, if you will take me, I alone will perform their office." This favour, however, was refused: upon which she hired a small (fishing vessel), and boldly ventured to follow the ship.

Returning to Rome, Arria met the wife of Scribonianus in the emperor's palace, who pressing her to discover all that she knew of the insurrection—"What!" said she, "shall I regard thy advice, who saw thy husband murdered in thy very arms, and yet survivest him?"

Pætus being condemned to die, Arria formed a deliberate resolution to share his fate, and made no secret of her in-

tention. Thræsea, who married her daughter, attempt-
avait *voulait*
 ing to dissuade her from her purpose, among other argu-
 ments which he used, said to her: "Would you then, (if
quoi donc
 my life were to be taken from me), advise your daughter
si l'on était sur le point de m'ôter la vie
 to die with me?" "Most certainly I would," she replied,
le faire
 if she had lived as long, and in as much harmony with
grand
 you, as I have lived with Pœtus."

Persisting in her determination, she found means to (pro-
 vide herself with) a dagger: and one day, when she observed
se procurer *que*

(a more than usual gloom) on the countenance of Pœtus,
plus de tristesse qu'à l'ordinaire *visage*
 and perceived that death by the hand of the execu-
qu'elle *bour-*

tioner appeared to him more terrible than in the field of
reau *à* *lit*
 glory; perhaps, too, sensible that it was chiefly for (her
honneur *tant* *elle*
 sake) that he wished to live; she drew the dagger from her
 side, and stabbed herself before his eyes. Then instantly
à

plucking the weapon from her breast, she presented it to her
fer
 husband, saying: "My Pœtus, it is not painful."—*Pliny.*
cela *douloureux*

IV. VALENTINE AND UNNION.

At the siege of Namur by the allies, there was in the
 ranks of the company commanded by captain Pincent, in
 colonel Frederic Hamilton's regiment (one Unnion, a cor-
un caporal, nommé Un-
 poral), and (one Valentine, a private sentinel): there hap-
un simple soldat, nommé Valentin
 pened between these two men a dispute about an affair of
venir
 love, which, upon some aggravations, grew to an
à raison de *provocation* *dégénérer en*
 irreconcilable hatred. Unnion, being the officer of Valen-
 tine, took all opportunities even to strike his rival, and
occasion *de*

profess the spite and revenge which moved him to it.
l'émouvoir *porter*

The sentinel bore it without resistance; but frequently
soldat said he would die to (be revenged) of that tyrant.

They had spent whole months in this manner, the one
mourrait volontiers *se venger*
 injuring, the other complaining; when in the
commettant des outrages

midst of this rage towards each other, they were com-
 manded upon the attack of the castle, where the corporal

received a shot in the thigh; and fell. The French
pour *coup de feu à*

(pressing on), and Unnion expecting to be (trampled to
les servant de près *s'attendre* *écrasé sous*
 death), he called out to his enemy, "Ah, Valentine! can
les pieds

you leave me here?" Valentine immediately ran back,

and in the midst of a thick fire of the French, took
aussitôt *revenir sur*
ses pas *roulant*

the corporal upon his back, and brought him through all
 that danger as far as the abbey of Saltine, where a cannon-
 ball took off his head: his body fell under his enemy whom
 he was carrying off. Unnion immediately forgot his wound,
 rose up, tearing his hair, and then threw himself upon the
 bleeding carcass, crying: "Ah, Valentine! was it for me,
sanglant cadavre

who have so barbarously used thee, that thou hast died?
 I will not (live after) thee." (He was not by any means

to be forced) from the body, but (was removed with
vouloir survivre *il n'y eut pas moyen de*
l'arracher *cadavre* *on l'enleva le tenant*

it bleeding) in his arms, and attended with tears by
tout sanglant *accompagné des* *de*
 all their comrades who knew their enmity. (When he

was) brought to a tent, his wounds were dressed by
dans *panser*

force; but the next day, still calling upon Valentine,
malgré lui

and lamenting his cruelties to him, he died in the pangs
déplorer *envers* *tourment*
 of remorse. — *Taïen*

V. MULY MOLUC.

When Don Sebastian, king of Portugal, (had invaded) the territories of Muly Moluc, emperor of Morocco, in order to dethrone him, and set his crown upon the head of his nephew, Moluc (was wearing away with) a distemper which he himself knew was incurable. However, he prepared (for the reception of) so formidable an enemy. He was indeed so far spent with his sickness, that he did not expect to live out the whole day; but knowing the fatal consequences that would happen to his children and his people, in case he should die before he put an end to that war, he commanded his principal officers, that if he died during the engagement, (they should conceal) his death from his army, and (that they should ride up) to the litter in which his corpse was carried, under pretence of receiving orders from him as usual. Before the battle began, he was carried through all the ranks of his army in an open litter, as (they stood drawn up in array), encouraging them to fight valiantly in defence of their religion and country. Finding afterwards the battle to turn against him, though he was very near his last agonies, he threw himself out of his litter, rallied his army, and led them on to the charge, which afterwards ended in a complete victory on the side of the Moors. He had no sooner brought his men to the engagement, but finding himself

utterly spent, he was again replaced in his litter, where laying his finger on his mouth, to enjoin secrecy to his officers, who stood about him, he died a few moments after in that posture.—Spectator.

VI. DIONYSIUS THE TYRANT.

Dionysius, the tyrant of Sicily, showed how far he was from being happy even whilst he was abounding in riches, and all the pleasures which riches can procure. Damocles, one of his flatterers, was complimenting him upon his power, his treasures, and the magnificence (of his royal state), and affirming, that no monarch ever was greater or happier than he. (Have you a mind), Damocles says the king, to taste this happiness, and know by experience what my enjoyments are, of which you have so high an idea? Damocles gladly accepted the offer: upon which the king ordered, that a royal banquet should be prepared, and a gilded couch placed for him, covered with rich embroidery, and side-boards loaded with gold and silver plate of immense value. Pages of extraordinary beauty were ordered to (wait on) him at table, and to obey his commands with the greatest readiness, and the most profound submission. Neither ointments, chaplets of flowers, nor rich perfumes were wanting. The table was loaded with the most exquisite delicacies of every kind. Damocles fancied himself amongst the gods: In the midst of all this happiness, he sees, (let down) from the roof over his head, a glittering sword hung by a single hair. The sight of destruction thus threatening him, soon (put a stop to)

his joy and revelling. The pomp of his attendants, and the
plaisir pl *serviteur pl*
 glitter of the carved plate, gave him no longer any pleasure.
brillant ciselé
 He dreads to (stretch forth) his hand to the table. He throws
craindre *porter*
 off the chaplet of roses. He hastens to (remove from) his
quitter
 dangerous situation, and at last begs the king to restore him
 to his former humble condition, (having no desire) to
précédent 31 30 *ne désirant pas*
 enjoy (any longer) such a dreadful kind of happiness.
plus longtemps

VII. DAMON AND PYTHIAS.

Damon and Pythias (or the Pythagorean sect in philosophy)
philosophes de la secte de Pythagore
 lived (in the) time of Dionysius, the tyrant of Sicily. Their
B du Denis
 mutual friendship was so strong, that they were ready to die
 for one another. One of the two (for it is not known which)
 being condemned to death by the tyrant, obtained leave to go
 into his own country, to settle his affairs, on condition that
 * *à*
 the other should consent to be imprisoned in his stead, and
 put to death for him, if he did not return before the day of
 execution. The attention of (every one), and especially of
 * * * *chacun* *
 the tyrant himself, (was excited to the highest pitch); as
était dans la plus grande attente *
 every body was curious to see what should be the event of so
étant *issue*
 strange an affair. When the time was almost elapsed, and
 * *B* *écoulé*
 he who was gone did not appear, the rashness of the other,
parti * *B*
 whose sanguine friendship (had put him upon running)
à qui sa vive *avait fait courir*
 (so seemingly desperate a hazard), was universally blamed.
un danger en apparence si inévitable le 98
 But he still declared that he had not (the least shadow of)
persistait à soutenir *le plus léger*
 doubt (in his mind) of his friend's fidelity. The event showed

how well he knew him. He came in due time and (suffer-
que rendered himself) to that fate of which he had no reason to
soumettre *une destinée* *sujet* think he should escape, and which he did not wish to
éviter *à laquelle* escape by leaving his friend to suffer it in his place. Such
échaper *subir* fidelity softened even the savage heart of Dionysius himself.
farouche He pardoned the condemned. He gave the two
à celui qui avait été condamné *remet* friends to one another; and (begged that they
dans les bras l'un de l'autre *les pria de l'admettre* would take himself in for a third).
en tiers dans leur amitié

VIII. DESTRUCTION OF THE ALEXANDRIAN LIBRARY.

à Alexandrie.

When Alexandria was taken by the Mahometans, Amrus,
—dne f their commander, found there Philoponus, whose conversation
chef highly pleased him, as Amrus (was a lover of) letters, and
beaucoup *aimer* Philoponus was a learned man. On a certain day Philoponus
*** said to him: "You have visited all the repositories or public
dépôt warehouses in Alexandria, and you have sealed up
de *mettre à scellé sur* (things of every sort) that (are found) there. As to those
les différens objets *se trouver* things that may be useful to you, I presume to say nothing;
prétendre but as to things of no service to you, some of them
qui ne vous sont d'aucun usage may (be more suitable to me)." Amrus said to him:
E *me convenir davantage* "And what is it you want?" "The philosophical books,"
vouloir *E* replied he, "preserved in the royal libraries." "This," said
déposés Amrus, "is a request upon which I cannot decide. You de-
demande

sure a thing where I can issue no orders, till I have leave
sur laquelle donner
 from Omar, the commander of the faithful." Letters were
 accordingly written to Omar, informing him of what
on écrivit pour —mer
 Philoponus had said; and (an answer was returned by Omar
Omar répondit
 to the following purpose:) "As to the books of which you
en ces termes
 have made mention, if (there be contained in them what)
ce qu'ils contiennent
 accords with the book of God (meaning the Koran),
c'est-à-dire
 there is without them, in the book of God, all that is suf-
on trouve
 ficient. But if there is any thing in them repugnant to
** * de contraire*
 that book, we (in no respect) want them. Order them there-
nullement faites
 fore to be all destroyed." Amrus upon this
** * détruire " d'après cette réponse*
 ordered (them to be dispersed) through the baths of Alex-
qu'on les distribuât dans
 andria, and to be there burnt (in making the baths warm).
qu'on les y brûlât pour chauffer les bains
 After this manner, in the space of six months, they were all
de
 consumed. Thus ended this noble library; and thus began,
superbe pl
 if it had not begun sooner, the age of barbarism and
pl
 ignorance.

IX. THE ADVANTAGES OF A GOOD EDUCATION.

I consider a human soul without education like marble in
l'âme de l'homme
 the quarry, which shows none of its inherent beauties,
 until the skill of the polisher fetches out the colours,
talent marbrier en fusse sortir en
 makes the surface shine, and discovers every (ornamental
nuance
 cloud), spot, and vein, (that runs through the body of it).
dont il est parsemé
 Education, (after the same manner), when it works upon a
de même opérer

noble mind, (draws out to view) every latent virtue and per-
 fection, which, without such helps, are never able (to make
 their appearance.)
âme mettre au jour son sing. paraître

If my reader will (give me leave) to change so soon the
 allusion upon him, I shall (make use) of the same instance,
 to illustrate the force of education, which Aristotle has
 brought to explain his doctrine of substantial forms, when he
 tells us that a statue lies hid in a block of marble, and the
 art of the statuary only clears away the superfluous mat-
 ter, and removes the rubbish. The figure is in the stone,
 and the sculptor only finds it. What sculpture is to a block of
 marble, education is to a human soul. The philosopher, the
 saint, or the hero; the wise, the good, or the great
 man; very often lie hid, and concealed in a plebeian, which a
 proper education might have disinterred, and have brought
 to light. I am therefore much delighted with reading
 the accounts of savage nations, and with contemplating those
 virtues which are wild and uncultivated; to see courage
 exerting itself in fierceness, resolution in obstinacy, wisdom in
 cunning, patience in sullenness and despair.
être vouloir me permettre de se servir comparaison faire sentir employer n'a qu'à la trouver être caché enfoui et le mettre au jour prendre beaucoup de plaisir à histoire sing. grossier se manifester opiniâtreté ruse f chagrin

Men's passions operate variously, and appear in different
 kinds of actions, according as they are more or less rectified
 and swayed by reason. When one hears of negroes, who
 upon the death of their masters, or upon changing their
 service, hang themselves upon the next tree, as it fre-
 quently happens.
à lorsqu'ils changent de condition a premier

quently happens in our American plantations, who can forbear
 admiring their fidelity, though it expresses itself in so
 dreadful a manner? What might not that savage
 greatness of soul, which appears in these poor wretches on
 many occasions, (be raised to), were it rightly cultivated?
 And what colour of excuse can there be for the contempt
 with which we treat this part of our species; (that we should
 not) put them upon the common foot of humanity; (that
 we should only set) an insignificant fine upon (the man)
 who murders them; nay, (that we should, as much as in us
 lies, cut them off from) the prospects of happiness in another
 world, as well as in this, and denying them that which we
 (look upon) as the proper means for attaining it?

It is therefore an unspeakable blessing to be born in those
 parts of the world where wisdom and knowledge flourish;
 though it must be confessed there are, even in these parts,
 several poor uninstructed persons, who are but little above
 those nations of which I (have been here) speaking; as those
 who have had the advantages of a more liberal education, rise
 above one another by several different degrees of perfection.
 For, to return to our statue in the block of marble, we see it
 sometimes only begun to be chipped, sometimes rough-
 hewn, and but just sketched into a human figure; sometimes
 we see the man appearing distinctly in all his limbs and
 features; sometimes we find the figure wrought up to
 great elegance; but we seldom meet with any to which

the hand of a Phidias or a Praxiteles could not give several (nice touches and finishings):—*Spectator.*
touche propre à embellir et à la rendre parfaite

X. DIGNITY OF HUMAN NATURE.

In forming our notions of human nature, we are
les notions que nous nous formons
 very apt to make comparison betwixt men and animals,
porté une
 which are the only creatures endowed with thought, that fall
idées
 under our senses. Certainly this comparison is very favourable to mankind; on the one hand, we see a creature,
espèce humaine
 whose thoughts are not limited by any narrow bounds, either
idée *borne* *
 of place or time; who carries his researches into the
lieu *jusque dans*
 most distant regions of this globe, and beyond this globe, to
jusqu'à
 the planets and heavenly bodies; looks back to consider the
qui
 first origin of the human race; casts his eyes forward to
 * *qui porter regard*
 see the influence of his actions upon posterity, and the judgments which will be formed of his character a thousand
dans
 years hence: a creature who traces causes
examine l'enchaînement des
 and effects to great lengths and intricacy,
dans toute son étendue dans tous ses détours
 extracts general principles from particular appearances,
qui tirer
 improves upon his discoveries, corrects his mistakes, and
qui perfectionner *
 makes his very errors profitable. (On the other hand, we
mettre même à profit
 (are presented) with a creature the very reverse of this;
trouver * *qui est tout l'opposé*
 limited in its observations and reasonings to a few sensible
borné *quelque*
 objects which surround it, without curiosity, without a foresight, blindly conducted by instinct, and arriving in a very
 short time at its utmost perfection, beyond which it is never
peu de

able to advance a single step. What a difference is there
de betwixt these creatures, and how exalted a notion must we
 entertain of the former, in comparison of the latter! — *Quelle haute * idée de son*
avoir
Essays.

XI DETACHED SENTENCES.

There is an heroic innocence as well as an heroic courage.

It is wiser to prevent a quarrel beforehand, than to revenge it afterwards.

No revenge is more heroic, than that which torments *en* by doing good.

A contented mind, and a good conscience, will make a man happy in all conditions. He knows not how to fear, who dares to die.

There is but one way of fortifying the soul against all gloomy presages and terrors of the mind; and that is, by securing to ourselves the friendship and protection of that Being, who disposes of events, and governs futurity.

Without a friend, the world is but a wilderness.

A man may have a thousand intimate acquaintances, and not a friend among them. If you have one friend, think yourself happy.

Prosperity gains friends, and adversity tries them.

Ingratitude is a crime so shameful, that the man was never yet found who would acknowledge himself guilty of it.

By others' faults wise men correct their own.

The prodigal robs his heir, the miser robs himself.

Though a man may become learned by another's learning, he can never be wise but by his own wisdom.

Men are sometimes accused of pride, merely because their accusers would be proud themselves if they were in their place.

The difference there is betwixt honour and honesty seems to be chiefly in the motive. The honest man does that from duty which the man of honour does for the sake of character.

A man should never be ashamed to own he has been in the wrong; which is but saying in other words, that he is wiser to-day than he was yesterday.

Complaisance renders a superior amiable, an equal agreeable, and an inferior acceptable.

Excess of ceremony shows want of breeding. That civility is the best which excludes all superfluous formality.

Truth is born with us, and we must do violence to nature to shake off our veracity.

There cannot be a greater treachery, than first to raise a confidence and then deceive it.

It is as great a point of wisdom to shun ignorance, as to discover knowledge.

Custom is the plague of wise men, and the idol of fools.

As to be perfectly just is an attribute of the divine nature to be so to the utmost of our abilities, is the glory of men.

Anger may glance into the breast of a wise man, but rests only on the bosom of a fool.

To err is human: to forgive, divine.

We should take a prudent care for the future, but so as to enjoy the present. It is no part of wisdom, to be miserable to-day, because we may happen to be so to-morrow.

He that is truly polite knows how to contradict with respect, and to please without adulation; and is equally remote from an insinuating complaisance and a low familiarity.

THE END.

LONDON:
PRINTED BY SPOTTISWOODE AND CO.
NEW-STREET SQUARE.

ELEMENTARY GRAMMATICAL WORKS.

HAMEL'S FRENCH GRAMMAR and EXERCISES.

Entirely New Edition in One Volume. Carefully corrected, greatly improved, enlarged, and arranged in conformity with the last edition of the Dictionary of the French Academy, and in conformity with the last edition of the French Grammar of the University of France. By N. LAMBERT. 12mo. price 5s. 6d. bound.

KEY, price 4s. bound.

Extract from Preface.—To a few of the leading improvements I beg here to direct the reader's attention. 1. The Grammar and Exercises, which, in the old editions, formed two separate volumes, have been incorporated into one; and, though containing a great deal of new and important information, the works will now be sold conjointly at less than the original price of the separate volumes. 2. The rules for Pronunciation have been greatly enlarged, and modified agreeably to the best and most recent Parisian authorities. 3. As the French, like the English nouns, have no change of termination to mark a variety of state in the object, the declensions, &c. have been abolished as unnecessary, and as not being recognised by the French Academy and the University of France. 4. The verbs have been thoroughly revised, increased, and arranged in four conjugations, in conformity with the Grammars of the University of France. 5. The table of the government of prepositions has been completely altered according to the rules of the French Academy. 6. New Exercises have been written, and the second person singular of verbs has been introduced—an arrangement which, it is hoped, will greatly lighten the labour of the pupil. 7. A new and complete alphabetical table of the genders—one of the greatest difficulties in the French language—has been substituted for that of Hamel; so that the pupil will now be enabled at once to see the rule by which the gender of hundreds of words, *with few*, or no exceptions, will be determined. Such are a few of the leading improvements which have been introduced into this volume; but the whole work has been subjected to a most careful and unsparring revision, and numerous emendations have been made, which the reader, on comparing this with former additions, will discern at a glance. In conclusion, I may state, that all these improvements and emendations have been recognised by the French Academy and the University of France, which, it must be remembered, exercise as much authority over the French language as the Parliament of England over the law of the British empire. It must not be said of any French teacher, as of the abbot of Chaucer,—

—“*Il rônche, she spake ful favre and festly,
After the scole of Stratford atte Bowe,
For I renche of Paris was to hire unknowe.*”

II

A NEW UNIVERSAL FRENCH GRAMMAR: being an accurate System of French Accidence and Syntax. By N. HAMEL. New Edition, greatly improved. 12mo. 1s. 4s. bound.

III

CLEF; ou, Thèmes traduits d'après la Grammaire Comparée de Nicolas Hamel (*Éditio princeps*). Nouvelle Edition. 12mo. price 3s. bound.

IV

Les AVENTURES de TÉLÉMAQUE, FILS d'ULYSSE. Par Fénelon. Nouvelle Edition, avec la Signification des Mots les plus difficiles en Anglais au bas de chaque page: à laquelle on a ajouté un petit Dictionnaire Mythologique et Géographique. Le tout soigneusement revu et corrigé par M. VINCENT WANOS-TROCHÉ. 12mo. price 4s. 6d. bound.

London: LONGMAN, BROWN, and CO., Paternoster Row.

Elementary Grammatical Works.

A NEW DICTIONARY in FRENCH and ENGLISH
and ENGLISH and FRENCH: combining the Dictionaries
of BOYER and DRELETANVILLE. With various Additions, Cor-
rections, and Improvements, by T. BOILEAU and A. PICQUOT.
New Edition, revised and corrected by the 1st edition of the
Dictionary of the French Academy. 8vo. price 1^{rs}. bound.

VII
NUGENT'S POCKET DICTIONARY of the FRENCH
and ENGLISH LANGUAGES: in Two Parts. 1. French
and English; 2. English and French. Containing the follow-
ing Additions and Improvements: 1. New Words in General
Use in each Language. 2. Examples and Phrases, to facilitate
the reading of Modern Writers, but especially composing in
French. 3. Directions as to the Choice to be made of the
French word best adapted to express the idea of the writer or
speaker. 4. Prepositions annexed to the French Verbs and
Adjectives, showing what case they govern. New Edition
carefully revised and corrected. By J. C. TAYLER, French
Master, Eton College. 18mo. price 4s. 6d. bound.

VII
NUGENT'S FRENCH - ENGLISH and ENGLISH,
FRENCH DICTIONARY. Edited by J. OUISSEAU, M.A.
New Edition, printed in large type. Square 12mo. 7s. 6d. bound

VIII
RABENHORST'S POCKET DICTIONARY of the
GERMAN and ENGLISH and ENGLISH and GERMAN
LANGUAGES. By G. H. NOEHDEN, LI.D. Ph.D. New
Edition, materially improved by D. BOILEAU. Square 12mo
price 5s. 6d. bound.

* This New Edition of Dr. Rabenhorst's standard Dictionary has been carefully
revised, and, having been reduced in price to 5s. 6d. it still forms the cheapest, the
most complete, and the most portable German and English Dictionary.

ix
A GRAMMAR of the GERMAN LANGUAGE. By
GEORGE H. NOEHDEN, Ph.D., &c. New Edition, corrected
and revised by the Rev. C. H. F. BIALLOBLOTZKY, Ph.D.
Examiner in German to the University of London, &c. 12mo
price 7s. 6d. bound.

x
EXERCISES for WRITING GERMAN, according to the
Rules of Grammar. By G. H. NOEHDEN, Ph.D., &c. Seventh
Edition, corrected and revised by the Rev. C. H. F. BIALLO-
BLTZKY, Ph.D., &c. 12mo. price 6s. boards.

xi
A KEY to Dr. NOEHDEN'S EXERCISES for WRITING
GERMAN. By J. R. SCHULTZ. New Edition, corrected and
improved, with Explanatory Notes. 12mo. price 3s. 6d. boards

London: LONGMAN, BROWN, and CO., F. aternoster Row.

